

Critical English

HUOMBARRAUTA

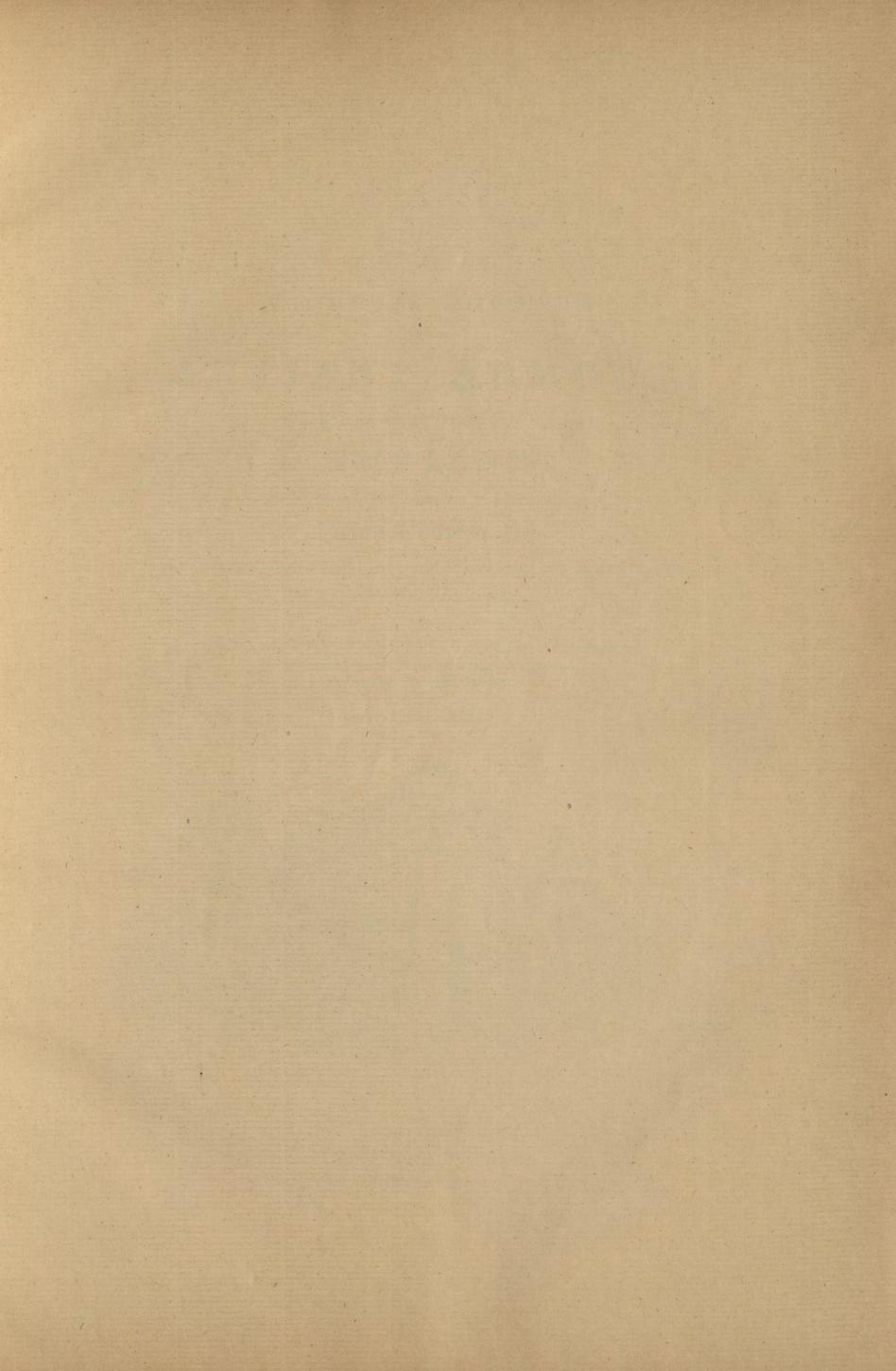
A

# Critical Inquiry

INTO

# ANTIENT ARMOUR.

VIENZAME WE was a series of the second of the second A MENTALLY MORE The state of the s ANTHEN TO A PROPERTY.



### CHENCOLE VEDEBLED

OTAL

# AUGMALTHALTHA

Enrope.

## CHARDKE

ROW THE YORKS CONOREST TO PUR RETEN OF

## King Charles 11

part a laure and to real an ordering to leaven an army

'IS THEER VOLUMES.

Yar

rogaron neue acures

the ocure in the berteament a till males I comes

illa dusa

ROBERT TEXNISES NOT POLITEE.

### A

# CRITICAT ILOUIRP

INTO

# ANTIENT ARMOUR,

AS IT EXISTED IN Europe, BUT PARTICULARLY IN

# ENGLAND,

FROM THE NORMAN CONQUEST TO THE REIGN OF

# King Charles 11:

WITH A GLOSSARY OF MILITARY TERMS OF THE MIDDLE AGES,

IN THREE VOLUMES.

BY

SAMUEL RUSH MEYRICK, LL.D. AND F.S.A.

Advocate in the Ecclesiastical & Admiralty Courts.

QUO CERTIOR POSTERIS PRODERETUR.

APULEIUS.

VOL III.



LONDON.

ROBERT JENNINGS. Nº 2. POULTRY.

SOLD BY JOHN GALE, Nº 8. BRUTON ST BOND ST.

## CRITICAL INQUIRY

INTO

# ANTIENT ARMOUR,

AS IT EXISTED IN EUROPE, BUT PARTICULARLY

IN ENGLAND,

FROM THE NORMAN CONQUEST TO THE REIGN OF

### KING CHARLES II,

WITH

A GLOSSARY OF MILITARY TERMS OF THE MIDDLE AGES.

IN THREE VOLUMES.

BY

SAMUEL RUSH MEYRICK, LL.D. AND F.S.A.

ADVOCATE IN THE ECCLESIASTICAL AND ADMIRALTY COURTS.

QUO CERTIOR POSTERIS PRODERETUR.

APULEIUS.

VOL. III.

#### LONDON:

FOR ROBERT JENNINGS, No. 2, POULTRY;
SOLD BY JOHN GALE, No. 8, BRUTON STREET, BOND STREET.

MDCCCXXIV.

ANTHENTARMOU

THE SER OF MAINTENAN PRINTS A STATE

KING CHARLENIL

AND IT OF THE TAKE THE WAS SHOUND TO A SECURE

NUMBER OF BERNING ME

need decided and an analysis of

designer or exercity posters. The

.iix Liov

### A CRITICAL INQUIRY

INTO

# ANTIENT ARMOUR.

# Edward the Sirth.

1547.



OMMENCING this third volume with the reign of Edward VI, it is, in the first place, proper to mention that the principal distinction in the armour of it may be observed in the breast-plate. The projection in the tapull, represented in Plate LXIV and LXV, was dropped to the bottom of it at this time, and formed from its resemblance to a pea-shell what was named the peascod belly.

Hence Bulver calls the doublets of his time "long peasecod bellied doublets," and observes:

"When we wore short-waisted doublets, and but little lower than our breast, we would maintain, by militant reason, that the waist was in its right place as nature intended it;\* but lately we come to wear them so long waisted, yea, almost so long as to cover the belly, &c.

"The waist as one notes is now come to the knee, for the points that were used to be about the middle are now dangling there,† and more lately, the waiste is descending towards the ankles."‡

<sup>\*</sup> This refers to the commencement of the reign of Henry VIII.

<sup>†</sup> This describes the period of Edward VI.

<sup>‡</sup> This refers to that of Elizabeth, the period in which Bulver wrote.

The brass plate of John Spelman, Esq. in Narburgh Church, Norfolk, may be taken as a specimen at the commencement of this reign, the peculiarity in which is the wearing of the wide puffed short breeches or trunk hose, which meet the upper part of the cuisses, while the tassets hang over them. Indeed the cuisses themselves were not made to reach so high as during the last reign. Much in this stile is the monument of Sir Ralph Sadler, in Hertfordshire; and that of one of the Smyths in Ashford Church, Kent.

The following passage, in a curious and rare journal of the protector's expedition into Scotland, written by W. Patten who was joined in commission with Cecil, as judge marshal of the army, and printed in 1548, gives a just idea of the military discipline of the Scots at that time. "But what after I learned specially touching their order, their armour and their manner as well of going to offend, as of standing to defend, I have thought necessary here to utter. Hackbutters have they few or none, and appoint their fight most commonly always a-foot. They come to the field well furnished all with jack and skull, dagger and buckler and swords all broad and thin, of exceeding good temper, and universally so made to slice, that as I never saw none so good, so I think it hard to devise the better.\* Hereto every man his pike, and a great kercher wrapped twice for thrice about his neck, not for cold but for cutting.† In their array towards joining with the enemy, they cling and thrust so near in the fore rank, shoulder and shoulder together, with their pikes in both

<sup>\*</sup> This implies that they excelled the English swords, and gives much reason to conclude that they were fabricated by Andria Farara. The blades of that cutler are as famed in Scotland at this day for their excellence, as is his date and history involved in obscurity. My friend Sir Walter Scott, Bart. had conjectured that "he was in Scotland during the reigns of James IV or V, both kings patronizing foreign artificers; that he made many swords, and bequeathed his great name to Scottish swords in general:" and thought that "there are payments to him in the Chamberlain rolls or other public accounts." But, on diligently searching the records and accounts, he found no notice of him whatever. He therefore " renounced the idea of his being brought to Scotland by either of the Jameses," and concludes that, "he was a foreign armourer." I have heard that Andrea Farara was a Spaniard who dwelt at Guipuscoa, and had an apprentice anxious to discover his secret mode of tempering his blades. This lad, having made the discovery by boring a hole through the door, had the imprudence to declare his knowledge of it and the mode in which he became acquainted with the same, a circumstance that so enraged Andrea as to incite him instantly to run a sword through his body. This hasty commission of murder obliged him to fly his country in order to avoid the ministers of justice, and that North Britain gladly gave refuge to so able an artizan. For this story I have been unable to find any authority, and the absence of his name in the public accounts of Scotland certainly affords strong grounds for concluding that he never carried on his trade in that kingdom. The blades which have his name on them-A N-D R-E A-on one side, and-F A-R A-n the other, what appears here as a single line being in the original rosettes, are Spanish. There are others stamped ANDREA FERERA which appear to have been fabricated by an Italian, whom I conjecture to be a distinct person, unless the former had a manufactory in Italy and another in Spain. Sir Walter Scott has a dirk with its blade thus engraved, and in my son's collection is a sabre in its original mounting so stamped; the hilt of which exactly resembles those of the Italian lansquenets in a thick folio work printed in 1506, entitled La mère des Histoires. None of the Andrea Farara or Ferera blades have a form anterior to the middle of Henry the Eighth's reign but in the possession of I. H. Allan, Esq. is the sword of Colonna, which he purchased on its arrival from Italy in the summer of 1822, with its original hilt and scabbard, and this is in the shape of the commencement of the reign of that monarch, namely tapering all the way to the point which is made thicker than the rest to give strength. This is marked twice on each side with the words COSMO FERARA, a fact which shews that ANDREA, although the only one known in Scotland, was not the sole person of the family who carried on the art of sword making. † That is to save his neck from being cut.

hands straight afore them, and their followers in that order so hard at their backs, laying their pikes over their foregoers shoulders, that if they do assail undiscovered, no force can well withstand them. Standing at defence they thrust shoulders likewise so nigh together, the fore ranks well nigh to kneeling, stoop low before, their fellows behind holding their pikes with both hands, and therewith in their left their bucklers; the one end of their pike against their right foot, and the other against the enemy breast-high; their followers crossing their pike-points with them forward; and thus each with other so nigh as space and place will suffer, through the whole ward, so thick, that as easily shall a bare finger pierce through the skin of an angry hedge-hog, as any encounter the front of their pikes."

The length of the Scottish pike was appointed by act 44, of the parliament 1476, to be six ells, i. e. eighteen feet six inches.

An ordonnance of Henry II, king of France, dated 1549, describes the armour of the men at arms at this period: Le dit homme d'armes sera tenu porter armet petit et grand, gardebras, cuirasse, cuissots, devant de grévés avec une grosse et forte lance, et entretiendra quatre chevaux, les deux de service pour la guerre, dont l'un aura le devant de bardes avec le chamfrain, et les flancois, et si bon lui semble aura un pistolet à l'arçon de la selle. "The said man at arms shall be held to wear a little and great armet, gardebras, cuirass, cuissots, and on the front of his legs greaves, and to carry a thick strong lance. He shall, moreover, keep four horses, two of which are for service in war, of which one shall be armed with bardes in front, chanfron on his head, and flank-pieces on his sides; and, if it appears advantageous to him, he shall have a pistol at the bow of the saddle."

I have not been able to discover the difference between the great and little armet, but conjecture that, at this period, the word armet had lost its original distinctive meaning, and become a general term for any helmet. If so, the great armet would imply the close helmet, and the little armet the open one, or casque. Still, however, I am inclined to think, that the armet, petit et grand, was a helmet that might form either, according to the wish of the wearer, as in Plate LXVII. The gardebras here also, probably, implies the whole armour for the arms, consisting of pauldrons, brassarts, elbow-pieces, and vambraces, though there is one of the more ancient kind to screw on the bridle-arm in the Tower of London, which belongs to a suit of this period.

The flanchois, or flank pieces, were sometimes made merely of boiled leather, vol. III.

and Père Daniel saw, in the magazine of arms at Paris, a chanfron of this material.\* A steel one in my son's possession has a beautiful embossed border.

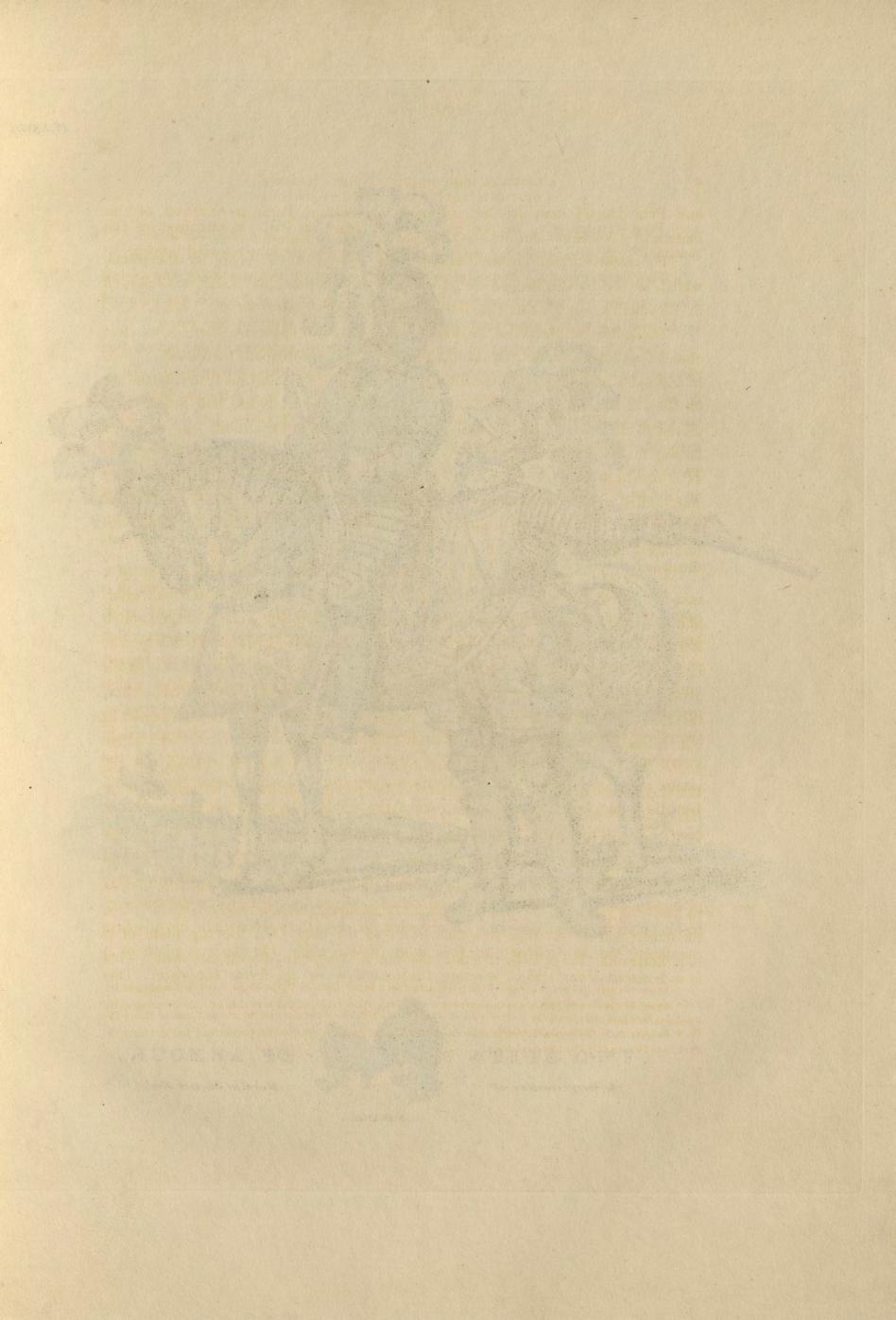
The most curious circumstance is, the change of the mace for the pistol, which, we see by this ordonnance, took place at this time, and which was followed in Elizabeth's reign, with the substitution of another also for the estoc.

The utility of the pistol for horse soldiers was so apparent, that, before this change, an attempt had been made to unite it with the weapons then used. Thus, in my son's armoury, is a mace made to act as a pistol, and a cavalry battle-axe on the same principle. The gonnes, i.e. pistols without locks, had before been united to the spiked club, or holy-water sprinkle, as it was called, one of which having four at its end, of Edward the Fourth's time, is in the same collection; as is also a steel bow, having two of them, and made to fold up. After this they were united to almost every weapon, as in the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq. are an infantry battle-axe, two swords, and a dagger of Elizabeth's time thus furnished, and of James the First's even a cross-bow with two pistols.

In my son's collection also, are two suits of armour of this period, one of a man at arms, the other of a demi-launcer. The first is russet inlaid with gold, and has an additional breast-plate, called a placard, equally ornamented, on which is a lance-rest, probably only used for justing. The placard exactly fits the breast, and is in the pease-cod shape. The jambs have joints above the ankles which greatly assist the motion of the foot, and are peculiar to this period; what, therefore, was thus lost in strength, probably overbalanced what was gained in convenience. These joints consist of several overlapping plates into which the jambs are here divided. The sollerets are square, but with the angles cut off. But the helmet is the most curious part of the whole, the beaver is made of three pieces, which move over each other, and when covering the face, held by as many little catches. This is, probably the great and little armet, and was the kind of helmet Shakespeare had before him when in the play of Richard III; he says of that monarch: "Had you seen him with his beaver up;" because he there alludes to his being prepared for war. In ordinary helmets, the beaver when up, displays the face, but to do that this falls down to the chin. On the top plate of it is a horizontal bar which, meeting the umbril when up, forms the visor. This

<sup>\*</sup> At an old castle in Portugal, was the complete armour for a horse made of this material, until the irruption of the French army during the last war.

<sup>†</sup> To such kind, this dramatic bard alludes in Hamlet, Act I. Sc. 2: "He wore his beaver up," and in Henry IV, Pt. 2, Act IV, Sc. 1, "Their beavers down."





TWO SUITS

In the possession of



A.D. 1550.

OF ARMOUR,

Llewelyn Meyrick Esq?

beaver, however, is made to take off the helmet which thus becomes an open one, being both the grand and petit together. The taking off and putting on the beaver, will account for another passage in Shakespeare, though he probably, by the beaver, means the whole helmet.\*

When the beaver is off, there appear three bars joined at the bottom by a concave piece to cover the chin, and fasten to the umbril by a wire, on removing which, these bars can be taken off. The helmet is also furnished with two oreillets attached by hinges, and will meet over the chin-piece of the conjoined bars.

This magnificent suit belonged to Helionorus, eighth Duke of Longueville,† who distinguished himself in the Belgic and the civil wars of his country, and came from the Chateau de Coulommiers en Brie, a castle belonging to the family, but dismantled during the French revolution. This suit is represented in Plate LXVII, with the horse on which it is mounted; and below is exhibited the helmet open.

A fine engraved suit of this period is in the Hall of the Armourer's Company, in London, and may have been the work of that corporation, under the direction of their then master, whose portrait is in another room belonging to their building.

The demi-lancer's suit is plain, but the breast-plate is of great weight and thickness to resist the pistol balls. The arms are protected by epauletts, elbow-pieces, and long gauntletts, which, like those of the man at arms, have fingers. The cuisses are made of several plates in both suits, but in this they are buckled to the breast-plate, as was the case with the demi-lancers in the last reign; and are made to separate for the purpose of allowing the upper part to hang over the wide puffed breeches, while the lower is close to the thigh.

This suit is represented also in Plate LXVII, and the figure wearing it made to hold a wheel-lock pistol in his hand, while the spanner, which is contrived to contain the fine powder for priming and also a turnscrew, is suspended by the original silken cord over his left shoulder.

In my son's collection, besides this pistol, are two wheel-lock dags or long pistols of this period, one in length two feet five inches, from the arsenal at Munich, the other two feet ten inches, having its stock entirely covered with ivory. On both are representations of animals of the chace; but the Nuremberg stamp on the former, shews that the Tuscan invention soon found its way into Germany.

† He was born in 1542, and died in 1573.

<sup>\*</sup> The passage is in Henry IV, Pt. 1, Act IV, Sc. 1, " I saw young Harry with his beaver on."

The dag, dagge or tacke, differed from the pistol merely in the shape of its butt, which somewhat resembled that of the petronel.\* Hence, in inventories, we meet with long, short, and pocket dags, and dags with different kinds of locks.† What is wrongly called a Highland pistol, has its butt made flat and cut slantwise in the same manner as a dag, and is still termed by the Highlanders a tack.‡

In the same armoury too, are two halberds which belonged to the guards of Henry II of France. One of these has below the sharp part of the blade, a fleur-de-lis, but both have the axe-part of the halbert formed by crescents. This was the effect of infatuation for Diane de Poitiers, who, in allusion to her Christian name, had chosen the crescent for her mark. She was thus complimented by her monarch, who placed it on all the weapons of his troops.

In Plate ccliv of Montfaucon's Mon. Fran. the court guards are represented having H, and the crown on their breasts with a crescent on each side, and another below. This king died in consequence of a mortal wound he received at a tournament which he gave at Paris in the year 1559, in honour of the marriage of his daughter Elizabeth with Philip II, king of Spain. The lance of his adversary the Duc de Montmorency, broke against his helmet, but a splinter being forced through the visor, went through his eye and penetrated the brain. He languished for twelve days after at the Palais des Tournelles, where he died. This event tended principally to bring this hazardous amusement into disrepute, and it altogether subsided at the commencement of the next century.

German lansquenets were frequently attached to the English army during this reign.

From the manuscript journal of Edward VI in the British Museum, this young king seems to have been fond of the exercise of archery. Hollinshed, however, laments the decay of it in his time, in the following curious manner: "In times past the chief force of England consisted in their long-bows. But now we have in a manner generally given over that kind of artillery, and for long-bows indeed,

\* Thus, in the play of Love's Cure, or the Martial Maid, Act II, Sc. 2, is:

"What do you call this gun? a dag? Clara. I'll give thee a French petronel."

† This fact will appear hereafter, but, in Jack Drum's entertainment, the firelock, or snaphaunce, seems alluded to:

"He would shew one how to hold the dag, To draw the cock, to change and set the flint."

‡ Strange as it may seem, that the word dag should signify a fire-arm and not a dagger, like the French dague, yet, in the Italian language, pistolese implies a great dagger or wood knife. See Florio, first and second editions, and Thomas's Italian Dictionary.

do practice to shoot compass' for our pastime. Cutes the Frenchman and Rutters, deriding our new archery in respect to their croslets, will not let in open skirmish, if any leisure serve to turn up their tails and cry "shoote Englishmen;" and all because our strong shooting is decayed and laid in bed. But if some of our Englishmen now lived, that served King Edward III, the breech of such a varlet should have been nailed to his bum with an arrow, and another feathered in his bowels," &c.\*

Bishop Latimer does the same thing in his sixth sermon. † After condemning the vices of the age, he thus introduces the subject of archery: "The arte of shutynge hath ben in tymes past much estemed in this realme, it is a gyft of God, that he hath given us to excell all other nacions wythall. It hath bene Goddes instrumente, whereby he hath given us manye victories againste oure enemyes. But nowe we have taken up horynge in townes, insteede of shutynge in the fyeldes. A wonderous thynge, that so excelente a gyft of God shoulde be so lyttle esteemed. I desire you, my Lordes, even as you love honoure, and glorye of God, and intende to remove his indignacion, let there be sent fourth some proclimacion, some sharpe proclimacion, to the justices of peace, for they do not thyr dutye. Justices now be no justices; ther be many good actes made for thys matter already. Charge them upon their allegiance, that thys singular benefit of God may be practised; and that it be not turned into bollyng, and glossyng, and horing wythin the townes; for they be negligente in executying these lawes of shutynge. In my tyme, my poore father was as diligent to teach me to shute, as to learne any other thynge; and so I thinke other menne dyd thyr children. He taught me howe to drawe, how to lay my bodye in my bowe, and not to drawe wyth strength of armes, as other nacions do, but wyth strength of bodye. I had my bowes bought me according to my age and strength, as I encreased in them; so my bowes were made bigger and bigger: | for men shall never shute well excepte they be brought up in it.

<sup>\*</sup> Chron. Vol. I, p. 198.

<sup>+</sup> Printed in 1549, 12mo.

<sup>‡</sup> Compare this with the 33rd of Henry VIII, c. 9.

<sup>§</sup> The power of drawing the bow is much encreased by bending the body forward.

With respect to the size of the bow; the string ought to be the height of the man, and the arrow half the length of the string. The archer, in drawing, stands sideways looking over his left shoulder. By this position, his right ear is brought in a line with the centre of his body. Now as from that to the tip of his middle finger is equal to half his whole height, it must be also equal to the length of his arrow, and the left hand, therefore, being clenched round the bow, will just leave room for the arrow-head, beyond it. From this it will appear that a man six feet high must shoot with a cloth-yard arrow.

It is a goodly arte, a holesome kynde of exercise, and much commended in phisike. Marcilius Sicinus, in hys boke de Triplici Vita (it is a greate while sins I red hym nowe); but I remember he commendeth thys kinde of exercise and sayth, that it wrestleth agaynste manye kyndes of diseases. In the reverence of God, let it be continued. Let a proclamacion go forth, charging the justices of peace, that they see such actes and statutes kept, as were made for thys purpose."

The force of arrows is well instanced by a fact recorded in the journal of Edward VI. A hundred archers belonging to the king's guard shot at an inch board, singly, two arrows each, and afterwards all together. Some of these arrows pierced through this, and into another board placed behind it, although the wood was extremely solid and firm.

An ancient bow, according to Neade, would carry four hundred yards, and Père Daniel says the same.\*

The Society of Antiquaries are in possession of a manuscript inventory of the royal stores and habiliments of war in the different arsenals and garrisons belonging to the King of England, taken in the first year of the reign of Edward VI.

In it are the following entries:

### The Fortresse of Archeclief besides the Peere of Dover.

"Ordynaunce and Munitions belonging to the said fort in the charge of Edmund Mondye, Captain, viewed the month of January, An. Reg. Edw. Sexti primo.

Demy culveryns of br	asse	engan off	- Nowahit	spoig sti	of sol enough
Sacres of brasse	vertice there is	-yrinesbecci	s-gove have	- Common	-lode og 2
Fawcons of brasse	ed you ba	(4) Faculty	- 10 (6)	- lattoda	-mile quell
Fowlers of iron	e-tionism	- TORINGE	e constitue	e- grantene	-tode weath
Single serpentines of	iron	-low sign	A surround	Interconnect	3
Basis of iron	-	At Colin_	-		- 12
Hagbushes of iron	-	-	Eurotrus	edor gres	4
Powder -	-	po piece	Luiven 1	Gr 10 23	- oone last.
Demy culveryne shot	te	-	esored.	Lon story	- 50
Sacre shotte	E TRANSPORT			- sagya.	100

<sup>\*</sup> Mil. Fr., Tom. II, p. 606.

<sup>†</sup> Formerly belonging to Gustavus Brander, Esq.

### EDWARD THE SIXTH.

Fawcone shotte bus - seigned - to shared - smossfort of street	a glood a	50
Fowler shotte of stone	Marcilia	20
Serpentine shotte and a discharge and a discharge L and a C	hym nowe	20
Basis shotte	That it world	00
Hagbushes shotte	10	00
Bowgies 2 2- 2 2 1-of sources but receive done - yet	ce, that th	30
Sheiffs of arrowes	-	60
Bowe stringes where - mal was - bromber How M - worm	- demy	grosse.
Morris pikes	1 1 1 1	20
Blacke bills and the same the	ing (thate)	50
AND IN THE PARTY OF THE PARTY O		

### The Blacke Bulworke at the Piere of Dover, in the Countie of Kent.

"The ordynaunce and munitions of warre being within the said bulworke, in the chardge of the saide Mondye, Captaine.

Basillisches of brasse
Culverynes of brasse
Demy culverynes of brasse
Porte pieces of irone
Slinges of irone 3
Basis of irone 7
Demy slinges not be- add at - mandad - madimut - bear and to 5
Basillische shotte
Culveryne shotte 100
Shotte for porte pieces 40
Slinge shotte 20
Demy-slinge shotte 40
Basse shotte 100
Single surpontinus of inna
At Calis.
Shott of yrone for great curtowes - 200
Gret chambers of yron serving no piece 8
Saletts with vysars and bevers
Saletts with bevers.
AND STATE OF THE S
T 11 M 11 O1 1

#### In the Malle Chamber.

Leaden Malles	-	-	-		-	870
---------------	---	---	---	--	---	-----

### In the Crosse-Bowe Chamber.

MARK TO THE REPORT OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY OF THE PA	
Crosse-bowes called prodds	418
Crosse-bowes called latches,* winlasses for them	120
Benders to bend small crosse-bowes	14
Quarrells headed and fethered with woode	1300
Quarrells unheaded and fetherede with woode -	1300
Crosse-bowes of sundry making with four paier of windelasses	
being broken.	
Crosse-bowes to shoot stone	oone
Rack to bend a crosse-bowe	oone
Quyver for pricke arrows for crosse-bowes	oone
98 Maria Cara Cara Cara Cara Cara Cara Cara	estendite.
In Hurst Castell.	
Curtall cannon of brasse	oone
Curtall cannon-shot of six ynches and a quarter -	35
Hart with vicents of the court	
West Cowes Castle.	
Curtoll cannon of brasse furnyshed	oone
Fact Tilburne Bulguants	
East Tilbury Bulwark.	
Curtall sacres of yron mounted upon carriage with shodde wheles.	
In Wark Castle.	
the state of the s	
Halls of a porte-pece, dismounted	oone
At Newhaven.	
· 大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大大	
Arrowes with wild-fier.	
At Barwick.	
Arrowes for fire-workes.	-
Archer's stakes†	350
Malles	200

<sup>\*</sup> Gunmakers still call the bow of the arbaleste a lathe.

<sup>†</sup> These were long poles pointed at both ends, planted in the earth before the archers to protect them from the enemy's horse.

A. THE SELECTION OF MANAGEMENTS ASSESSED.	
Demy hackes stocked	50
Hand gonnes unstocked	80
Hornes with purses and without purses*	20
Moulds† for saide hackes	100
AND the second of the Antiper State of the Antiper	
At Alnwick Castle.	Bonda
Hagbuttes of croke‡ of yron	11
Hagbuttes well stocked	20
a consulation to make and stome principle of windelinears	
At Pontefracte Castle.	
Archers stakes, eight bundles.	
anen er en de la	
At Hampton Court.	anchen .
Mases of steel	59
Maces of steel receyved of William Damsell	26
Sallets for archers on horseback.	
Sallets with grates.	hattifluit .
Old sallets with vizards.	istor Story
and the comment of the second and th	secol Proces
In the custody of Hans Hunter, Armourer at Westminster.	with the same
A mase of dameskine work.	Asistat o
One white mase.	
In mases guilte and faier wrought, five of them having ringes,	Minist in
and plates of sylke and gold	11
Item, in horsemen's hammers with gonnes	8
Item, in horsemen's hammers with battle-axes -	14
Item, four battle-axes partely guilt, with long small staves of	
brassell garnished with velvet white and green and silk -	4
Reynes for horses of iron	27
Item, two harnesses for a horse being hedstall, reynes, croopers,	
and poytrelles of vellet th' one garnyshed with copper and	
passemayne of Venyce gold; th' other with copper silvered	
with passemayne of silver	twoo
	elle Mr.
For the powder and bullets.  For casting the bullets.	e paramerit 173
The crooked part of the butt protected by iron.  Plaits, or plaited cords.	
vol. III.	

EDWARD THE SIXTH.

11

Item, in trees for saddles plated with stele, and parcel guilte
and graven the and five paier
Item, in like trees plated with stele guilte, wrought, and laied
upon vellvet + - ont and - in thole-rould this - bridge - of nine paier
Item, in like trees plated with stele vernyshed and guilte - seven paier
Armynge swordes with vellet skaberdes - 11 - 11 - 11
Item, three edged tockes* with vellet skaberdes - 2
Item, great slaughe swordes with lether skaberdes - 2 2
Item, bore spere swordest with vellet skaberdes 6
Item, armynge swordes of Flaunders makinge 302
Item, one slaughe sworde with 3 gonnes at t'handle and crosse,
with a skaberde of vellet.

Mr. Mallet, in the Traveaux de Mars, describes the following different serts of swords, of which he gives representations from the Cabinet of Arms, formerly at Chantilly, in France. The braquemart, or short sword, the French rencontre sword, the stoccado, or long sword, the espadon, or two-handed sword, the Swiss, or basket-hilted sword; a Spanish sword, or toledo,‡ properly called a rapiere, a tuck enclosed in a walking-stick, a poiniard, dagger, sabre, and cymeter. To these Grose adds the shable, a broad sword with only one edge.§

A large arming sword of this period is in the hand of the female introduced into the initial letter of this reign. She is intended for Judith, and is given here to shew, that all those pretended portraits of the Maid of Orleans are taken from similar representations. The original is on the binding of a copy of the Institutionum ad jus universum Pontificum à Io. Paulo Lancelotto-Basileæ, MDLXVI, in my possession. In similar costume, on the opposite side, appears Jael driving the nail into the forehead of Sisera, who wears the armour of Edward the Sixth's time.

At Windsor.

Salettes. Skulls.

### In the Tower.

Brigandines complete, having sleeves covered with crimson.

<sup>\*</sup> From the French estoc. † These may be seen in the triumph of Maximilian I.

<sup>‡</sup> From the novel of Gil Blas, we may learn, that the gloves and handkerchief were often carried in the large cup-

<sup>§</sup> One of these of the time of Henry VIII, is in the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq.

Brigandines complete, with sleeves covered with cloth of gold.

Do. do. with sleeves covered with blue sattin.

Millars coats\* covered with fustian and white cloth.

Brigandines covered with linen cloth with long taces.

Several brigandines are still remaining in the Tower, though some are in a very shattered condition. There is also one with sky-blue covering, but of the close of Elizabeth's reign in my son's collection. Of those in the Tower, one is engraved in Plate xxvi, Fig. 1, of Grose's Antient Armour.

The inventory proceeds thus:

#### In the Tower.

Targetts steilde w.‡ gonnes - delle v.† - desdude -	35
Targetts playne without gonnes	allalaini7
Targett with xx little gonnes	oone
Terget w. four gonnes whole - themen - al all - sound -	oone
A long tergett w. oone gonne	oone
A target of the shell of tortys	oone

We see, therefore, that, after the invention of fire arms, instead of the spike issuing from a boss, the centres of some targets were armed with one or more small gun-barrels, an aperture being made above, and covered with a grating for the convenience of taking aim. Some of these, with one barrel each, are still shewn in the Spanish armoury in the Tower; but from this inventory we learn, that they are falsely attributed to the troops of the Armada. They are in form a portion of a hollow sphere, and about twenty inches diameter; and, as in the first named lot, covered with steel. We further learn, from the inventory, that the word goone, or gun, was applied to pistol-barrels, for it is of this kind, and with a match-lock, that the targets are furnished in the Tower. Indeed, as cannons are still sometimes termed guns, we may conclude that it was a general name for the barrels of all fire-arms that had not locks to distinguish them.

The inventory then has:

Item, two hole barbes of stele for horses, graven and enelede blue.

<sup>\*</sup> These were brigandines, but thus called on account of their appearance.

<sup>†</sup> The skirts or coverings to the pockets.

<sup>‡</sup> The wimplies "with."

#### In the Tower.

Poleaxes with gonnes in th' endes	27
Poleaxes without gonnes	2
Short poleaxes playne	100
Two-hand poleaxes	4
Hand poleaxes with a gonne, and a case for the same	oone
Poliaxes gilte, the staves covered with cremysyne velvet fringed	the earth
with silke of golde*	4
Great holly water sprincles	118
Holly water sprincles, with gonnes in th' ende	7
Holly water sprincles, with three gonnes in the topp one.	ngus!I
Little holly water sprincles§	392
Item, one hatte of stele, and two staves, called holly water	
sprincles. Hol or bon we shall be ozen a nit colorowate dend how	
Gaddes of steile	300
of training adding the state of any arrange from the first of the last of the state	
T 1'm 1 Ct 1	
In different Storehouses.	
In different Storehouses.  Item, ten javelins with brode heddes, parteley guilt, with long	I match
of a marketic interpolation between the property of the contraction of the contract of the con	I matche Resign
Item, ten javelins with brode heddes, parteley guilt, with long	340
Item, ten javelins with brode heddes, parteley guilt, with long brassel staves, garnished with vellet and tassels.	340
Item, ten javelins with brode heddes, parteley guilt, with long brassel staves, garnished with vellet and tassels.  Northern staves with yrone heddes	
Item, ten javelins with brode heddes, parteley guilt, with long brassel staves, garnished with vellet and tassels.  Northern staves with yrone heddes	
Item, ten javelins with brode heddes, parteley guilt, with long brassel staves, garnished with vellet and tassels.  Northern staves with yrone heddes	120
Item, ten javelins with brode heddes, parteley guilt, with long brassel staves, garnished with vellet and tassels.  Northern staves with yrone heddes	120 291
Item, ten javelins with brode heddes, parteley guilt, with long brassel staves, garnished with vellet and tassels.  Northern staves with yrone heddes	120 291 162
Item, ten javelins with brode heddes, parteley guilt, with long brassel staves, garnished with vellet and tassels.  Northern staves with yrone heddes	120 291 162 207
Item, ten javelins with brode heddes, parteley guilt, with long brassel staves, garnished with vellet and tassels.  Northern staves with yrone heddes	291 162 207 152

<sup>\*</sup> One of this kind is in my friend, Sir Walter Scott's collection.

<sup>†</sup> These were staves with large cylindrical heads surrounded by spikes, and having a spear point at the end. Some are still shewn in the Tower, and ignorantly attributed to the Danes, and one is in my son's armoury.

<sup>‡</sup> Of this kind, is what is called in the Tower, Henry the Eighth's walking-stick.

<sup>§</sup> One of these of Edward the Fourth's time, if not earlier, with four gonnes, i. e. small barrels with touch-holes, is in my son's collection; and another with globular-head without guns.

<sup>||</sup> These gads are borne by the Armourer's Company in their arms; and, in heraldry, are also represented as small thin square pieces of iron, curved; being for the fingers of gauntlets.

<sup>¶</sup> These were in the nature of bills.

### At Greenwich.

Item, one chamber pece blacke, the stocke of redde woode set with bone worke, with a fier locke\* in a case of crymson vellet.

Item, one longe white† pece with a fier locke.

Item, one longe pece graven and guilte with a stocke of redde woode set with white bone, with a fier locke in a case of lether.

Item, two chamber peces guilt and graven, with a fier locke in a stocke of yellow.

Item, one guilte chamber pece parcell guilt, with a redde stocke, with a fier locke in a case of purple vellvet,

Item, one lytle short pece for a horseman of damaskine work, the stocke of woode and bone, set with a chamber.

Item, one dagge with two peeces in one stock.;

Item, two backe swordes in a case of lether, and two letle daggers garnished with silver, parcell guilte and emaled, with knyves and bodkyns.

Item, c Italion peces, and everye one hys moulde, flaske, touche boxe, and matche.

Item, one horne for gonne-powder, garnished with silver.

Item, iii grete flaskes covered with vellet, and three lytle touche boxes.

Item, ii longe small cofers for gonnes.

Item, a white tacke with fier locke graven, and all the stocke white bone, a great flaske varnished, and paynted, a touche box of iron graven and gilded.

Item, ii tackes after the fashion of a dagger, with fier-lockes vernished, with redde stockes, shethes covered with blacke vellet, garnished with silver, and guilt, with purses, flaskes, and touch boxes of black vellet garnyshed with iron guilte.

Item, two tackes hafted like a knyff with fier locks, and doble lockes, a pece, th' one graven parcell guilte, and tother vernyshed, with two purses, two flaskes, and two touch boxes of black vellet, th' one garnished with iron and guilt.

- \* This must mean the wheel-lock.
- † By white, is meant bright steel.
- ‡ A pistol of this kind is in the possession of my son, but of the time of Charles I.
- § For casting bullets. The touch boxes were for the priming powder.

<sup>||</sup> One of these, of this time, much resembling the handle of a large knife, furnished with two spanners and a gunscrew, is in the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq.

We have an account of the battle of Musselborough, in Scotland, fought in the first year of Edward VI, by William Patin, an eye-witness. In this he describes the mode the Scots adopted in using their pikes, which has been already stated; but he thus more particularly describes their shields and javelins after the battle: " Nye this place of onset, whear the Scottes at their runninge away had let fall their weapons (as I sayd), thear found we besyde their common manner of armour, certyn nice instruments for war (as we thought), and they were nue boardes endes cut of, being aboute a foote in breadth and halfe a yarde in lengthe, having on the insyde handels made very cunningly of two cordes endes; these, a God's name, wear their targettes againe the shot of our small artillerie, for they wear not able to hold canon. And with these found we great rattels swellyng bygger than the belly of a pottle pot, covered with old parchment; or dooble papers, small stones put into them to make a noys, and set upon the ende of a staff of more than two ells long,\* and this was their fyne devyse to fray our horses, when our horsemen shoulde cum at them. Howbeit, because the ryders were no babyes, nor the horses no colts: they could neyther duddle the t'one, nor fray the toother, so that the pollecye was as witles as their powr forceles." This was the cnopstarra, and was derived from the antient Caledonian lance, described by Dion Cassius.

In the Exchequer Office is an account of the expences attending "the Buryall of the late famous Prince of Memory Kinge Edwarde the Syxte," by Sir Edward Waldegrave, Knight, who was in high honor with Queen Mary. Among other charges are the following:

### " Standerdes.

£. s. d. the te in 18 0 0

### " Banners.

"Itm, for the workmanshippe of 12 banners in fyne golde, price the pece £2. - - - - 24 0 0

<sup>\*</sup>A peculiar kind of weapon is often noticed in Highland poems and tales, which is described as a sword having a thin bar of steel at the back, on which traversed an apple, as it is called, or ball of steel, in such a manner, that, when the sword descended, the ball run down to the point and gave weight to the blow; and, when raised, came back again to the hilt. They also mention, that swords were constructed with a tube along the back, in which was enclosed quicksilver to produce the same effect as the apple. For this information, I am indebted to my worthy friend, Sir Walter Scott, Bart.: but he adds, that he never saw any thing of the kind, and suspects that, by the apple, was meant merely the pommell of the sword, which not understanding, the modern seannachies, have invented this mode of explaining.

	£.	s.	d.
"Itm, 6 lardge banners of damaske wroughte in fyne golde, price			
the pece £4. 6s. 8d	26	0	0
"Itm, for 6 banners of sarcinett wroughte in fyne golde, at	20	0	•
£3. 6s. 8d. the pece, beynge in depths oone yarde and a halffe	20	0	0
manour, certyn nice instruments for war (as we thought), and they	70	0	0
shray wolled bus dissout in occo "Bannerolls, ed the was subee submed	st st		
"Itm, for 4 bannerolls of do'ble sarcinett in fyne golde, at £2	8	0	0
"Itm, moore for 21 bannerolls of sarscinett in fyne golde, price		real	
the pece £1. 3s. 8d.	24	17	0
"Itm, for 9 bannerolls of sarcinett for the pages of honor, price			*1
the pece 18s.	8	2	0
horses, when our horsemen shoulde cum at them. Howbeit, because	40	19	0
olbbub andigen bling you" The Helmett and Mauntells. good on grow			
"Itm, for a large helme gylte all over	4	0	0
"Itm, for a crowne carved and gylte wt burnished golde -	2	0	0
"Itm, a lyon karved and gylte withe burnished golde	2	0	0
"Itm, for an armynge swearde, price	1	0	0
"Itm, for gylding the same swerde and for the shapinge of the			
shethe, buckell, pend'unte, and chape, price	0	10	0
"Itm, for a targate of the kinges armes within the garter, and the	9	0	0
"Itm, for the makinge of the mauntells of clothe of golde lyned	- 1	Ü	Ů
withe white satten, twoo knoppes of burnished golde withe twoo tassels		HOD	anh
of sylke and golde	2	0	0
igners on houseback in Plate arvin, halve in his band the blace of the	13	10	0
ne evenelaciae de minera ente sina "Pensells.*			
"Itm, for 21 dozen of pencells wroughte in fyne golde and sylver			
upon do'ble sarscinett of an elle longe, at 1s. 4d	16	16	0
" Shafferons.			
"Itm, for 6 dozen of shafferons, price the pece 2s	7	4	0
* Pennoncels.  † Chaffrons, or Champ-frains.			

EDWARD THE SIXTH.

17

#### " Banner Staves.

A CONTRACTOR OF THE CONTRACTOR AND A CON	£.	s.	d.
"Itm, for 3 standerde staves and payntinge the same, price the			
staffe 4s julian in + constant and the staffe at the staff at the s	0	12	0
"Itm, 6 dozen blacke staves for the ban'ers, and ban'erolls, price			
the dosen 8s	2	8	0
"Itm, a blacke staffe for the embrawdered banner	0	1	4
"Itm, 21 dozen spere stickes, at 1s. 6d. the dozen -	1	11	6
"Itm, 6 staves to bear the canapye all blewe, the knoppes of them	ear.	-	
gylt with fyne golde, at 3s. 4d. the staffe	1	0	0
"Itm, for 3 staves, oone to beare the cooate of armes, oone for		12	
the helme, and the other beare the targate	0	6	8
	5	19	6
"Braces of Iron.			
THE RESERVE OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY OF			
"Itm, for a brace of iron to sette uppe the helmett, and four		33	
braces moore, as three for the standerdes, and oone for the great			•
banner, price	1	0	0
"Itm, 36 brases for the banners and bannerolles	2	3	0
"Itm, to the mason for settinge and soderinge in the sayde brases in places apoynted for him and his men	9	10	•
"Itm, for 7 brases of iron at 1s. the brase -	2		0
"Itm, for a polle axe	0	7	0
	1	0	0
"Itm for an armynga swanda and a smalle ofl		In	0
"Itm, for an armynge swerde and a gurdle of velvett	0		
"Itm, for an armynge swerde and a gurdle of velvett "Itm, a payer of gylte spurres, price	0		0

The figure on horseback in Plate LXVII, holds in his hand the bâton of the great Duke of Alva, of browned steel, covered with the results of calculations in gold, separated from each other by lines of silver, and made hollow to contain the muster-roll of the army.\*

<sup>\*</sup> This instructive curiosity is in my son's collection.

# Mary the First.

1553.



ARLY in this reign no distinction can be discovered in the form of the armour from that of the preceding; and, indeed, towards its close, there does not appear any alteration except that the breast-plates were not quite so long. In Plate LXVIII has been represented a group of soldiers of this reign consisting of a pikeman, a billman, a harquebusier, and an archer. The first of these wears that kind of armour called a corselet of which there are several of James the First's time in the Tower of London and in private collections. It consists of a

breast-plate with skirts made of overlapping plates called tasses, a back-plate and a gorget, and with it is worn what is called a combed morian, i. e. having a ridge on its top. This had its place supplied in the time of James I, by the pot or steel hat, which differs from the morion in being flatter in the crown, having a wider rim, and that rim inclining downwards.

The man who has the black-bill is in a coat of plate, and wears a morion. The harquebusier has no other armour than the sallet on his head which, as well as the morion, is taken from one in my son's collection.\* He carries

<sup>\*</sup> The harquebusiers of Italy, however, wore back and breast-plates till the close of Elizabeth's reign, See Vecellio's Abiti Antichi e Moderni, anno 1590.

his hagbut on his right shoulder holding it a little above the but end; at his side is his sword, from his neck his powder horn is suspended, and in his left hand he holds his match. The archer wears a brigandine jacket and skull-cap taken from specimens in the Tower of London, and has a maule at his back.

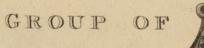
A Bavarian dag of this period is in the armoury of my son. It is very short scarcely exceeding two feet in length. The barrel is partially engraved, and has on it the Nuremburgh stamp; the lock has the same, and also another, consisting of a heart pierced with an arrow. The wheel has four furrows. In the same collection is a pistol of this time, with its stock like the dag, inlaid with ivory, but its wheel with five furrows, and capped.

Cannons were sometimes, at this period, called vibrelles, and that in England, for Rymer has preserved\* a letter of Queen Mary's, in which she says: Vi et armis, videlicet gladiis, tormentis sive vibrellis vulgariter vocatis canons, &c. "By force and arms, namely, with swords, pieces of artillery, or vibrelles, commonly called cannons," &c.; the date of it is 1554. At Abbeville are some skull-caps with umbrils, a few of which have found their way into England, and one into my son's collection, which are said to have been taken from the English at the capture of Calais, during this period. They are covered with a grating, and have several thin iron bars to drop down over the face, and round the neck. Being fastened with hinges, these pieces will bend up and secure under an oval plate at top of the casque held down upon them by means of a spring. I am, however, much inclined to doubt their being older than the time of Louis XIV, judging that they succeeded the barred helmets of Oliver Cromwell's time. One is represented at the bottom of Plate LXVIII.

Etienne de Perlin, a Frenchman, who wrote an account of a tour he made in England in the year 1558, speaking of the quarter sessions, gives the following curious account: "The servants carry pointed bucklers, even those of bishops and prelates, and the men commonly exercise themselves with the bow. The husbandmen, when they till the ground, leave their bucklers and swords, or sometimes their bow in the corner of the field, so that, in this land, every body bears arms."

The statute of the 4th and 5th of Philip and Mary, repealing all other acts respecting keeping armour and horses, shews the quantity and kind of armour and weapons that were to be kept, at that time, by persons of different estates.







SOLDIERS.

A STATE OF THE STA

- "All temporal persons having estates of a thousand pounds or upwards shall, from the 1st May, 1558, keep six horses or geldings fit for mounting demi-launces, three of them at least to have sufficient harness, steele saddles,\* and weapons requisite and appertaining to the said demy-launces, horses, or geldings; and ten light horses or geldings with the weapons and harness requisite for light horsemen. Also forty corselets furnished,† forty almaine rivetts, or instead of the said forty almaine rivetts, forty coats of plate,‡ corselets or brigandines\$ furnished; forty pikes, thirty long bowes, thirty sheaf || of arrowes, thirty steele cappes or sculles, twenty black bills¶ or halberts, twenty haquebuts,\*\* and twenty morians†† or sallets.‡‡
- "Temporal persons having estates to the value of a thousand marks and upwards, and under the clear yearly value of a thousand pounds, to maintain four horses or geldings for demi-launces, whereof two, at the least, to be horses, with sufficient weapons, saddles, meete and requisite to the said demi-launces; six light horses with furniture, &c., necessary for the same; thirty corcelets, or brigandines furnished, thirty pikes, twenty long bows, twenty sheaf of arrowes, twenty steel caps or sculls, ten black bills or halberts, ten haquebuts, and ten morians or sallets.
- "Every temporal person having £400 per annum, and under the clear yearly value of 1000 marks, to keep two horses, or one horse and one gelding, for demilaunces furnished as above; four geldings for light horses, twenty corcelets furnished, twenty almaine rivetts furnished, or instead thereof, twenty coats of plate, corcelets, or brigandines furnished; twenty pikes, fifteen long bowes,
  - \* Saddles, whose burrs, or bows and cantles were covered with steel.
- † The corselet was a species of armour chiefly worn by pikemen, who were thence often denominated corselets. Strictly speaking, the word corselet, meant only that part which covered the corse or body, but was generally used to express the whole suit, under the term of a corselet furnished or complete, which included the head-piece and gorget, the back and breasts with skirts of iron, called tasses or tassets, hanging over the thighs.
- ‡ The coat of plate was made of several pieces of metal attached to each other by wires. One of these, from Vienna, is in my son's armoury.
- § The brigandine was composed of a number of small plates of iron sewed upon quilted linen or leather through a small hole in the centre of each plate, their edges being laid over each other: these were covered with leather or cloth, so as to have the appearance of common coats; they were proof against the stroke of a sword, or push of a pike, and yet extremely pliable to every motion of the body. One of Elizabeth's time, which belonged to an antient Kentish bowman, is in my son's collection.
  - || Each sheaf consisted of twenty-four arrows.
- These were so called from their blades being blacked instead of being kept bright. There is one in the possession of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq.
- \*\* Hand-guns, were so called from the stock being haqued or hooked, to be held steadily. Haques crooked, were those whose stocks were more bent.
  - †† A conical skull-cap, with a rim round it, borrowed from the Spanish Moors.
  - ‡‡ Head-pieces which resembled, in some measure, the morian, and somewhat the pot or iron-hat.

fifteen sheaves of arrowes, fifteen steel caps or sculls, six haquebuts, and six morains or sallets.

- "Temporal persons having clear £200 per annum, and under £400 per annum, one great horse or gelding fit for a demi-launce, with sufficient furniture and harness, steeled saddle, &c., two geldings for light horse, with harness and weapons as aforesaid; ten corcelets furnished, ten almaine rivetts, or instead thereof, ten coats of plate, corcelets or brigandines furnished, ten pikes, eight long bows, eight sheafs of arrowes, eight steel caps or sculls, three haquebuts, and three morians or sallets.
- "Every temporal person, &c. having £100 or under £200 per annum, two geldings and furniture, &c., for light horsemen, three corcelets furnished, three almaine rivetts, corcelets or brigandines furnished, three long pikes, three bows, three sheafs of arrowes, three steel caps or sculls, two haquebuts, and two morians or sallets.
- "Temporal persons having 100 marks and under £100 per annum, one gelding and furniture for a light horseman, two corcelets furnished, two almaine rivetts, coats of plate or brigandines furnished, two pikes, two long bowes, two sheafs of arrowes, two steel caps or sculls, one haquebut, one morian or sallet.
- "Temporal persons having £40 or under 100 marks per annum, two corcelets furnished, two almaine rivetts, corcelets or brigandines furnished; two pikes, one long bowe, one sheaf of arrowes, one steel cap or scull, two haquebuts, two morians or sallets.
- "Persons having £20 and under £40 per annum, one corcelet furnished, one pike, one haquebut, one morian or sallet, one long bowe, one sheaf of arrowes, and one steel cap or scull.
- "Temporal persons having £10 and under £20 per annum, one almaine rivett, a coat of plate or brigandine furnished, one haquebut, one morian or sallet, and one long bowe, one sheaf of arrowes, and one steel cap or scull.
- "Temporal persons having £5 and under £10 per annum, one coat of plate furnished, one black bill or halbert, one long bowe and one sheaf of arrowes, one steel cap or scull.
- "Temporal persons having goods and chattels to the amount of 1000 marks, one horse or gelding furnished for a demi-launce, and gelding furnished for a light horseman, or eighteen corcelets furnished instead of the said horse and

gelding, and furniture of the same at their choice; two corcelets furnished, two almaine rivetts, or instead thereof two corcelets, or two brigandines furnished, two pikes, four long bowes, four sheafs of arrowes, four steel caps or sculls, and three haquebuts, with three morians or sallets.

- "Temporal persons having goods, &c. to the amount of £400 and above, and under 1000 marks, one gelding for a light horseman, properly furnished, or instead thereof nine corcelets furnished at his choice, and one other corcelet furnished; one pike, two almaine rivetts, or plate-coates, or brigandines furnished, one haquebut, two long bowes, two sheafs of arrowes, and two steel caps or sculls.
- "Goods, &c. to the amount of £200 and upwards, and under £400 one corcelet furnished, one pike, two almaine rivetts, plate-coats, or brigandines furnished; one haquebut, one morian or sallet, two long bowes, two sheafs of arrowes, and two sculls or steel caps.
- "Goods, &c. to the amount of £100 or above, and under £200 one corcelet furnished, one pike, one pair of almaine rivetts, one plate-coat, or pair of brigandines furnished, two long bowes, and two sheafs of arrowes and two sculls.
- "Goods, &c. to the amount of £40 and under £100 two pair of almaine rivetts, or two coats of plate or brigandines furnished, one long bowe, one sheaf of arrowes, one steel cap or one scull, and one black bill or halbert.
- "Goods, &c. to the amount of £20 and upwards, and under £40 one pair of almaine rivetts, or one coat of plate, or one pair of brigandines; two long bowes, two sheafs of arrowes, two sculls or steel caps, and one black bill or halbert.
- "Goods, &c. to the amount of £10 and above, and under £20 one long bowe, one sheaf of arrowes with one steel cap or scull, and one black bill or halbert.
- "Temporal persons not charged by this act, having annuities, copyholds, or estate of inheritance to the clear yearly value of £30 or upwards, to be chargeable with furniture of war, according to the proportion appointed for goods and chattels.
- "And every person who, by the act of the 33d of King Henry VIII, c. 5, was bound by reason, that his wife should wear such kind of apparell, or other thing, as in the same statute is mentioned and declared, to keepe or find one great stoned trotting horse, viz: Every person temporall whose wife (not being

divorced nor willingly absenting herself from him) doth weare any gowne of silke, French hood, or bonet of velvet, with any habiliment, past, or edge of golde, pearle, or stone, or any chaine of golde about her necke, or in her partlet, or in any apparell of her body, except the sonnes and heires apparent of dukes, marqueses, earles, viconts, and barons, and others having hereditaments to the yearly value of 600 marks or above, during the life of their fathers; and wardes having hereditaments of the yearly value of £200, and who are not by this act before charged, to have, maintaine, and keep any horse or gelding; shall, from the said 1st of May, have, keep and maintain, one gelding, able and meete for a light horseman, with sufficient harness and weapon for the same, in suche manner and forme, as every person having lordships, houses, lands, &c., to the clear yearly value of 100 marks is appointed to have.

- "Any person chargeable by this act, who, for three whole months from the 1st of May, shall lack or want the horses or armour, with which he is charged, shall forfeit for every horse or gelding, in which he is deficient, ten pounds; for every demi-launce and furniture, three pounds; for every corcelet and furniture of the same, forty shillings; and for every almaine rivett, coat of plate or brigandine and furniture of the same, twenty shillings; and for every bow, and sheaf of arrowes, bill, halbert, hacquebut, steel cap, scull, morian, and sallet, ten shillings; one half of these forfeitures to the king and queen, the other half to the parties suing for the same.
- "The inhabitants of all cities, burroughs, towns, parishes, &c., other than such as are specially charged before in this act, shall keep, and maintain, at their common charges, such harneis and weapons as shall be appointed by the commissioners of the king and queen, to be kept in such places as shall, by the said commissioners, be appointed.
- "Indentures to be made of the number and kinds thereof between two or more of the said commissioners, and twelve, eight or four of the principal inhabitants of every such city, borrough, &c., &c., one part to remain with the chief officer of the said city, &c., and the other part with the clerk of the peace of the county. And if any of the inhabitants shall be deficient for three months in any of the articles directed to be found, they shall forfeit for every article according to the proportion before mentioned, to be applied and levied as there directed.
  - "The lord chancellor for the time being shall have full power to grant

commissions under the great seal of England, to as many justices of every shire or county, as he shall deem necessary for making this appointment of horses and armour. This act not to invalidate any covenant between a landlord and his tenant for finding of horses, armour, or weapons.

- "The justices of every county are hereby authorised to make search and view from time to time of and for the horses, armour, &c., to be kept by persons possessed of £200 per annum, and not above £400 per annum; or to be found by persons chargeable on account of their goods, chattels, &c., as aforesaid, and to hear and determine, at their quarter sessions, every default committed or done, contrary to this act, within the county, and to levy the penalties.
- "Any soldier making sale of his horse, harneis, or weapon, or any of them, contrary to the form of the statute made in the said 2d and 3d year of the late king, i. e. the 2d and 3d of King Edward VI, shall incur the penalty of the said statute, and the sale shall be void, the purchaser knowing him to be a soldier. All presentments and prosecutions to be within one year after the commission of the offence. Persons prosecuted for deficiencies of armour may plead their inability to procure it, on account of the want of it within the realm, which plea, if true, shall be a sufficient justification; if denied, issue to be joined, and the trial of such issue only had by the certificate of the lord chancellor, the lord president of the council, the lord steward of the king's and queen's most honourable household, the lord privie seal, the lord admiral, and the lord chamberlain of the said household, or by three of them under their hands and seals, &c., &c., this act or any usage to the contrary notwithstanding. No person to be charged both for lands and goods. This act not to repeal the act of the 33d Henry VIII, for having long bowes, and exercising archery.
- "Provided any horses shall die, or be killed, or armour be lost or expended in defence of the realm, the owner shall not be prosecuted for the deficiency within one year after such loss.
- "The want of a gantlet or gantlets shall not be reckoned a deficiency for a corcelet. The servants of such persons as are bound to find a haquebut, may exercise themselves in shooting at such marks as are limited and appointed by the 33d of Henry VIII, so that they do not use such haquebut in any highway. This act not to extend to Wales, Lancaster, or Chester, nor to oblige any one to have or to find a haquebut, but that they may, at their will and pleasure, have and keep, instead of every haquebut charged in this act, one long bowe, and

one sheaf of arrowes, over and above such other armour and munition, as it is by the laws of the realm appointed.

"The lord chancellor or lord keeper of the great seal, may, from time to time, by virtue of the king's commission, appoint commissioners in every city, borrough, &c., &c., as well in England as Wales, consisting of justices, with other persons joined with them, as he shall think meet, to take a view of armour, and to assign what harneis, &c., they shall be bound to provide and keep."

From this comprehensive statute we learn, that, in the year 1558, the military force of the kingdom consisted of demi-launces, with steeled fronts and backs to their saddles, who supplied the place of men at arms; and instead of light, became the heavy cavalry—of light horse who replaced the demi-launces—and of an infantry consisting of the following kinds of troops.

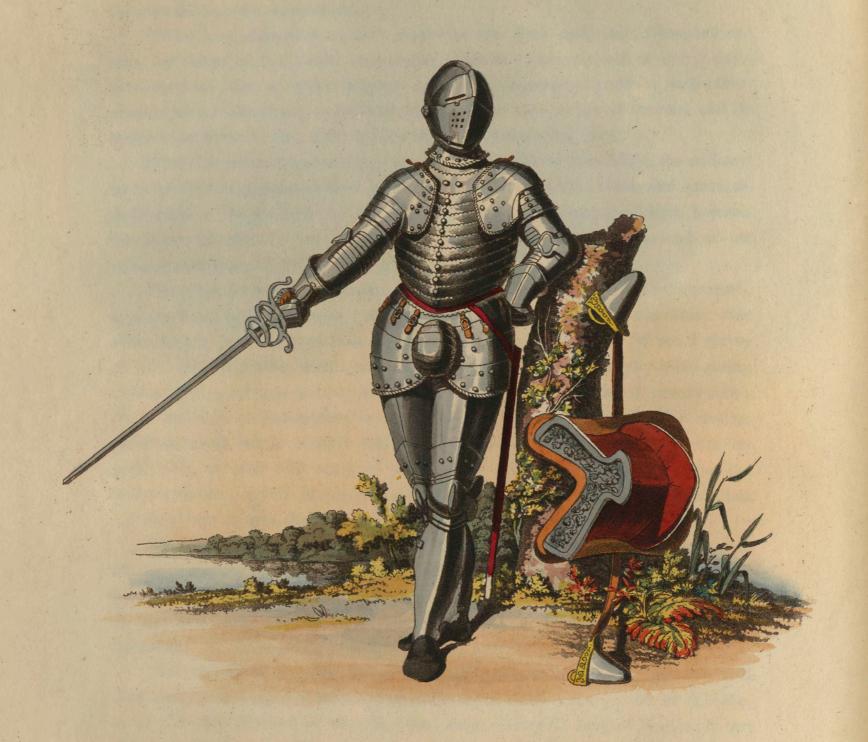
The pikemen who wore corslets, which consisted of a breast-plate with tassets, a back-plate, a gorget, a pair of gauntlets, and a steel hat; the archers, who wore each a pair of brigandines, consisting of a back and breast of small plates of iron quilted within some stuff, and covered generally with sky-blue cloth, with a steel scull-cap, a bow, a sheaf of arrows, which contained twenty-four; black-bill men, or halbardiers, who were clad each in a pair of almaine rivetts, made of small bands of plate laid over each other, with moveable rivetts on each side, or else with coats of plate which seem to have differed from the almaine rivetts, merely in being made of bits of metal;\* with morians or sallets on their heads; and those who carried haquebuts. See Plate LXVIII.

We further learn the proportion of these several kinds of troops. It may not be unworthy of remark, that it appears from some parts of this statute, the rulers of this reign were not very solicitous to introduce the general use of fire-arms into the country, but considered a long-bow as equal to a haquebut.

The armour of the men at arms is not noticed in this act, as they still continued to be formed of the nobility and knights of the country. M. de la Noüe, in his Military Discourses, tells us, that, under Henry II, king of France, it was made much lighter than before, so that a man could more easily wear it twenty-four hours than that of the previous reign. About the time, however, of Queen Mary, the appellation of men at arms, hitherto given to the heavy cavalry, seems to have been changed to that of spears or spearmen, and launces or lancers.

<sup>\*</sup> There is a pair of breeches of very small plates, stitched between two pieces of cotton, in the collection of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq. which may be of the nature of a coat of plate, as well as that mentioned before.

the policies our extrust temperature has a product to every side to memory side.



SUIT OF

In the possession of



ARMOUR,

Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq."

A.D.1555.

In my son's collection is the armour of a man at arms of this period,\* of Bologna. It belonged to a Count Gironi, of that time, and was, till lately, in the possession of one of his descendants. It is one of those rare suits called splints, having not only splints at the elbows, but the breast and back-plates made flexible in the same manner; to lighten the weight of the armour, it is without sollerets, but the stirrups, which are beautifully chased and gilt, have attached to them steel feet-caps. To this suit, also, is a flexible cod-piece, for the convenience of sitting on the saddle. It is represented in Plate LXIX.†

Breasts and backs of several pieces never obtained general approbation, for, though they admitted more play for the body, they were more liable to expose it by being disjointed. That the point of the lance might not penetrate, the outer edge of each lamina as placed upwards, but, by this position, they were more easily assailed by the martel de fer, and such instruments whose points struck downwards.

The ornament of the initial letter of this reign is copied from that on a breastplate of the period in my son's armoury, and contains the figure of a man armed with a military fork, two varieties of which are in the same collection.

Bulwer says, in his Pedigree of the English Gallant: "A proclamation was made in Queen Mary's time, that no man should wear his shoes above six inches square at the toes;" which shews that, in England, the square toe of Henry the Eighth's time had been continued throughout the last reign, and until the beginning of this, which will account for such suits of armour in the Tower of London as are of Edward the Sixth's time, being squarer at the ends of the sollerets than that in my son's collection. The same author says, that, "soon after," this proclamation, "picked shoes came again into vogue," which is proved by the Earl of Leicester's armour in the Tower of London.

Lord Wentworth, in a letter to Queen Mary, once or twice makes mention of a species of fire-arms, called a currier, while writing respecting the siege of Calais.§ It was chiefly used in sieges, and differed but little from the hagbut. Very little notice, however, has been taken of it by military writers.

<sup>\*</sup> He has also a most splendidly engraved and gilt suit of the commencement of this reign.

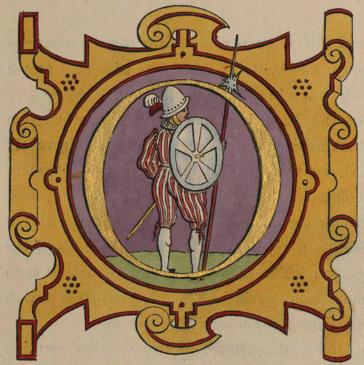
<sup>†</sup> At the foot of this plate is a German pennated dagger, of the time of Henry VIII, in the possession of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq.

<sup>‡</sup> P. 548.

<sup>§</sup> State papers, by Lord Hardwick.

## Elizabeth.

1558.



F the commencement of this reign rather than the date of the sculpture, is the monumental effigy of Thomas Wyndham, Esq. at Felbrigg Church, Norfolk, who died 1599. He is represented in the costume of a man at arms, but with his sollerets approaching to the pointed shape; has a long sword at his left hip, and a dagger at his right.

In a book, formerly in the possession of the Duchess of Portsmouth, is a drawing of the suit of armour which belonged to

Robert Dudley, Earl of Leicester, and which it was the custom to bring out and wear at the Tilt-yard annually, on the 27th of November. It is remarkable for having chain-mail on the insteps of the sollerets, and, in that respect, corresponds with another in the Tower of London, made to represent the slashed dresses of the day, but not actually the one belonging to the earl. The chain-mail has, however, apparently been moved from some other suit, as, on examination, this appears to have ended at the ankles, and been worn with footed stirrups. The armour of Robert Dudley and that which covered his horse have not only the ragged staff on them, but the initials R. L. Another

ELIZABETH. 29

drawing of a superb suit of armour in this book, for the Earl of Essex, has been engraved in Strutt's Dresses and Habits of the People of England.

There is a representation of Clifford, Earl of Cornwall, in the armour which he wore at a tournament in presence of the queen, which exhibits him with large skirts of cloth appearing from under his breast-plate, and reaching nearly to his knees, folding over each other. He has also wide sleeves over his pauldrons, gathered at the shoulders and nearly touching his elbows.

Stowe mentions\* that, "in the month of April 1560, were great justs at Westminster, and running at the tilt. There rode the trumpeters blowing their trumpets, with scarfs of white and black sarcenet. Also the two kings of arms and the heralds, Somerset, Lancaster, Richmond, York, Rouge Dragon, and more of them having scarfs of white and black sarcenet about their necks. And the sevenight after were the like justings at court. The Earl of Essex, Lord Robert Dudley, and three more against the Earl of Northumberland, the Lord Ambrose Dudley, and the Lord Hunsdon, and Mr. Cornwallys. Many staves were broken. There stood in the standing as judges, Lord Marquess Northampton, Lord of Rutland, and Lord of Pembroke, and the French ambassador. And by chance of the breaking of a staff, a piece flew up where the judges sat. This hit my Lord of Pembroke."

In the German Thurnier Buch, by George Rixner, edit. 1566, are several plates which represent the various ceremonies that took place at the tournaments of this period. We have first the dinner. In this the tables are placed in an elevated part of the room, and at the head, over the king's seat, is an ample canopy, a large side-board of plate being at the other end. The servants each carry three dishes placed on one another, and held together by a napkin passed over them; there is also music and a guard of halbardiers, and glaive men in attendance.

Next we have the horses of the knights fully caparisoned, their necks being fully enveloped by overlapping plates. They are held by their pages, while they themselves, in their ordinary clothes, are seen entering an apartment, round which, on a small elevation, are placed several suits of armour, the legs of which lie on the floor below, and the helmets with their crests are arranged on a shelf above. The several ladies also appear, whose office it was to present these to the respective knights.

Another plate exhibits the ladies presenting the helmets to the knights who

have put on all the rest of their armour, these they take from a table that appears covered with them, trumpets and kettle drums being sounded by musicians in a gallery above.

Another represents a just by two knights across a barrier placed diagonally: others are waiting to encounter, and lances to supply the place of such as may be broken, are put in great numbers against a gallery. The king's box is known by the cloths of gold by which it is ornamented, and by the halbardiers who are stationed in front.

We have next a tournament in which four knights are engaged with lances and two with swords, their lances having been broken. About a dozen more knights are ready to combat, one of whom is receiving a lance from the gallery in which they are kept. Among the persons there, may be discerned the fool. All the knights are attended by their squires and pages, wear swords, and are fully armed.

A tournament on foot is next represented. It takes place within double lists, and across a barrier, being between eight knights, two of whom use swords, and the rest lances. Harquebusiers and lansquenets, with drums and fifes, are in attendance, the former firing their pieces for amusement. A tall man, dressed like a sylvan deity, appears in the outer list with a fifer by him; and two tents are pitched within the inner one.

Another plate displays the knights disarmed marching each with a lady to martial music, and by torch light round the hall of the palace to the ball room.

In this the knights are fully armed from head to foot but, in other similar works of this period, they are represented as combatting in the tournament invariably without any armour on their legs and thighs.

In the 13th year of Elizabeth, A.D. 1571, Simon Low and John Kime obtained a writ of right against Thomas Paramore for a manor and certain lands in the isle of Hartie near that of Sheppey, in the county of Kent. Paramore pleaded his right to defend himself by duel. This was accepted, and Paramore brought his champion named George Thorne, a strong square built man, before the justice of the civil pleas at Westminster. The plaintiffs produced Henry Nailer a wool carder, not equally noble, but sufficiently skilful. Thorne as a symbol of challenge to the duel threw on the ground a gauntlet, which Nailer instantly took up confirming the agreement. Both sides promised and made oath that, on the following Monday after the morrow of the Trinity, they would fight the duel in Tothill fields. In the mean time, however, by command of Her Majesty, who abhorred the slaughter,

ELIZABETH. 31

the cause was compromised in such wise that Paramore yielded up the litigated land on the plaintiffs paying a certain price; but, however, that the matter might not occasion loss to Paramore, it was agreed that both should proceed to the solemnity of the duel, and that the sureties, who had obliged themselves to produce champions on both sides, should exhibit them in the accustomed manner. The plaintiffs, however, when last called upon were not to appear, so that by not prosecuting their cause they should lose it.

On the aforesaid day of battle, a quadrangular arena was made on Tothill fields near Westminster, containing twenty rods in length and the same in breadth, with double lists to include the champions and exclude the crowd gathered round. At its eastern side was erected a stage with a tribunal more elevated to form a court of civil pleas; where appeared assembled the judges and ministers of the same. The opposite side was appropriated to seats for the spectators in the manner of a theatre. Behind the stage or tribunal two tents were pitched, one for Nailer the other for Thorne. On the morning appointed for the fight, Nailer put on a doublet and slops of satin completely of a martial colour, with a head-piece of shaggy flax as it was called, adorned with a wreath and feathers of a blood colour, and boldly marched from London preceded by drums and trumpets sounding. There were borne before him the gauntlet which Thorne had thrown down placed on the point of a sword, and by one of the royal guards the truncheon or baton, with which the duel was to be fought, an ell in length and armed with a horn at its extremity and a shield of the toughest hide. In this manner he entered Tothill fields, and was conducted, by Sir Jerome Bowes, knight, to his tent. Thorne had been previously placed in his tent by Sir Henry Cheney, knight.

About the tenth hour, the whole court of civil pleas moved from Westminster hall to the stage and martial tribunal already prepared, according to the usual and stated manner. The lord chief justice and his coadjutors being seated before the tribunal, and the serjeants at law standing in their places, and all clad in their scarlet, and more solemn habits, the crier after three exclamations for attention called for the plaintiffs. But these not appearing, the sureties of Henry Nailer were summoned in like manner, and ordered to produce the same Henry the champion of the plaintiffs. Then that Nailer entered the arena from the left of the tribunal bare headed, and bare legged from the knee downwards, and the sleeves of his doublet unfastened from his arms. But he was led by the hand of Sir Jerome Bowes who also bore his truncheon round the circuit of the arena, until he arrived opposite to the justices. There alternately having bent his knees, he slowly proceeded into the very middle, and there renewed the same ceremony, until he

passed the paling of the tribunal called the barrier where he made a third obeisance. His shield in the mean time being got ready by some one who stood behind, he raised it from his side upwards to the front, and exhibited himself ready to commence the fight. He was then ordered by the court to stand on the right.

The sureties of George Thorne having in like manner been called, and it being pointed out to them that they should produce him himself; Sir Henry Cheney led forth from the right corner of the arena with similar ceremony the same George, making a circuit towards the tribunal, when being there exhibited the court ordered him to stand on the left. The crier proclaimed silence, and that no one, not already admitted, could enter the arena, as the champions had come together standing within the lists. The plaintiffs were then, for the last time, cited peremptorily; but, being deficient in this last act, one of the serjeants, who was Paramore's counsel, asked, that the circumstance might be noted in their books. This being done, the chief justice repeating the proceedings in the cause from the commencement, pronounced the plaintiffs to have failed, and therefore adjudged the land to Paramore, dismissing the champions and sureties, and commanding Nailer to restore the gauntlet, which had been the pledge of battle, to Thorne.\*

We may learn the usual contents of private armouries at this period from the following documents in the possession of the Earl of Shrewsbury.

Extract from "the Inventory of the Goodes and Howsholde Stuffe of Dame Frances
Talbott of Peperhyll in the Countye of Salope, Wydowe.

#### " In the Clozet over the Hall.

"Item, thryescore blacke bylles for the warres	的特別的 <del>自</del> 为的	19 Years	iij <sup>h</sup>
"Itm, thryttye & one jackes or habbergynnes;	Phylain s	hy whist	iij
"Itm, ieron ware -	do anive	guo cula	xxvij*"

Extract from an "Inventory taken at Grafton and Salwarpe of the Goodes and Chattells there.

"Item in the armorye, two armors for my Mr's owne bodye, one black, one white, the stoddes beinge gilt, servinge both for horsebacke and a foote, wth cases of cotton, being put into ij chestes.

<sup>\*</sup> Spelman's Glossary.

<sup>†</sup> Dated 28th Nov. 10 Elizabeth.

This is one, among many other instances, of the different significations of the terms for armour at distinct periods.

<sup>§</sup> Dated 9th June, 12Elizabeth.

<sup>||</sup> At Grafton.

A shyrte of mayle wth a piece of sleaves for hymselfe.

One demy lance armor wth a battell axe.

ij corselettes wth there moryans.

ij Almon ryvettes.

One old peny platt cotte.\*

v jackes, xj sallettes, a pollaxe, xj billes, xj sculles, vj payre of slives, w<sup>th</sup> meale,† a shaveron, a payre of gantlettes, iij kalyvers, ij handgonnes, an arming sworde, ij styles‡ for saddles, one dager, two bowes, and iij sheffe of arrowes, a tente and a tente polle, one sworde, one rap<sup>r</sup>,§ ij flaskes and ij tuche boxes, one smale barrell of gounpowder, iiij ropes for matches, v staffe torches, two luttes."

Of the powder-flasks and touch-boxes of this time, there is a great variety curiously and splendidly ornamented, in the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq.

The monumental effigy of Sir H. Bradburne, at this period, represents him with his cuishes opened on account of the wide-puffed breeches, but with a chain-mail apronunder them; and that of Sir Thomas Cockayne, in Ashbourne Church, Derbyshire, who died in 1585, shews that these upper parts of the cuishes were held to their place by a wide strap that passed over the posteriors.

Of the backs, breasts, and narrow-rimmed morians, worn at this time, by the Genoese infantry, a great variety are in the collection of my son. They are all covered with engravings, and, by their form, shew that the projection of the tapul was, at this time, removed to the bottom of the breast-plate.

It must be observed, however, that the Swiss still continued the forms and fashions of Henry the Eighth's time, as appears in their painted glass of this date, as well as in the engraving of one in Montfaucon's Mon. Fran.

A constant apprehension of an invasion from Spain, during the first part of the reign of Queen Elizabeth, induced that queen to be very attentive to her internal forces, and was the cause of the following commission, and the regulations therein contained, enacted solely by her own authority, with the advice of her privy council.¶

- \* Made with overlapping circular plates of iron. A small part of such a coat is in the Tower of London.
- † Sleeves of mail.
- ‡ Steel plates.
- § Rapier.

<sup>|</sup> In actual suits of armour of this period, the cuishes are made to separate, if necessary, at two different lengths, according to the size of the trunk hose, but to be united when worn without in time of battle. The monumental effigy of Carey, Earl of Totness, in the Church of Stratford upon Ayon, has the cuishes close, though worn over the trunk-hose.

<sup>¶</sup> The original is preserved in the Harleian Library in the British Museum, No. 6,844.

"Instructions for the execution of the commission directed to all the justices of the peace in the countie of . . . . . . for generall musters, and trayning, of all manner of persons, hable for the warrs, to serve as well on horseback as on foote.

"The principal intent of the queen's majestie, as may appear by the express wordes of her majestie's commission, is to have perfect knowledge of the numbers, qualities, habilities, and sufficiencie of all her subjects in that countie, as by the like commission sent into all other shires of the realme; the like is intended from the age of sixteen yeares upwarde, that may be founde hable to beare armoure, or to use weapon on horsebacke, or on foote, and out of that totall and universall nomber being viewed, mustered and registered, to have a convenient and sufficient nomber of the most hable, to be chosen and collected, to be by the reasonable chardge of the inhabitants in everie shire tryed, armed and weaponed, and so consequentlie taughte and trayned, for to use, handle and exercise their horses, armure, shott and other weapons, both on horsebacke, and on foote, for the service and defense of her majestie, her crown and realme, against all attempts both inward and outwarde: for which purpose althoughe her majestie doubte not, but that according to the speciall trust reposed in you, and for that the kynde of service at this tyme, tendeth onlie for contynuaunce of the publick peace; whiche by Godd's goodness, the realme now enjoye the more than any other in Christendome dothe; you will carefullie and spedelie ymploie your whole understandinges, labours, and powers, without any respects of chardges, or paynes to execute the commission in all poyntes tending universally to so good an ende." It then goes on to a choice of the special men to take the chief care of the commission, and to declare, that the greater part shall proceed in the absence of the rest; that the time for commencing the musters shall be referred to the direction of the commissioners, who shall issue their "precepte to cause all persons to be warned to prepare themselves, and their armour and weapons in readyness to be mustered whensoever theie shall be called," &c. It next sets forth

"The Articles of the Instructyons." These commence with the "Precepts of summons to all persons to appere;" wherein it is stated, that "it shall be well don, to commande in your precepte that the names and surnames of all persons in everie parishe, aperte hable to bear armour or to use weapons, as above is saide, be ymmediatelie collected and put in writing, by the saide constables of the hundreds or other like officers, used in such cases; namyne in the saide writinge, or note, everie householder by himself, with his sonnes,

ELIZABETH. 35

servants, prentices, journeymen, or any other sojourners or indwellers remayninge in their houses, being hable to weare armure or use weapons mete for the warres. And that the saide householders be charged to bringe all the saide persons by name, with their armour and weapons at suche several tymes and places, as shalbe thereto lymited. And so after the returne to the commissioners of the said writinge, conteyning theire names, the said commissioners shall call for the persons, and proceed to the musters of them, and register the names of such as shall appear, with notes of their armour and weapons; and when some shall not have armour or weapons mete there, it shall be noted to what kinde of service for the warres everie of the saide persons shall seme mete, wherein is meant, not to omytte to note what number of them maie serve for laborers or pioneers, and who are also carpenters, smythes, or such like artificers, so as there may be some use had of their habilities for service of their countrie, as cause shall require, though their shall not have armor."

It then goes on to lay down some rules for avoiding unnecessary trouble, to exempt from personal appearance, prelates, lords of parliament, and privy counsellors, but to direct that they "shall sende hable servants and household men, at some convenient and severall tymes and places to be viewed, mustered and registered as others are or shalbe, with their armour and weapons, so as there maie be nevertheless a several muster book made of all the household servants of the saide clergie aparte. And as for the servants of the saide judges and judicial officers, with all their furnyture of armour and weapons to be added to the musters of the layetie, according to their several dwellinge places. And as for any household servants of any of the prelates and lords of parliament, or of any of the privie counsail. because the said prelates for their persons are to be spared, and the personal services of the saide lordes temporall, or counsellors are to be directed by speciall commandment of her majestie, about her person, or otherwise accordinge to their callinges; there is another speciall order appoynted aparte from her majestie to the said prelates, lordes and counsaillors, to certifie in writinge to her majestie, the numbers and names of their household servants mete to serve with them, being their lordes and masters, with the furnyture also of their horses, geldinges, armour and weapons, which their have or oughte to have in readynes, or will encrease for her majesties service, and for all others that are not household servauntes, or dalie attendauntes, to anie of the saide temporall lordes of parliament or counsaillors, and yet havinge their dwellinge and proper householdes in that shire,

VOL III.

pretending that their doe belonge to any of the saide lordes temporall or counsaillors as retaynors, such shalbe summoned in like case as others shalbe at their dwellinge-houses to appeare, and shalbe mustered and chardged accordinge to their habilities to be furnished with armour and weapons, and shall be chargeable to repair therewith to all musters, and to resorte to any service within the sheire, as any other of the same sheire shall be chardged, upon calling for, to the defence of the sea coaste, or invasion of the realme." After this it directs, that "all imperfeccyons, in the persons appearing, and in the armures, weapons and such like," shall be reformed in the first musters.

"Item, where alwaies of verie ancyent tyme there hath been and still are a nomber certain of soldiers furnished of armure, and weapons, to be founde of the comon chardge of everie towne or parishe, over besides suche particular persons as are by the late statutes chargeable by reason of their own private possessions or goods to finde soldyers, armure and weapons," they shall be registered separately. "And for the more encrease of hable men to be furnished with armour and weapons, the commissioners shall cause the meaner sorte of freeholders, franklyns, fermors or merchants, being not of sufficient valewe of freeholde or of goods to have one whole furniture of armour or weapons, to be treated withall by good persuasion, and for the love of their countrie to be induced to joyne together by two or three or more, in the provision of a furniture, either of a pikeman, archer, or harquebusier, to serve as occasion shall requier. And furdermore they shall persuade all manner of riche ffarmours and freeholders to keep in their house persons mete for archerie and shott, &c."

The commissioners are next to select "captaynes and petty-captaines," and then the instructions proceed, with respect to the best mode of training. Next: "Item, there shalbe regarde had howe to divide and distribute the use of the weapons, in the sortinge of the bands, that there maie be in every hundred footmen, at the least fortye harquebusiers, and twenty archers, if so it mai be convenientlie procured, and to that end, the said commissioners shall use all good perswasions, and shall give some good example in the countrie, by exercise in games and matches, to encrease those two weapons foreseyenge, that the archers maie be men of strengthe, and so the more hable to shoote in the longe bowes; and because it is not lawfull for any person, but such as by the statute are thereto licensed, to shoot in any hand-gonne, or harquebuss, her majestie is pleased, that all such as shalbe appoynted by the commissioners to

ELIZABETH. 37

be harquebusiers, to use their saide weapons without daunger of the lawes, so as their do nott use the same otherwise than others may do that are by the statute licensed, &c."

For the preservation of the armour and weapons, the commissioners are empowered to "appoynte some good order, how the armour and weapons lymitted to serve, shal be kept to contynue serviceable, and shall appoynte speciall men in every hundred or wapentake, to be named surveiors of the armour and weapons that shall belonge in commune to the parishes and towneshipps, both for the safe kepinge of the same, in the custodie of honest persons, and for the kepinge thereof alwaies furnished clean and readie for service; and it may also be appoynted, that the same surveior in every hundred may from time to tyme in good reasonable sorte repayer to the houses of all other persons chargeable to have armour and weapons, to see that the same be dulie and clean kept, so as at the tyme of the musters, their may be perfectlic redie and without defecte, &c." After some further regulations respecting training, the instructions proceed to

#### " Articles for Furniture of Horsemen.

"Item, because one of the best strengthes to be required for defence of the realme, and that which is thoughte to be moste decayed and ymperfecte, and most necessarilie to be increased, is the furniture of horses and horsemen within the realme," it shall be well considered by the commissioners how to carry into effect the laws relative to persons "chargeable to fynde and have in readynes, horses or geldinges bothe for launces and for light horsemen, with armour and weapons mete for the same, &c." They are to issue precepts to warn all such persons, and those unwilling to provide what the commissioners command, are to certify what they will do. After other regulations to this effect, the instructions proceed to hold out encouragements for the increase and improvement of horses, reciting a similar statute of the 27th of Henry VIII to that purpose; and they are subscribed by the council, W. Burghley, R. Leycester, F. Knollys, E. Lyncoln, W. Mildmay, T. Smith and T. Sussex, on the last day of February, 15th of Elizabeth, 1572.

During this reign, there were in the French cavalry light troops, called argoulets and carabins. The first of these are spoken of by Popeliniere,\* who says they were at the battle of Dreux, under Charles IX; and, in 1562 and 1563,

<sup>\*</sup> Fol. 344. See also the Commentaries of Montluc.

mention is made of them as among the troops of Provence.\* According to M. de Montgommeri, they were armed like the estradiots, except that they wore on their heads a cabasset, which did not prevent them from couching their cheeks when about to fire. Their offensive arms were a sword on the thigh, a mace at the left side of the saddle-bow, and on the right an arquebuse two feet and a half long, in a case of boiled leather.† As they were considered merely useful in desultary warfare, their name became contemptible, and "C'est un argoulet," consequently a term of reproach.

In the extraordinaries for the war in 1559,<sup>‡</sup> in the reign of Henry II, we first meet with the troops called carabins, the origin of whose name, as well as that of argoulets, is lost in obscurity. They were certainly derived from Spain, and might have been originally Moorish.

M. de Montgommeri tells us, that they wore a cuirass sloped off the right shoulder, that they might the more readily couch their cheeks to take aim, that they wore a cabasset on their heads, and had their bridle-arms protected by an elbow gauntlet; \$ and, for offensive weapons, a carabine three feet and a half in length, so named from themselves, and a pistol.

Their manner of fighting was to form a little squadron, deeper than wide, to discharge their pieces rank after rank, forming immediately and successively in the rear of the rest, and thus preparing for a second discharge.

A very curious painting of Federigo Oricono, dated 1579, in the possession of H. Broadwood, Esq., seems to revive, in a manner, the ancient surcoat, as he is represented in a vest of silk, with long pile resembling, indeed, that woollen fabric, called plush, which covers his breast and back-plate, having a slit in it to admit his lance-rest to come through, and so cut, as not to cover the pauldrons. This same vest terminates in slops, or wide breeches, and is striped with broad gold lace. The warrior has, besides a scarf put over his right shoulder, under which appears his sword-belt. There is another belt below his vest, probably, that which fastened the back to the breast-plate. The helmet is also introduced. This interesting figure has been copied for Plate LXX.

Underneath it is the bâton often alluded to as used at tournaments, which used to hang suspended from the right breast of the knight, and a voulge-blade.

<sup>\*</sup> Registre de Provence.

<sup>†</sup> In this instance the estoc gave way to the mace.

<sup>‡</sup> Comte de Picardie, 1559.

<sup>§</sup> One of these gantelets à coude, is in my son's collection. It is embossed with foliage, &c. in an elegant manner.

<sup>||</sup> It is taken from Wlson's Théâtre d'Honneur.



FEDERIGO



ORICONO,



A.D. 1558.

ELIZABETH. 39

The spirit of adventure to America and the West Indies, during the reign, occasioned the fashion of introducing representations of negroes' heads as pommels and ornaments of swords. I have seen, in Paris, a sword of this kind, having on the blade the Earl of Darlington's motto: "Nec temere nec timine," and in my son's collection is a dagger of the same period, the hilt of which is thus terminated.

There is a MS. "Treatise of Martial Discipline, by Ralphe Smithe, dedicated to the Lord Burrowes and Sir Christopher Hatton," written during the reign of Queen Elizabeth.\* Among other remarks, it thus defines the duty of captaines of halbartes or billmen, "captaines of halbarts, or blacke billes, cheifleye those halbartes bearinge corseletts gardinge the ensignes, wearing swordes and daggers, meryteth more wages than others bearinge blacke bills, usuallye called the slaughter or execution of the battaile, alwaies readie and attentive to their ensignes, as well by secret commandements as by sounde of the dromme, never to departe from the same till it bee brought into ye place of good safetie."

By an extract from the certificate of musters for the county of Stafford, made in the year 1569, the 11th of Elizabeth,† we learn the proportion of billmen from the division of the parish of Yoxhall, which is thus: "pikemen 3—bilmen 5—harquebuz 9—unable men 29." And of two hundred men raised in Lancashire, in 1584, for the Irish service, eighty are, by the queen's letter to the sheriff, directed to be furnished with calivers,‡ forty with corslets, forty with bows, and forty with halberts, or good black-bills; and all the soldiers to be furnished with swords and daggers.§ The daggers, we learn from inspecting the engravings of several Dutch works, were worn horizontally, and just behind the right hip. Of the pike, we have the following account from the French of M. Guillaume de Bellay, in a Military Treatise translated by Paule Ive, in 1589.

"But let us passe further to speake of the pike of which although the Switzers have not been the inventors, yet have they at the least brought it again into use, for that they being poore, and desirous to live at libertie, were constrained to fight against the princes of Germany, who, being rich, and of great power, did maintaine many horsemen, which the said Switzers could not do; and therefore making their warres afoote, they were constrained to runne unto the

<sup>\*</sup> Formerly in the possession of Captain Grose.

<sup>†</sup> In the library of the late Thomas Astle, Esq.

<sup>‡</sup> So called, from their calibre being according to a standard regulation.

<sup>§</sup> Peck's Desiderata Curiosa, Vol. I.

ancient manner, and out of it to choose some armes, wherewith they might defend themselves from the enemies horsemen, which necessitie had made them either to maintaine, or to finde out againe the orders of times past, without which pikes, footmen are wholly unprofitable; they tooke therefore pikes as weapons not only fit for to withstand horsemen, but also to vanquish them: by the help of which weapon, and through the trust they have in their own good order, they have taken such a boldnesse, that fifteene or twenty thousand of their men dare enterprize upon a whole world of horsemen, as they have made proofe at Navare, and at Marignan, although the one battaile fell out better on their side than the other. The examples of the vertue these people have shewed to be in them for their feates of arms afoote, have caused since the voyage of King Charles VIII other nations to imitate them, specially the Germains and Spanyards, who are mounted unto the reputation that we do hould them of at this day, by imitating the orders that the said Switzers do keepe, and the manner of armes they do carry. The Italians afterward have given themselves unto it, and we lastly: but we are so farre off, that we shall never be like unto them for order, except we do make the use of these weapons to be of more estimation amongst us, then it hath bin hitherto, so mutch there is also, that they can learne us no other point; we must therefore take paines to get this order, or if it be possible, to find or frame a more sure, by the means whereof we might defend ourselves, and excell other nations. And to do this, we must arm our soldiers well, to the intent that they may be lesse in daunger of blowes, and the harder to be overthrowne: principally those that should serve in the first fronts of the battailes; and also all others, if it were possible, every man according unto the weapon that he doth carry. The armes that we must carry must be these first of all the corslet complete with the tasses\* down to the knee,† hose of male, a codpeece of yron, good vambraces, and gauntlets, or gloves of male, and a good head peece, with the sight almost covered. The other harnesse for the body must be a shirt or jerkin, with sleeves and gloves of male, and a head peece with the face uncovered. The weapons must be these: a sword of meane length, neither wholly after the manner of the Frenchmen, nor altogether like unto the Almaings: for the wearing of it too lowe doth greatly trouble a souldier. The short dagger also is one of the most necessariest weapons, wherewith in a prease a man may better help

<sup>\*</sup> The tassets of the corslet, first began during this reign to be made each of one piece, but marked in imitation of several.

<sup>†</sup> Such a one originally kept at Dartford, Kent, of Elizabeth's time, with pointed waist, and particularly handsome, is in the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq.

himself than with a sword. The pike, a halberd, and amongst many halberds, some pertuisans are also called weapons. The target may not be called a weapon, notwithstanding it is a very good peece."

The initial letter to this reign, represents an officer of pikemen with his target at his shoulder. It is taken from an engraving in the Entrée Magnifique en la Ville d'Anvers de Monsieur François fils de France, Duc de Brabant, at this period; and the ornamental border from one on a carabin in my son's collection.

The inconsiderable execution done by pieces of small calibre, probably caused the introduction of the musket, or mousquet, which originated in Spain during this reign. The fame of the Spanish infantry having extended itself all over civilized Europe, the English were not long before they adopted this new weapon from their enemies;\* and it consequently displaced the harquebuss. It was, however, so long and heavy, as to render necessary a kind of fork, to place it on when fired, which was called a rest.† This rest was, at first, a simple staff, the length of which varied according to the height of the man who was to use it. On the top was a kind of fork to receive the musket, and at the bottom a sharp iron ferule, for the convenience of sticking it into the ground.‡ On a march, when the musket was shouldered, the rest was carried in the right hand, and subsequently hung upon it by means of a string, or loop, tied under its head.

This rest was, probably, suggested by that which was used by the mounted harquebusiers, and thus mentioned by Sir John Smith: "I myself have seen mosquettiers on horseback in two divers armies, and that in this sorte; I have seen squadrons of lances have in one wing only ten or twelve mosquetiers in one ranke, and sometimes in two winges upon cold and quiet horses, onely to carry them a marche or a trott with the squadron of launces and the mosquetiers were armed with half breasts or curyats with long reasts of steele strong and firmly set in them to just backward over their shoulders, and when they list to pull them forwardes for the mosquetiers to lay their mosquets upon when they woulde discharge them. Even such Sir William Pelham did cause to be made at the Mynories by one Henricke a Dutchman, before his last going over into the Lowe Countries, which invention came not from his own devyce, but from that he had

<sup>\*</sup> Brantôme says, that it was the Duke of Alva who first brought the musket into use, when he went to take on him the government of the Low Countries, in the year 1567, and that Mr. de Strozzi, colonel-general of the French infantry, under Charles IX, introduced them into France. He tells us, that the best arquebuses were made at Milan.

<sup>†</sup> According to De Bellay, rests had previously been used for the harquebuss, but I have met with no representation of the rest before the time of Elizabeth; and conceive, that he must allude to those for the cavalry, on the principle of the lance-rest, fastened by a hinge to the breast-plate.

<sup>‡</sup> One such is in the armoury of my son.

seen the like used by certain mosquetiers on horseback in the warres of the Emperor Charles V."

As this musket, from its size and weight, was found unwieldy and inconvenient, a lighter kind of piece was introduced, called a caliver. This was in England, as well as the musket, a match-lock piece; for, notwithstanding the invention of the wheellock, it was too expensive to be used by the common soldiery. Edmund York, an officer who had served in the Low Countries, and was employed by Queen Elizabeth to regulate the militia of London, at the time when the kingdom was threatened with a Spanish invasion, says: "I remember when I was first brought up in Piemont in the countie of Brisacks regiment of old bandes, we had our particular calibre of harquebuse to our regiment, both for that one bullet should serve all the harquebuses of our regiment, as for that our colonel should not be deceived of his arms; of which word calibre come first that unapt term we use to call a harquebuse a calliver, which is the height of the bullet and not of the piece. Before the battle of Moungunter, the princes of the religion caused several thousand harquebuses to be made, all of one calibre, which was called Harquebuse de calibre de Monsieur le Prince; so I think some man not understanding French, brought hither the name of the height of the bullet of the piece, which word calibre is yet continued with our good cannoniers."\*

Sir John Smith, in his confutation of Captain Berwick,† gives the following definition of a caliver. "It is supposed by many that the weapon called a caliver, is another thing than a harquebuse; whereas in troth it is not; but only a harquebuse; savinge, that it is of greater circuite, or bullet, than the other is of; wherefore the Frenchmen doth call it a peece de calibre; which is as much as to saie, a peece of bigger circuite."

From this it seems, that the caliver resembled the harquebuss, except that it had a certain calibre, or bore, larger than that of ordinary ones. That it was less and lighter than a musket is evident, from its being fired without a rest, on which account Shakspeare makes Falstaff; say of Wart, one of his recruits, a poor, weak, undersized fellow, "Put me a caliver into Wart's hands;" meaning, that although Wart is unfit for a musketeer, yet, if armed with a lighter piece, he may do good service.

By touch-box, was meant the small flask to hold the fine powder for priming.

<sup>\*</sup> Maitland's History of London.

<sup>†</sup> Harl. Lib. Brit. Mus., No. 4,685.

<sup>‡</sup> Henry IV, Part II.

There are, in my son's collection, two ornamented boxes, apparently intended to hold cartridges, from the block of wood within having five such receptacles, though rather smaller than ordinary. They were called patrons, and, perhaps, as they held charges for pistols, gave origin to the bandileers, which came into fashion during this reign, as they are at any rate as old as the time of Elizabeth.

The currier has been mentioned during the last reign, from the following passages in Sir John Smith's Animadversions on the Writings of Captain Berwick, it appears to be of the same calibre and strength as a harquebuss, but had a longer barrel. His words are: "But yet in one thinge his lacke of consideracion is to be noted, and that is, that he doth make no distinction nor difference betwixt a currier and a harquebuss, in which he is greatly deceived; for in those there is as great or more difference betwixt a currier of warre and a harquebuze in the length of cannon,\* and for shooting, as there is betwixt a harquebuze and a mousquet, which I perceive by his writing he doth not consider of, and therefore doe overpasse the same." Again: "So likewise, of a harquebuze and a currier, both renforced backward as they ought to be, and of one caliver heighthe of bullet; and the currier in respect of the greate lengthe, must have a greater advantage and quantitie of powder to appulse and impulse the bullet to his fardest object marke; and all this in respect to the different lengthes of the pieces, being in the rest of one caliver, and renforced alike."

The president Fauchet, who wrote in the time of Henry II of France,† speaks of a piece called the petronel, or poitrinal, the medium between the harquebuss and pistol. Probably it differed in nothing from the English dag, except its butt being much broader to rest against the chest of the person who fired it. This piece is mentioned in the relation of the siege of Rouen, by Henry IV, in 1592. Nicot‡ says, "It was of a large calibre, and on account of its weight carried in a broad baudrick worn over the shoulder." It had a wheel-lock; and Fauchet says, "It is believed that this arm is the invention of the bandouliers§ of the Pyrenean mountains."

In Elizabeth's time, according to the Gesta Grayorum,¶ mention is made of demi-hags, or hagbutts, which carried bullets, and sometimes half-shots; and

<sup>\*</sup> i. e. barrel.

<sup>†</sup> He lived in the time of Francis I, and died in that of Henry IV.

<sup>‡</sup> In his Dictionary.

<sup>§</sup> Quere? Did they invent and give name to the bandoliers also.

<sup>||</sup> Several varieties of the petronel are in the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq.

<sup>¶</sup> Printed in 1594.

Pere Daniel\* says, that the horsemen, who were armed with pistols in the time of Henry II, were called pistoliers.

In my son's armoury is a heavy wheel-lock caliver, the barrel engraved, and the stock inlaid with ivory, the length of it is three feet two inches. There are, also, two beautiful wheel-lock carabines, one of which has the barrel richly chased and inlaid with gold, with the portrait of the owner on the stock. The other has on it the date, 1592, and, in the butt, a magazine for bullets. These are both three feet long. There are also several brace of pistols, with the original pieces of pyrites in their cocks, of different sizes, from one foot seven inches and a half to merely ten inches and a half. To these may be added, dags, petronels, with two beautifully engraved German swords and a dagger, each of which have attached to it a small wheel-lock pistol.

What were the public stores for defence and attack at this period, may be learnt from the following:

" Certificat† of the Decayes of the Castle Towne and Citidell at Carlile, by Walter Stryklaund, &c. 1563.

Ordinaunce, Artillery and Munitions in the Castle.

Sagars‡ two

Fawcons fower

Sall dismounted.

Fawconetts ij whereof one not good

One little pottgonne of brasse.

Demy bomberdes two, whereof one chambered of the self the other hath

Basses doble and single xij lackinge. x Chambers of ij chābers for a pece. Halfe haggs xxix not serviceable. Bowes of ewe none.

Arrowes xx sheefes in decay.

Morispicks xxx not good. Blackbilles none.

<sup>\*</sup> Mil. Franc.

<sup>†</sup> In the British Museum, marked Titus F. xIII, fol. 220

<sup>‡</sup> Sacars.

Sorgarshot\* of iron lviij.
Sorgarshot of lead lxx.
Fawconshott of lead c.
Bass shot of lead v<sup>c</sup>.

### In the Citye.

Fawcons of brasse iij all dismounted.

One small pottgonne of brasse.

Fawconetts of brasse iiij dismounted.

Fawcons of iron ij dismounted alsoe to serve the warden in the field.

Fowlers two

Small serpentynes two all lacking their furniture.

Basses two

Hagbutts uppon crocke xiij whereof xij serviceable.

†Harquebuzes xxx decayed and past service.

Bowes of ewe xij.

Bowes of elme lxx not serviceable.

Sheafes of arrowes xviij° in decay.

Blackbills ecc.

Moryspyks cexx.

Northern staves ccl.

Serpentyne powder one last and a half both for the citie and the castle, &c.

Corned powder one di' barrell and a half.

Hackst and picks lij worne and decayed with workes.

Shovells and spades x dozen.

Quarrell§ picks xij.

Cartwaye for xxx horse draughts.

Hemp rope two coille small.

Sogarshot of iron 1.

Fawconshott of iron cl.

Fawconshott of iron l.

One quarrell mall &c.

<sup>\*</sup> Sacar shot.

<sup>+</sup> This and the last item prove, that the hagbut and the harquebuss are not the same.

<sup>‡</sup> Axes, or hatchets.

<sup>§</sup> Four-sided.

<sup>||</sup> A four-sided maule.

#### In the Citidell.

Sagars two of brasse dismounted.

Fawcons fower

Doble basses iii.

Single basses viij.

Small serpentynes ij

Fowlers ij

all unfurnished.

Murtherers ij

Harquebuzes ix not serviceable.

Half haggs xiiij decayed and past service.

Morispyks xl not good.

Blackebills xx iiij.

Corned powder ij di. barrells-whereof fower of the graned sort.

Bowes of ewe xx not good.

Arrowes exxvj sheefs in decaye.

Sagarshotts of iron l.

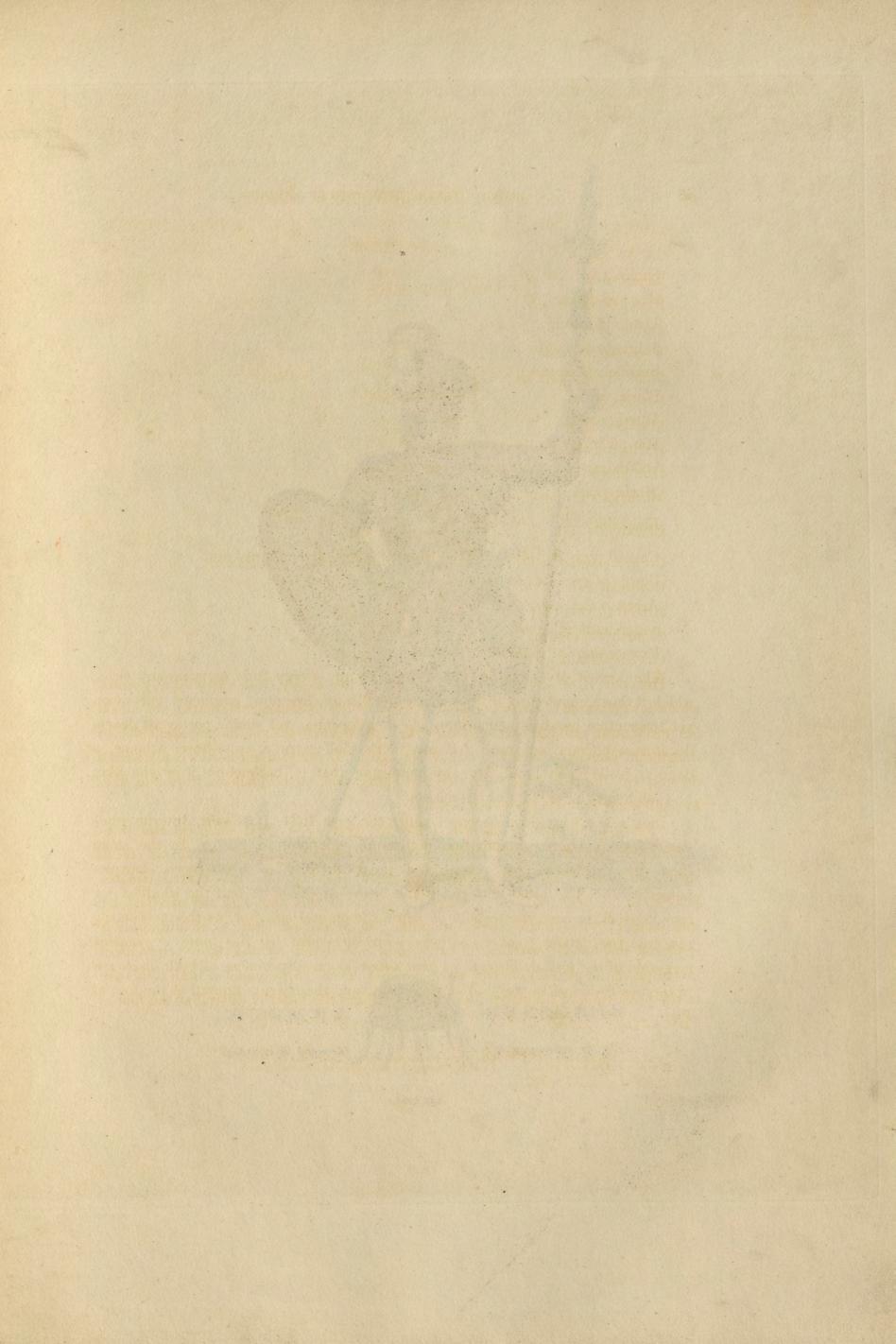
Fawconshott of iron c."

The council of Taragona, in 1591, forbad the clergy from carrying any arms, which it thus enumerates: Si quis clericus balistam, lanceam, pugionem vel sicam vel tormentum quodvis manuarium, id est, sclopetam, vel similia portaverit decem ducatorem pænam incurrat. "If any clerk shall carry a cross-bow, a lance, a dagger, or Moorish knife,\* or any hand-gun, that is, harquebuss,† or the like, he shall incur the penalty of ten ducats."

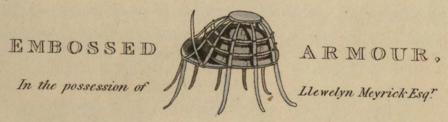
So, in the Chronicon Estense, under the year 1534, it is said, Interim præparari fecit maximam quantitatem balistarum, sclopetorum, &c. "In the mean time, he caused to be prepared a great quantity of cross-bows, harque-busses, &c." The cross-bow called the latch, at this time had the windlass let into its stock to save the trouble of putting it on and off; but, as this necessarily rendered the handle weaker, it was soon succeeded by the more convenient invention of the pied de chevre, or goat's-foot lever. Specimens of both kinds are in the possession of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq., and the latter is figured at the foot of Plate LXVI.

<sup>\*</sup> The sica had its edge within the curve of the blade, and was borrowed from the Moors.

<sup>†</sup> Called by the French, esclopette.







AD.1565.

In my son's collection is a most beautiful embossed suit of armour, exquisitely inlaid with gold, which belonged to Alfonso II, fifth Duke of Ferrara.\* It is represented in Plate LXXI. That tasteful architect, Mr. Wyatt, has another of this period, not inlaid, but most exquisitely chased and entirely gilt, which belonged to Henry III of France. Besides what is comprised in my son's suit, (except the gorget, which is wanting,) it has the helmet and gauntlets. Very similar to it is that engraving in Montfaucon's Mon. Fran.† which represents Francis Duc d'Alençon.

Of the same shape, in all probability, was the armour of solid silver, in which Oldys tells us Sir Walter Raleigh made his appearance at court, "with sword and belt blazing with diamonds, rubies, and pearls." The value of the last was said to be incalculable, but the suit itself occasioned the remark, that he had on his body the best part of a Spanish galleon.

In the left hand of the figure wearing the suit in my son's collection, is a most splendid embossed rondelle, or shield, representing Hercules killing the hydra, &c.‡ probably made in Italy; at his belt a sword and dagger with embossed hilts; and in his right hand a partisan, embossed with exquisite workmanship, on which is the motto, "Nec pluribus impar;" that was adopted by Henry IV, King of France, and therefore of a subsequent period.

At the siege of Rouen, in 1562, it is remarked, that the English Captain Monins, made a sally from the fort of St. Catherine, having a rondelle covered with green velvet.

Another embossed suit of plain steel, similar in form to the other, and which belonged to one of the court-guards of the Duke of Ferrara, with its gauntlets, is in my son's armoury. Underneath Plate LXXI is given a representation of an embossed morian, in the same collection.

During this reign the horse armour became disused in Germany, and hence it is that the Earl of Arundel gave the following account of himself: "From Prague I went to the camp," &c. "Being arrived at the camp at the very

<sup>\*</sup> He was also Duke of Modena, Reggio, and Chiartres, Prince of Carpi, Count of Rovigo, Lord of Commachio, &c, and died in 1597.

<sup>+</sup> Plate cclxxxvi.

<sup>‡</sup> That fine one at Buckingham-house, that which was formerly in the Tower and now in the British Museum, one belonging to my friend, William Reader, Jun. Esq. which came from Bavaria, and that inferior brass one in the Tower of London, taken from the Spanish general on the defeat of the armada, is of the same period, or a little earlier.

<sup>§</sup> Brantôme, Tom. IV, p. 180.

<sup>||</sup> Count Arundel's Apologie to Lord Burghley, in Pegge's Desiderata Curiosa.

instant of that great and onlie battaile between us and the Turks, unknown unto anie, and uncommended of anie, I presented myselfe in the fronte of the armie, where by reason of my plumes of feathers, of my armour, bases and furniture, all full of gould and silver (a thing there altogether unusual), I was presentlie marked of all men's eyes."

Long after the musket was highly improved in its construction, the silent discharge of the arbaleste rendered it superior in the pursuit of timid animals, and, as it is capable of being managed with greater accuracy than the long-bow, it has, at all times, been used in the chace. Although Hentzner saw several cross-bows in the Tower of London, they had become disused in battle, and, at this time, were either employed to kill game, or handled for amusement.\* The arganelle, which had been rendered unnecessary by the invention of gunpowder, nevertheless suggested the barreled cross-bow† for shooting bullets.

But the prodd was found as suitable for casting bullets as the barreled crossbow, and therefore surviving it, has, for the purpose of killing deer, rooks, and rabbits, continued in use to the present time.

Bayle explaining the difference between testimony and argument, says: "The latter is like the shot of a long-bow, which owes its efficacy to the force of the shooter, while the former resembles the shot of a cross-bow, equally forcible whether discharged by a dwarf or a giant." It is evident, however, that the different sizes, and various powers of cross-bows occasioned a great diversity in the distance of their range. Thus we have seen that, in Henry the Fifth's time, it was estimated at forty rods; and, from the specimens in my son's armoury, the cross-bow was never more powerful than at that period. M. de Bellay, says the archer and cross-bowman, will kill at 100 or 200 paces off, which gives a great range to the arbalestes of Elizabeth's time. Sir John Smith, however, in his observations, not long after this, very much contracts the distance of their shot, for he says, "A cross-bow will kill point-blank between 40 and 60 yards, and if elevated, 6, 7, or 8 score yards or farther." The former, probably speaks of the prodd, the latter, of the latch.

In Stowe's time, the cross-bow was no longer considered a military weapon, but merely used as an amusement with reference to killing game; for, he says,

<sup>\*</sup> Two for this purpose are in my son's possession, being much smaller than those for war, and may be regarded as such as the queen used at Cowdray, in Sussex.

<sup>+</sup> Probably the slur-bow.

<sup>‡</sup> Instructions for the wars, A. D. 1589.

the cross-bow makers rented tazel (or thistle), close near Moorfields, for the purpose of exercising themselves with that weapon at the popingay, or artificial parrot.

The prodd appropriated to the chace, was considerably reduced in size for the convenience of carrying on horseback; and two such of this period, in my son's collection, have their stocks, which are somewhat ornamented, not above twenty inches in length.

The invention of gunpowder, and its application to artillery and small arms, did not produce that sudden change in the art of war, or weapons, that might, on a first consideration, be expected. Mankind in general, have an almost superstitious reverence for old professional customs, which they ever relinquish unwillingly. This arises, not only from a strong prepossession in favour of opinions they have been taught to consider as incontrovertible; but, because old men do not like to allow, that the rising generation is wiser than that which preceded, which must be implied in the acknowledgment of any improvement. "This dislike to innovations," observes Captain Grose, "is peculiarly found in old soldiers, because, by adopting new weapons, and consequently a new exercise, the old and expert soldiers find themselves in a worse state than new recruits; as they have not only a new exercise to learn, which, after a certain age, is no easy matter, but also the old one to forget: for the truth of this observation, I appeal to every military man, who has seen any alteration made in the ordinary routine of duty or exercise."

That such was the case on changing the long-bow for the harquebuss; a number of proofs occur in antient military books. Indeed, many of the old soldiers were much divided in their opinion of the superiority of these weapons; nor does it appear, that the government of those days, were decided upon it, as the strongest statutes for enforcing the practice of archery were enacted after the introduction of fire-arms. So indifferent were the ministers of Queen Mary respecting them, that, in her ordonnance for armour and weapons, the alternative is left to the choice of the people, whether they would find a long-bow and sheaf of arrows, or a haquebutt, in every case where they were by law charged with the latter. It is likewise strongly marked in Elizabeth's time in a letter written by Camden to Sir Edward Cecil, which is as follows:

<sup>&</sup>quot; HONOURABLE SIR,

<sup>&</sup>quot;The proposition you make is oute of the reache of my profession, and not of antiquitie, but of late memorie; by reason of Sir Robert Cott:'s absence I can

imparte nothing from him as yet, and for my owne observation it is very slender, onely I remember that after Captain Morgan in the yeare 1572, had first carried to Flushing 300 English, and procured Sir Humphrey Gilbert to bring over more, and to be colonell of the English there, a new militarie discipline was shortly after brought in, and the new marche by some that had served the Duke of Alva, and entertained especially by the important instance of Sir Roger Williams,\* although strong opposition was then against it, by Captain Pykeman, and afterward by Captaine Reade, ancient leaders, and Sir William Pelham, who were scornfully tearmed by the contrary parte Sainete Georges souldados; and Sir John Smith, who had served under the constable Momorancy twice in Hungary, at Penon de Veliz and Malta, yea, and under Dalva, encountered with his penne against the newe discipline, and did writght much which was never published. This in hast, untill I may happen upon Sir Robert Cotton, I thought good to impart to your lsp. to whom I wish all happe successe to the encrease and compliment of your honor."

One of the treatises written by Sir John Smith, and here mentioned by Camden, was printed in London, 1st May, 1590, in quarto, it is entitled, "Certain Discourses written by Sir John Smith Knight, concerning the formes and effects of divers sorts of weapons, and other very important matters militarie, greatlie mistaken by divers of our men of warre, in these daies, and chiefly of the mosquet, the caliver, and the long bow; as also of the great sufficiencie, excellencie, and wonderful effects of archers, with many notable examples and other peculiarities, by him presented to the nobilitie of this realme, and published for the benefit of this his native countrie of England."

Indeed, so great was the prejudice against fire-arms, that their inferiority almost became a proverb, as we may gather from the following distich:

"The white faith of historic cannot shew
That e'er the musquet yet could beat the bow."

‡

By the 8th of Elizabeth, c. 10, bows of foreign yew were to be sold at the price of six shillings and eight-pence, a second sort at three shillings and four-pence, and a third kind at two shillings.

If we consider the unskilful contrivance of the musket, at this time, we shall not be surprised that the bow remained so long in favour.

<sup>\*</sup> Of Penrhôs, Monmouthshire.

<sup>†</sup> In Bib. Cott. marked Julius F. 6, fol. 441.

<sup>‡</sup> Alleyn's Henry VII.

An author well versed in archery, who lived in this reign,\* informs us, that it was necessary for the archer to have a bracer, or close sleeve, to lace upon the left arm;† it was also proper for this bracer to be made with materials sufficiently rigid to prevent any folds which might impede the bow-string when loosed from the hand; to this was to be added a shooting-glove, for the protection of the fingers. He also says, that the feathers from the wing of a goose, and especially of a greygoose, were preferable to any others for pluming an arrow; and, according to the opinion of the best fletchers, the second feather was the best in some cases, and the pinion in others. The English arrows, he says, had forked heads and broad heads, but he thought that round-pointed heads, resembling a bodkin, were the best.

Joshua Barnes observes, that, "without all question, the guns which are used now-a-days, are neither so terrible in battle nor do such execution, nor work such confusion as arrows can do: for bullets, being not seen, only hurt where they hit, but arrows enrage the horse, and break the array, and terrify all that behold them in the bodies of their neighbours. Not to say that every archer can shoot thrice to a gunner's once, and that whole squadrons of bows may let fly at one time, when only one or two files of musqueteers can discharge at once. Also, that whereas guns are useless when your pikes join, because they only do execution point-blank, the arrows which will kill at random may do good service even behind your men of arms. And it is notorious, that, at the famous battle of Lepanto, the Turkish bows did more mischief than the Christian artillery. Besides it is not the least observable, that, whereas the weakest may use guns as well as the strongest, in those days your lusty and tall yeomen were chosen for the bow, whose hose being fastened with one point, and their jackets long and easy to shoot in, they had their limbs at full liberty, so that they might easily draw bows of great strength, and shoot arrows of a yard long beside the head."

The following grant shews, that the monopoly of making bow-strings for the army, previously held by George Fulcest, was granted during the first year of this reign to John Manby.

"A. D. 1559. Regina omnibus ad quos, &c. salutem. Sciatis quòd nos, de gratia nostra speciali, ac ex certa scientia et mero motu nostris, dedimus et concessimus, ac pro nobis ac hæredibus et successoribus nostris, per præsentes

<sup>\*</sup> Archerye revived, by Robert Shotterel and Thomas d'Urfey, printed in 1676.

<sup>†</sup> An ivory one of this period, if not older, is in the possession of my son.

damus et concedimus, dilecto subdito nostro, Johanni Manby officium sive locum factoris nervorum pro arcubus nostris, aliàs le bowstringe maker, infra turrim nostram Londoniæ sive alibi, ad nostrum usum, hæredum vel successorum nostrorum, infra regnum nostrum Angliæ, quod Georgius Fulcest, dudum defunctus, nuper habuit et occupavit, ac etiam, vadium et feodum sex denariorum per diem pro excercitio, et occupatione ejusdem officii, habendum, tenendum, gaudendum, et exercendum officium sive locum prædictum, præfato Johanni Manby ad terminum sive pro termino vitæ ejusdem Johannis, unà cum dicto vadio et feodo sex denariorum legalis monetæ Angliæ per diem; præfato Johanni Manbye, et assignatis suis, a festo annunciationis beatæ Mariæ Virginis quod erat in anno domini millesimo quingentesimo quinquagesimo octavo, durante vità dicti Johannis, de thesauro nostro ad receptum scaccarii nostri, per manus thesaurarii et camerariorum nostrorum ibidem pro tempore existentium, ad Festa Nativitatis Sancti Johannis Baptistæ, Sancti Michaelis Archangeli, Natalis Domini, et Annunciationis beatæ Mariæ Virginis, per æquales portiones solvendo unà cum omnibus aliis proficuis, commoditatibus, emolumentis, et advantagiis quibuscumque eidem officio quoquomodò pertinentibus sive spectantibus, in tàm amplis modo et forma prout aliquis sive aliqui dictum officium de le bowstringe maker prædictum, occupans sive occupantes habuit seu percepit, habuerunt seu perceperunt, aut habere debuerunt, pro exercitio ejusdem; eo quòd expressa mentio, &c. In cujus rei, &c.

"Teste Reginâ apud Westmonasterium octavo die Novembris, per breve de privato sigillo."

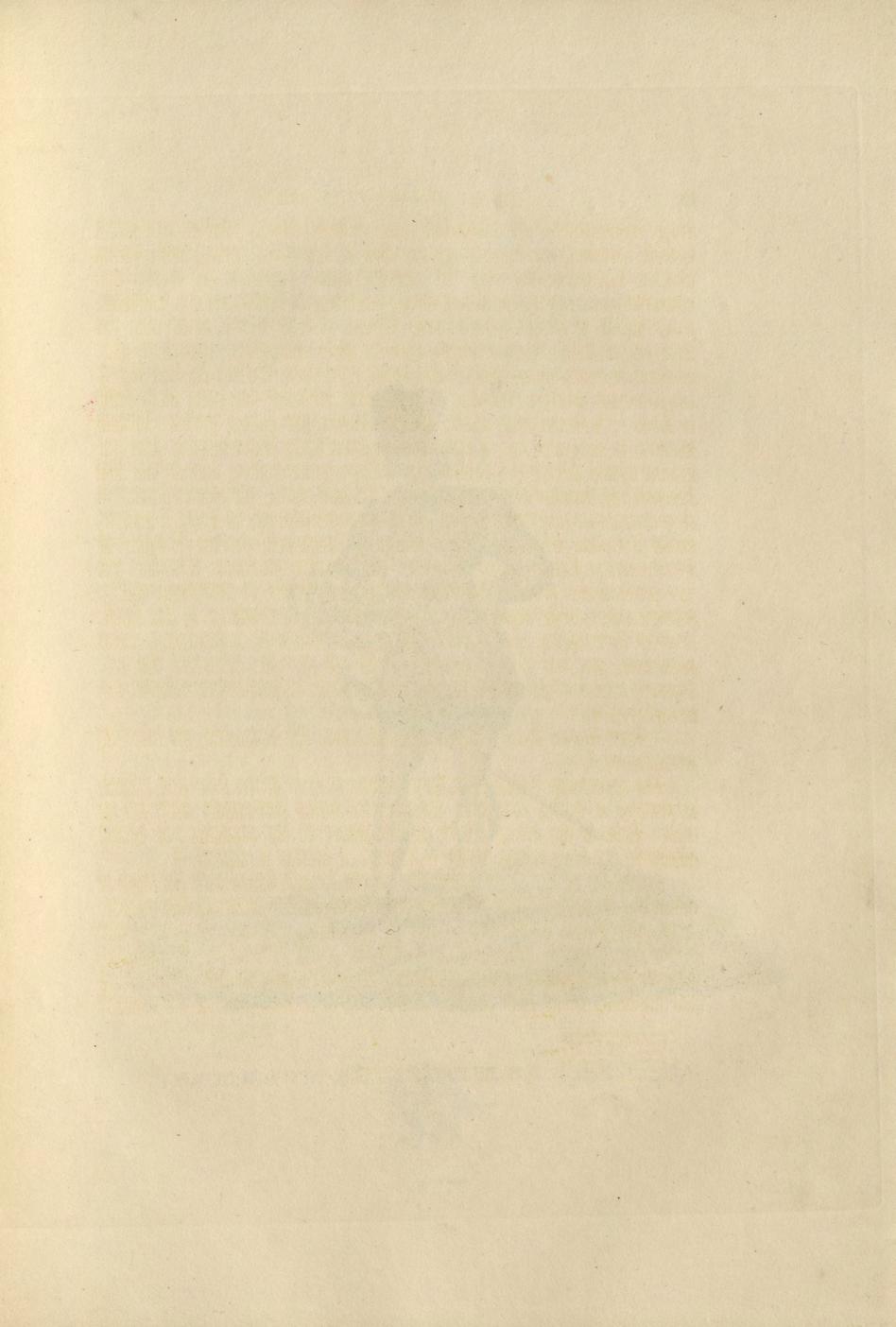
The expression, "Hog in armour," seems to have arisen from that animal, or parts of it, having been thus distinguished during this century when put on table. Thus, in the list of dishes for the dinner at the coronation of Queen Elizabeth, we find, among others, "sheeldes of brawne in armour."\*

As the use of the sword and buckler seems to have ended with the reign of Elizabeth, it may be proper here to take some further notice of this subject. Stow tells us that, in his time, "the art of defence and use of weapons was taught by professed masters," and that the young Londoners, on holidays after the evening prayer, were permitted to exercise themselves with their wafters; and bucklers, before their masters' doors. So, in a description of the colleges

<sup>\*</sup> Ives's Select Papers.

<sup>+</sup> Survey of London, Ch. 11.

<sup>‡</sup> Swords, with the flat part placed in the usual direction of the edge.





AN ENGLISH



GENTLEMAN,

A.D.1590.

and schools in and about London, which the author calls "the third University of England;"\* he says: " In this city there be manie professors of the science of defence, and very skilful men in teaching the best, and most offensive and defensive use of verie many weapons, as of the long-sword, back-sword, rapier and dagger, single rapier, the case of rapiers, the sword and buckler or targate, the pike, the halberd, the long-staff and others." In allusion to this usual practice of the day, Shakspeare makes Slender, in the "Merry Wives of Windsor," say: † "I bruis'd my shin the other day with playing at sword and dagger with a master of fence;" and Eden, in his History of Travale, printed in 1577, translating a passage relative to Calcut (Calcutta), in the East Indies, says: "They have in the citie certayne maisters of fence, that teach them how to use the sword, &c," the original word being lanista. So fashionable, indeed, was this amusement, that our inimitable dramatic bard has made Hotspur exclaim: "And that same sword-and-buckler Prince of Wales." There is, among a collection of dresses, said to have been designed by Titian, and engraved on wood by his brother, Cæsar Vecelli, one which fully conveys the idea of a swordand-buckler man of Shakspeare's time, of which arms, the editor remarks, the English youths then made great use. It has furnished the original for Plate LXXII, from which it will be seen, that the bucklers were the narmed with a spike in the centre. This spike, or pike, was, by a proclamation in the eighth year of Elizabeth, reduced to two inches in length, no person being allowed to have any exceeding this measurement, nor any sword or rapier that should exceed one yard and a quarter in the blade, nor any dagger above the length of twelve inches. Stowe, therefore, seems to make some error in point of date, when, in his Chronicle, he tells us: "Untill about the twelfe or thirteenth yeere of Queene Elizabeth the auncient English fight of sword and buckler was onely had in use: the bucklers then being but a foote broad, with a pike of four or five inches long. Then they began to make them full halfe an ell broad with sharpe pikes ten or twelve inches long wherewith they meant either to breake the swords of their enemies, if it hit upon the pike, or els suddenly to run within them and stabbe, and thrust their buckler with the pike, into the face, arme or body of their adversary; but this continued not long. Every haberdasher then sold bucklers."

At the bottom of this Plate is a demi-lancer's casque, belonging to my son, beautifully embossed.

<sup>\*</sup> Printed in black letter, and dated 1615.

<sup>†</sup> Act I, Sc. 1.

<sup>‡</sup> Henry IV, Part I, Act I, Sc. 3.

The decline of this amusement seems to have been greatly regretted at the time. Hence, Henry Potter, in his comedy, called the "Two Angry Women of Abbingdon," printed in the year 1599, makes the following observation: "Sword and buckler fight begins to grow out of use, I am sorry for it; I shall never see good manhood again; if it be once gone, this poking fight of rapier and dagger will come up; then a tall man, and a good sword and buckler man, will be spitted like a cat or a rabbit." Here we see a hint given, that the introduction of the rapier and dagger occasioned the disuse of the sword and buckler; and this is more fully declared by Fuller,\* who observes upon the circumstance of the murders committed by the gladiators, having acquired for them the name of "Swash Bucklers;" that it was a term of reproach, "from swashing and making a noise on the buckler, and ruffian, which is the same as a swaggerer. West Smithfield was formerly called Ruffian Hall, where such men usually met, casually or otherwise, to try masteries with sword and buckler; more were frightened than hurt, hurt than killed therewith, it being accounted unmanly to strike beneath the knee. But, since that desperate traytor Rowland Yorke first used thrusting with rapiers, swords and bucklers are disused." With respect to the celebrity of West Smithfield for this practice, Jonson, in the introduction to his play, called "Bartholomew Fair," notices the same, by the expression of "The sword and buckler age in Smithfield;" and, indeed, Shakspeare in his "Merry Wives of Windsor," presents us with this dialogue:

Page. "I have heard the Frenchman hath good skill in his rapier."

Shallow. "In these times you stand on distance, your passes, stoccadoes and I know not what. I have seen the time, with my long sword, I would have made you four tall fellows skip like rats."

With respect to the rapier, Fuller says, as we have seen, it was introduced by Rowland York. This information we have also from Darcie's Annals of Elizabeth, who tells us, that this person was the first who brought into England "that wicked and pernicious fashion to fight in the fields in duels with a rapier called a tucke, onely for the thrust, &c." Rowland York, it may be observed, appears to have betrayed Deventer to the Spaniards, in 1587; whence it might be supposed to be a Spanish weapon; but though it is generally so accounted, its name is French, and from that people was it first received by the English. Stowe seems to fix the date of the disuse of the

<sup>\*</sup> Worthies of England, published in 1662.

<sup>†</sup> Act II, Sc. 2.

sword and buckler in the following passage: "The mode of fighting with the word and buckler was frequent with all men till that of the rapier and dagger took place, when suddenly the general quarrel of fighting abated, which began about the 20th of Elizabeth."\* But this by no means establishes the precise time at which the rapier was introduced. On the contrary, it goes merely to its becoming a general fashion, for the same historian, in another place, informs us that, "shortly after (the 13th year of Elizabeth) began long tucks, and long rapiers, and he was held the greatest gallant that had the deepest ruffe, and longest rapier: the offence to the eye of the one, and the hurt unto the life of the subject that came by the other, caused her majesty to make proclamation against them both, and to place selected grave citizens at every gate to cut the ruffes, and breake the rapiers' points of all passengers that exceeded a yeard in length of their rapiers, and a nayle of a yeard in depth of their ruffes."

Bulleine, in his "Dialogue between Soarnesse and Chirurgi, 1579," mentions "the long foining rapier" as "a new kind of instrument to let blood withall." From a manuscript cited by Mr. Steevens, in Vol. III, p. 327, of his Shakspeare, there is some reason to think, that the rapier had been heard of in the time of Henry VIII, and it is not a little remarkable, that it was an article of exportation from this country in the time of the Protectorate.†

Stubbs, who wrote in the year 1595, tells us, that the rapiers, swords and daggers, "were gilt twice or thrice over the hilts with good angel gold; others at the least are damasked, varnished, and engraven, marvellous goodly; and least any thing should be wanting to set forth their pride, the scabbards and sheaths are of velvet, or the like, for leather, though it be more profitable, and so seemly; yet will not carry such a majority, or glorious showe as the other."

Shakespeare, in his comedy of "Twelfth Night," has put the following into the mouth of Sir Toby: "He is a knight, dubb'd with an hatch'd rapier, and on carpet consideration." This is explained by Holme, in his "Academy of Armoury," who says, "hatching is to silver or gild the hilt and pomell of a sword or hanger;" and, in "the tragical History of Jetzer," mention is made of "a sword richly hatcht with silver." But, from a spur of Edward the Fourth's time, in my son's collection, I am inclined to think, that it was when the steel had furrows made in it by a file, and these were silvered or gilt, that the term

<sup>\*</sup> A. D. 1578.

<sup>†</sup> See Oliverian Acts, A. D. 1657, and Douce's admirable illustrations of Shakspeare.

<sup>‡</sup> Book III, p. 91.

<sup>§</sup> A. D. 1683, 18mo.

was applied. With respect to carpet knights, they were sometimes called knights of the green cloth,\* and derived both these names from not wearing spurs; for Holme, in his work above cited, informs us, that, "all such as have studied law, physic, or any other arts and sciences whereby they have become famous and serviceable to the court, city, or state, and thereby have merited honour, worship, or dignity from the sovereign and fountain of honour; if it be the king's pleasure to knight any such persons, seeing they are not knighted as soldiers, they are not therefore to use the horseman's title or spurs; they are only termed simply miles et milites, knights of the carpet or knights of the green cloth, to distinguish them from knights that are dubbed as soldiers in the field, though in these our days they are created, or dubbed with the like ceremony as the others are, by the stroak of a naked sword upon their shoulders, with the words Rise up Sir T. A. knight."

Rapiers, in Elizabeth's time, were worn in dances, thus, Shakspeare in "All's well that ends well,"† makes Bertram say: "And no sword worn but one to dance with; and, in "Titus Andronicus,"‡ Demetrius speaks of a dancing rapier. This custom of wearing swords in the dancing schools, is exemplified in a curious story related in "Newes from the North,"§ where "Pierce Plowman sheweth how his neighbour and hee went to the tavern and to the dancing schoole and what happened there;" and there is another illustration of this subject in Stafforde's "Briefe Concipt of English Pollicy," in these words: "I thinke wee were as much dread or more of our enemies, when our gentlemen went simply, and our serving men plainly, without cuts or gards, bearing their heavy swordes and buckelers on their thighes insted of cuts and gardes and light daunsing swordes; and when they rode carrying good speares in their hands in stede of white rods, which they cary now more like ladies and gentlewomen then men; all which delicacyes maketh our men cleane, effeminate and without strength."

The rapier-dance, as practised at this day by the peasantry of Yorkshire, has been spoken of before.¶ It perhaps took its present name about this period, it being conceived the most genteel; but, in no other respect, did it resemble the dancing with rapiers, which were worn merely as ornaments, and not at all as

<sup>\*</sup> Book III, p. 57.

<sup>+</sup> Act 1I, Sc. I.

<sup>‡</sup> Act II, Sc. 1.

<sup>§</sup> Published in the year 1579, 4to.

<sup>||</sup> Published in 1581, 4to.

<sup>¶</sup> See Introduction.

connected with the dance. That, on the contrary, was founded on the war-dance of the antient Saxons, and was, probably, differently denominated anterior to the time of Queen Elizabeth. Many of the antient swords had inscriptions on their blades, and this was particularly the case with the rapiers. A French one in the possession of my friend, Francis Douce, Esq. and an engraving of which he has given in his illustrations of Shakspeare, has on it this motto: "Si fortune me tourmente, l'espérance me contente." But even this, he observes, seems to have been borrowed from the Spaniards, for, in "Wits, Fits, and Fancies,"\* is told the following story. "Hanniball Gonsaga being in the Low Countries overthrowne from his horse by an English captaine, and commanded to yeeld himselfe prisoner: kist his sword and gave it the Englishman saying: "Si fortuna me tormenta, la speranza me contenta."

These inscriptions on the blades of swords were not unusually, at this period, extracts from the Psalms, &c. A handsome one,† of German manufacture, in my son's collection, has on its blade on one side the maker's name, viz: "Georg Lerchenfelde;" and, on the other, "Noch lebt er (He liveth), Psalm 18." So Lope de Vega describes that of Aquila, as bearing inlaid in gold nielloed, a verse of the Psalms. It was, he says,

Mas famosa que fue de hombre cenida,
Para ocasiones del honor guardada,
Y en ultima defensa de la vida,
Y desde cuya guarnicion dorada
Hasta la punta la canal brunida
Tenia escrito de David un verso.
Nielado de oro en el azero terso.

Basket-hilted swords may have had their origin among the Scots in the latter part of the reign of Elizabeth. My friend, Sir Walter Scott, informs me, that the oldest one he ever saw, having a date on its blade, was in the possession of Burrel, at that time a dealer in curiosities in Edinburgh; and that he said it was also the oldest he had ever seen. The inscription stated it to have belonged to Gordon, of Buckie, the same person who afterwards took a principal share in the murder of the "bonnie" Earl of Murray, as he was called, at his Castle of Dunnbrissel, on the 7th January, 1592; and the date was a few years antecedent. Their object was to supply the place of a gauntlet, which had been often done, by wrapping the bonnet, or end of the cloak, round the right hand.

<sup>\*</sup> Published in 1614, 4to.

<sup>†</sup> Its date, however, is 1533.

In the Galic poem, entitled "Cath Fhinn agus Mhanois," is the following line:

Iomadh claidheamh dorn-chrann oirn,
"Many were our swords with fist-guards"

But great reliance must not be placed on the antiquity of that expression. In Ritson's "North Country Chorister," is a satyrical ballad which describes all the changes which a course of prosperous attendance, at the court of England, had made on the needy favourites of James I. Noticing the sword, the verse runs thus:

"Thy sword at thy a—e was a great black blade,
With a great basket-hilt of iron made;
But now a long rapier doth hang by his side,
And huffing doth this bonny Scot ride.
Bonny Scot we all witness can
That England hath made thee a gentleman."

With respect to the large blade, John Major, in 1521, speaks of the Highlanders as being armed with ensem latissimum, "a very broad sword," a small halbert, and a long dagger, edged on one side only, but very sharp.\* The more antient weapon was, properly speaking, the clay-more, a great two-handed sword used by the Highlanders, while that adopted by them more recently was called the clay-beg, or little sword. This last was the general fashion throughout Scotland; and most old swords now in existence, are of that form. But it has acquired the name of "Highland broad-sword," from the Highlanders continuing to go armed for at least a century after the Lowlanders had laid aside the use of weapons, and being, consequently, the last to retain this now antient Scottish blade and form of hilt. When the two-handed sword was disused, the distinction ceased, and the word clay-more was indiscriminately applied to all. Winton, in his Chronicle, mentions an encounter betwixt Lindsay and a Highlander, whom he had pierced with his lance, but who, while on the ground, cut at him with his two-handed sword, and, striking through his steel jambs, nearly cut his leg in two. There is an old two handed Highland sword in the possession of Lord Grey, at Kinforns, near Perth.

Kilmarnock and Dune are mentioned as renowned for the fabrication of weapons, till the middle of the last century.

The bandileers seem rather to have been introduced during the reign of

\* Majoris Historia, Lib. 1, c. 8. Such a shaped dirk is in my son's collection.

Henry III, King of France, than the Emperor Maximilian, as in Plate cexery of Montfaucon's Mon. Fr. is a musketeer with his musket, rest, match, bandileers, bullet bag, priming-flask, and sword, of this period. The bandileers were small cylindrical boxes, each containing one charge of powder, but, in this instance, they are made to swell near the bottom, and there to be rounded. Besides the musketeer, this Plate contains a captain of the guard in his cuirass, and armed with an ornamented pike and sword; one of the king's body-guard, and one of the king's Swiss guards, each with a halbert and sword, all of the time of Henry III, though the costume of the Swiss, as usual, is more antient.

In Mr. Gwennap's collection is an embossed suit of armour of the latter part of this reign, said to have belonged to Henry IV of France. It certainly, in a great measure, resembles that in Rubens's superb picture of him, contemplating his future marriage; the difference being merely in the form of the lower part of the breast-plate; it is a very fine suit and with an elegant outline. Mr. Gwennap has placed by it a steel roundelle, on which are four fleur de lis issuing like radii from a centre. In Rubens's picture, is another much resembling one in my son's collection, and Pere Daniel observes, that the rondelle was much used by the French troops in this reign.

Louis XI had granted permission to the Medici family to add to their armorial devices, that of a fleur de lis, as a symbol of their alliance. Some triple-ridged morians of this period,\* embossed, and having a fleur de lis on them, brought from Florence, are in my son's collection.

M. Montgommeri Corboson, in his Treatise on the French army in the time of Henry IV, says that chamfrons were still used by the cavalry,† and there are several, of Elizabeth's time, in my son's collection. The same French author, speaking of the infantry, says: "The captain of a company mounting guard, on making a muster, and passing before the king or the general, ought to carry an arquebuse and a powder flask,‡ and wear on his head a great plume of feathers." Henry IV himself wore a large pennache; for, at the battle of Yvry, he said to his soldiers: Enfans, si les cornettes vous manquent, voici le signe du ralliement; vous le trouverez toujours au chemin de la victoire et de l'honneur. "My lads,

<sup>\*</sup> Time of Queen Elizabeth.

<sup>†</sup> In the round-tower of Windsor Castle, is that of Henry, Prince of Wales, son of James I, probably the latest time of their being worn.

<sup>‡</sup> A French one of this time, of a somewhat triangular shape, beautifully inlaid with brass and mother of-pearl, is in my son's collection, and has on its front the auriflamme, which, at this period, was the standard of the French infantry.

if the trumpets fail you, here is the rallying sign (shewing his plume): you will always find it in the road to victory and honour."

M. de la Noue speaks\* of the heavy armour introduced towards the latter part of this reign, in these words: "There has been good reason from the violence of the arquebuses and pikes to render the harness more massive, and of superior proof to what it was. They are now, however, so exceedingly strong, that the most part are loaded with anvils,† instead of being covered with armour. Our gendarmes and light cavalry in the time of Henry II were much finer to look at wearing salade, brassets, tassettes and casque, with a lance and its banderole,‡ and had not their arms more heavy than what would hinder a man from wearing them 24 hours, but those of the present day are so enormous that a young gentleman of 30 years of age is quite maimed in his shoulders with such a burthen."

Among other sports exhibited for the amusement of Queen Elizabeth, during her residence at Kenelworth Castle, in Warwickshire, then the seat of the Earl of Leicester, who entertained her majesty there for several days, in the year 1575, was that of the quintain. Laneham, in his account of it, § says there was "A solemn country bridal, when in the castle was set up a comely quintane for feats at armes, where in a great company of young men and lassess, the bridegroom had the first course at the quintane and broke his spear tresherdiment. But his mare in his manage did a little stumble, that much adoe had his manhood to sit in his saddle. But after the bridegroom had made his course, ran the rest of the band, awhile in some order, but soon after tag and rag, cut and long tail; where the speciality of the sport was to see how some for his slackness had a good bob with the bag, and some for his haste to topple downright, and come tumbling to the post: some striving so much at the first setting out, that it seemed a question between man and beast, whether the race should be performed on horseback or on foot; and some put forth with spurs would run his race by as among the thickest of the throng, that down they came together hand over head. Another while he directed his course to the quintane, his judgment would carry him to a mare among the people, another would run and miss the quintane with his staff, and hit the board with his head."

<sup>\*</sup> In his 15th Military Discourse.

<sup>†</sup> One of these immense heavy suits, owing to the thickness of the breast-plate, being bullet proof, is in the collection of my friend, J. Watts Russell, Esq. M. P., but of a later date. There is, however, one in my son's armoury belonging to the light cavalry of this period.

t Little narrow flag at the end of the lance.

<sup>§</sup> In Nichols's Progresses of Elizabeth, Vol. I.

This whimsical description may, possibly, be somewhat exaggerated; but, no doubt, the inexpertness of the riders subjected them to many laughable accidents.

Stowe\* tells us, that "this exercise of running at the quintain was practised at London, as well in the summer as in the winter, but especially at the feast of Christmas. I have seen a quintain set upon Cornhill by Leadenhall, where the attendants of the lords of merry disports have run and made great pastime; for he that hit not the broad end of the quintain was laughed to scorn, and he that hit it full, if he rode not the faster, had a sound blow upon his neck with a bag full of sand hanged on the other end."

But the form of the modern quintain is more fully described by Dr. Plott.†
"They first set a post perpendicularly into the ground, and then place a slender piece of timber on the top of it on a spindle, with a board nailed to it on one end, and a bag of sand hanging at the other; against this board they antiently rode with spears. Now, as I saw it at Deddington in this county, only with strong staves, which violently bringing about the bag of sand, if they make not good speed, away it strikes them in the neck or shoulders, and sometimes knocks them off their horses; the great design of this sport being to try the agility both of horse and man, and to break the board. It is now only in request at marriages, and set up in the way for young men to ride at as they carry home the bride, he that breaks the board being counted the best man.";

The Saracen-quintain was also used at this period. Pluvinel, who was master of the horse to Louis XIII, tells us, \$\xi\$ that: "When many were engaged in running at the Saracen, the conqueror was declared from the number of strokes he had made, and the value of them; for instance, if he struck the image upon the top of the nose between the eyes, it was reckoned for three; if below the eyes upon the nose for two, if under the nose to the point of the chin one; all other strokes were not counted; but whoever struck upon the shield and turned the quintain round, was not permitted to run again upon the same day, but forfeited his courses as a punishment for his want of skill."

<sup>\*</sup> Survey of London, p. 77.

<sup>†</sup> History of Oxfordshire, published in 1677.

<sup>‡</sup> A quintain, of this sort, may still be seen at a village called Offham, near Maidstone, in Kent; the inhabitants being obliged, by a particular tenure, to keep one standing. The broad board is perforated, probably, to hold pieces of bone, or something distinguished by colour to aim at. See one at the foot of Plate xxv.

<sup>§</sup> Sur l'Exercice de monter à cheval, Part III, p. 177, published in 1628.

<sup>||</sup> He gives a representation of the Saracen quintain, where may be observed, above the nose, between the eye-brows, a small round patch.

Tilting, or running at the ring, was another fashionable pastime at this period. It was evidently derived from the quintain, and was, probably, practised by the better class, who relinquished the quintain to their inferiors. It is frequently called, running or tilting at the quintain, notwithstanding; and hence Commenius, in his Vocabulary,\* says: "At this day tilting at the quintain is used, where a hoop or ring is struck with a lance." So, likewise, the Florentines called running at the ring, Correr alla quintana.

The excellence of the pastime consisted in riding at full speed, and thrusting the point of the lance through the ring, which was supported in a case or sheath, by the means of two springs, but might be readily drawn out by the force of the stroke, and remain upon the top of the lance. Pluvinel gives a representation of the ring and sheath, the manner in which it was attached to the upright supporter, and also the method of performing the exercise.

At the commencement of the seventeenth century, this pastime was reduced to a science; the length of the course was measured, and marked out according to the properties of the horses that were to run. For one of the swiftest kind, one hundred paces from the starting place to the ring, and thirty paces beyond it to stop him, were deemed necessary, but for such horses as had been trained to the exercise, and were more regular in their movements, eighty paces to the ring, and twenty beyond it, were thought to be sufficient. "The ring," says Pluvinel, "ought to be placed with much precision, somewhat higher than the left eyebrow of the practitioner, when sitting upon his horse; because it was necessary to stoop a little in running towards it."

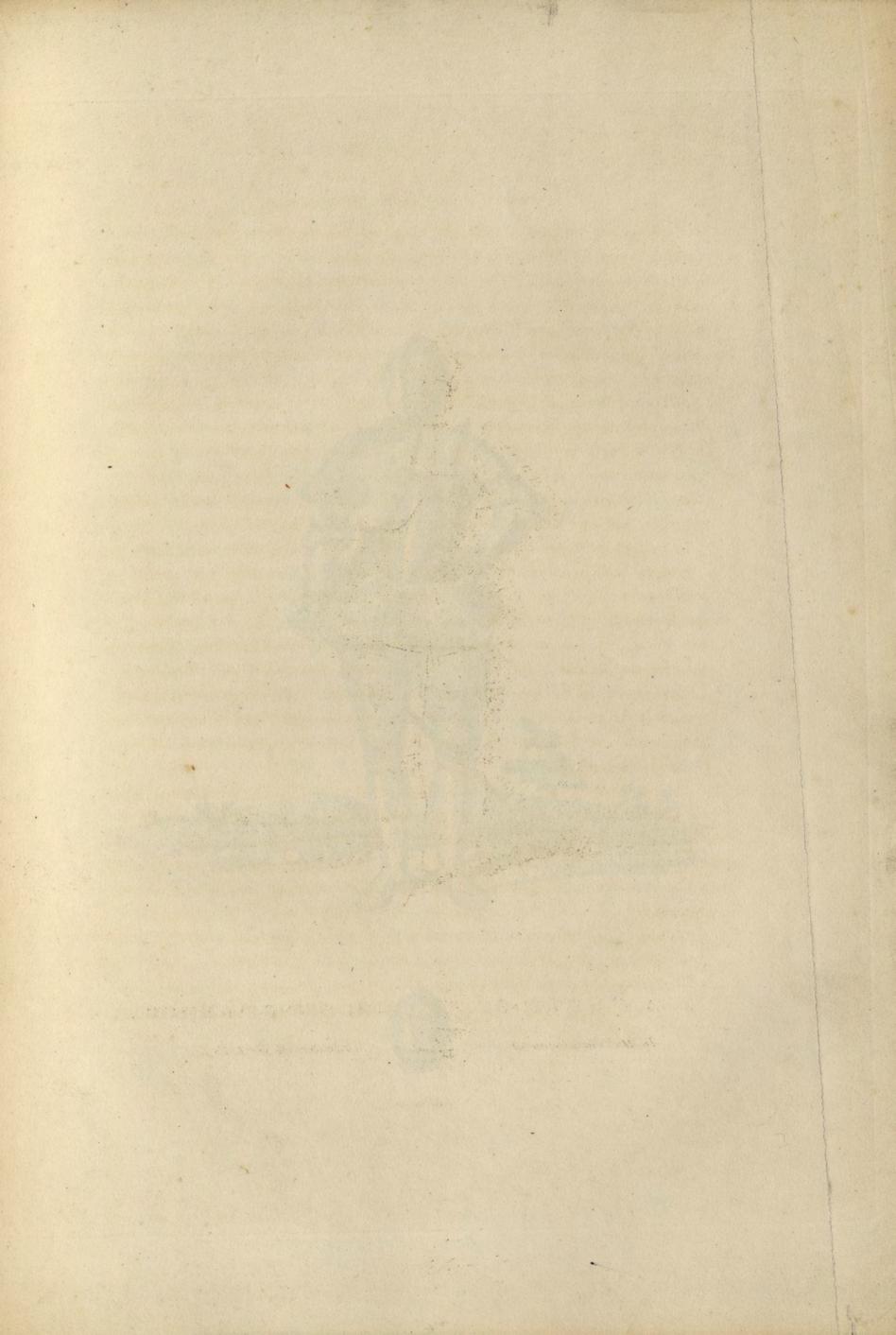
Three courses were allowed to each candidate; and he who thrust the point of his lance through it the oftenest, or in case no such thing was done, struck it the most frequently, was the victor: but if it so happened that none of them did either the one or the other, or that they were equally successful, the courses were to be repeated until such time as the superiority of one put an end to the contest.†

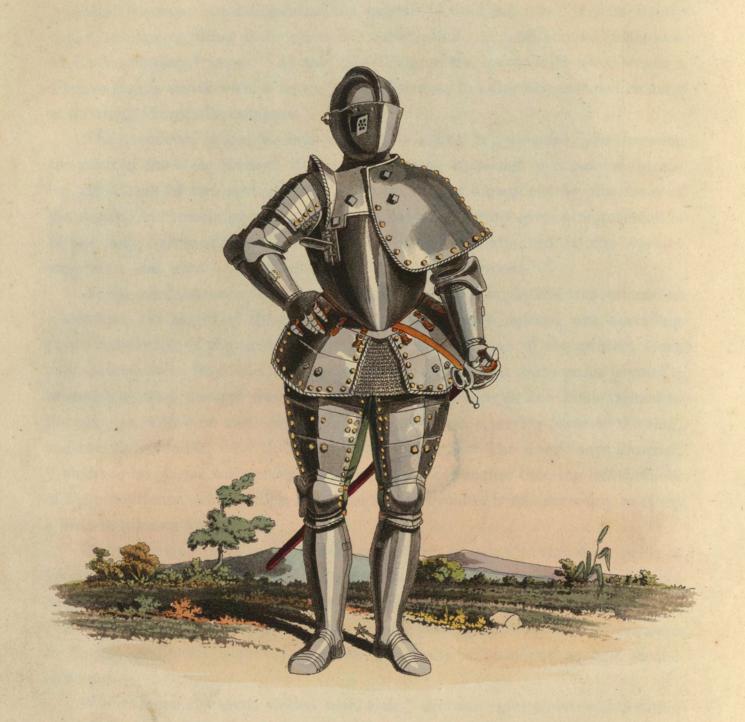
When Queen Elizabeth visited Sandwich,‡ she was entertained with a tilting upon the water, "Where certain Wallounds that could well swym had prepared two boates, and in the middle of each boate was placed a borde, upon which borde was placed a man, and so they met together, with either of them a staff and

<sup>\*</sup> Orbis sensualium Pictus, published in 1658.

<sup>†</sup> Ménestrier Traité de Tournois, p. 112.

<sup>‡</sup> In the year 1573.





A SUIT OF

In the possession of



JOUSTING ARMOUR,

Llewelyn Meyrick Esq.

A.D.1600.

a shield of wood; and one of them did overthrowe another, at which the queene had good sport."\*

The same pastime was practised at London, for Stow says: "I have seen in the summer season, upon the river of Thames, some rowed in wherries, with staves in their hands flat at the fore-end, running one against another, and for the most part one or both of them were overthrown and well ducked."

Stowe relates also, that: "About the 29th year of Queen Elizabeth, 1588, there was a lottery for rich and curious armour, and was begun to be drawn at London in S<sup>t</sup> Paul's churchyard at the westgate, a house of timber and boards being erected for that purpose on S<sup>t</sup> Peter and Paul's day in the morning, which lottery continued in drawing day and night for the space of two or three days."

This was probably for the sale of the armour taken in the Spanish armada, for the benefit of the captors; and if so, will account for there being none in what are called the spoils shewn in the Tower of London.

In my son's collection is a Bavarian suit of this period, belonging to a man at arms, but furnished with a mentoniere and shoulder-shield for tilting. He has also another that belonged to William, fifth Duke of Bavaria, the arms of Bavaria, viz: Lozengy bendy, being on the shield. This has additional armour for the bridle arm, with a fixed gauntlet, i. e. with immoveable fingers, to be used at tournaments. Plate LXXIII, represents the first mentioned suit. It will be observed, that, in the mentionere, is a little perforated door, to give air to the wearer previous to his starting on the course. When this mentoniere is removed, there is a beaver to fix on instead, in which is also a trap-door. Below the plate the helmet is represented uncovered. The cuisses are made remarkably wide to admit the stuffed breeches, then fashionable. Respecting these, there is the following curious memorandum in a MS. in the Harleian Library, † dated 33d of Elizabeth:

"Memorandum, that over the seats in the parliament-house there were certain holes, some two inches square in the walls, in which were placed posts to uphold a scaffold round about the house within, for them to sit upon who used the wearing of great breeches stuffed with hair like wool-sacks, which fashion being left off the 8th year of Elizabeth, the scaffolds were taken down and never since put up."

In my son's collection is also a demi-lancer's suit of this period, which is of the same shape as the last when the tilting-armour is removed, but ends at the

<sup>\*</sup> Nichols's Progresses, Vol. I, p. 56.

<sup>†</sup> Survey of London.

<sup>‡</sup> Marked, 980.

knees, and is black. It has, however, the ordinary gauntlets with wrist-caps, which the suit in Plate LXXIII has not, they ending at the wrists. Instead of a close helmet it has the open casque with oreillets, but three conjoined bars from the umbril, like those in the helmet underneath Plate LXVII.

The Flemish infantry, in the middle of this reign, carried pikes with exceeding long blades, as appears in a triumphal entry into Antwerp, in 1582.\*

Hentzner, who visited England in 1598, mentions that Queen Elizabeth was guarded by fifty gentlemen pensioners, whom he calls satellites nobiles, with gilt pole-axes.†

The same author gives us the following description of the armour in the Tower: "Upon entering the Tower of London we were obliged to leave our swords at the gate, and deliver them to the guard. When we were introduced, we were shewn above a hundred pieces of arras belonging to the crown, made of gold, silver, and silk; several saddles covered with velvet of different colours; an immense quantity of bed furniture, such as canopies and the like, some of them most richly ornamented with pearl; some royal dresses, so extremely magnificent as to raise any one's admiration at the sums they must have cost. We were next led to the armoury in which are these particularities: spears out of which you may shoot; shields that will give fire four times; a great many rich halberds commonly called partisans, with which the guard defend the royal person in battle, some lances covered with red and green velvet, and the suit of armour of King Henry VIII; many and very beautiful arms, as well for men as for horse-fights; the lance of Charles Brandon, Duke of Suffolk three spans thick; two pieces of cannon, the one fires three, the other seven balls at a time; two others made of wood, which the English had at the siege of Boulogne in France, and by this stratagem, without which they could not have succeeded, they struck a terror into the inhabitants as at the appearance of artillery, and the town was surrendered upon articles. Nineteen cannons of a thicker make than ordinary, and in a room apart thirty-six of a smaller; other cannons for chain shot, and balls proper to bring down masts of ships; cross-bows, bows and arrows, of which to this day the English make great use in their exercises. But who can relate all that is to be seen here? Eight or nine men employed by the year are scarce sufficient to keep all the arms bright."

<sup>\*</sup> This work is entitled, Entrée magnifique du Duc de Braban d'Anjou, en sa trois-renommée Ville d'Anvers.

<sup>+</sup> Hastes deaurati, they now call them their battle-axes. Hentzner's Travels, printed at Strawberry Hill.

<sup>†</sup> This was a bourdonnass, or hollow-lance.

The Hungarian and Polish light cavalry, at this time, were called hussars. Thus, in a letter dated 1589, it is said: Huzzaronibus autem Pechi Ferentz qui quoque erectis signis perfide et perpetua infamia nos deseruerunt. "Morever Pechi Ferentz with the hussars, perfidiously deserted us to their perpetual infamy, with their colours flying." Notwithstanding this disreputable account, they were adopted by other European nations; for, in the 38th decree of King Matthias,\* it is observed: Quia nonnullæ gentes, potissimum vero levis armaturæ, sive huzarones hoc facere consueverunt, &c. "Because some nations have been accustomed to place their strength in light-armed troops or hussars, &c." The Germans were the first to incorporate them with their army; and, at this time, they were armed with a scymetar attached to their girdles, and a long stabbingsword which they carried at the right side, and which reached from the horse's chest to his crupper. When using it they crouched down by the animal's neck. This sword was more in the nature of a pike, and when they used it, they pressed it on their knee. They had also pistols and a carabine, probably added by the emperor, and a large case suspended at the left hip by a belt. Any deserters were admitted among the French troops in the year 1635, soon after which they were regularly incorporated in their army, and since then adopted by the English.

Queen Elizabeth, by commission, dated Westminster, 3d March, in the 37th year of her reign, had in April 1599, made out a complete list of the royal navy, together with the number of brass and cast-iron ordnance on board. These consisted of cannons, demi-cannons, culverins, demi-culverins, sakers, mynions, falcons, falconetts, port-pece-halls, port-pece-chambers, fowler-halls, fowler-chambers, and curtalls, the different species of ordnance then in use. The mynion, according to Sir William Monson,† was a piece of three inches and a half bore, with the weight of its shot four pounds; and the culverin, of five inches and a half bore, with the weight of shot seventeen pounds and a half. He describes the cannon to have been of eight inches bore, weight of shot sixty pounds, and the demi-cannon of six inches and three-quarters bore, weight of shot thirty-three pounds and a half. "Porte pieces of irone," with "shotte for porte pieces," are mentioned by Mr. Topham, but neither he nor Sir William Monson describe their peculiarities. What, in this account are called curtalls,

<sup>\*</sup> Apud Carolum de Aguino in Gloss: Milit.

<sup>†</sup> In his Naval Tracts.

<sup>‡</sup> In his historical description of a second picture in Windsor Castle, in the Archæologia, Vol. VI p. 190.

in a passage given by Mr. Lodge, are denominated "curtowes of metall, with all their apparell."

In England's Elizabeth, by Heywood, 1632, p. 186, the word chamber itself implies a piece of ordnance. Thus: "As she went through Temple Barre, the ordinance, and chambers of the Tower went off, the report whereof gave much content."

Sir William Monson describes the falconett as of two inches bore, with weight of shot one pound and a half.

In the same MS. is a list of the small arms in the ships and arsenals, thus:

## " At the Tower of London.

Bowes with ecciiij vi decaied	Marinetta Marinetta	- 8185	
Bowstaves	-	- 6019 ind	e 938 unservic.
Wreckes of bowstaves -	-	- 983	
Slurbowes	-17100	- 15 ind	e 1 lacks a bender.
Crosbowes	214 S Tenti	- 180 ind	e 1 lacks a tiller.
Bowstringes	-	- 196 gro	s—10 doz.

#### " Arowes, viz.

Lyvery arrowes 14125 shefe, whereof 731 shefe to be repayred, and 30 shefe decaied.

Slurbowe arrowes 132, whereof 12 with fierwoorkes.

Crosbowe arrowes decaied 500.

Musket arrowes with 56 to be new fethered 892 shefe 13 arrows, and one case full for a di. culvering.

Longebow arrowes for fier woorks 12 shefe, and

Longebowe arrowes with fierwoorks 98 shefe decaied.

### " At Woolwich, viz.

Bowes to be re	epayred	- 1000	PARKET	- Continue	e-obesit ta	g-1	76
Slurbowes	-			HE HARY	- 10 mm	-	2
Crosbowes	-	-	-	-		-	2
Bowstaves	-	-	-	-		-	6019
Slurbowes	Library C			<b>建</b> 体 作业的	section and to	-	47

Crosbowes for fier woorks - - - 194
Wrecke of bowstaves - - - 983

#### " Arrowes, viz.

Lyvery arrowes with 30 shefe thereof decaied, 170 shefe.

Slurbowe arrowes 127.

Longbowe arrowes with fier woorkes 24, and

Musket arrowes with 22 shefe to be new fethered 24 shefe 18 arr:

## " At Rochester, viz.

Bowes inde 6 de	ecaied	estingues as	B NATIONAL SECTION	Manager Con	STATE OF THE PARTY OF		141
Slurbowes	ing spans	中的政策。	b. Brayes	ary Espe	sanaul so	Mar Lin	10
Crosbowes		-	HALL WA		977-75 H	71.7	6

Bowstringes inde 10 doz. decaied 44 doz.

Bowestringes 205 gros 2 doz. 10 stringes.

Lyvery arrowes 15418 shefe.

## " Arrowes, viz.

Lyvery arrowes with 75 shefe decaied 192 shefe.

Of slurbow arrowes 47 decaied.

Slurbowe arrowes with fierwoorks 605.

Arrowes for fierwoorkes decaied 75.

Arrowes for fierwoorkes 16 shefe 3 arrowes.

Musket arrowes with fier woorkes 109 shefe 4 arr:

Brasers 38.

Shooting gloves 156.

Musket arrowes 983 shefe 6 arr:"

There is also a similar account of the bowes, cross-bows, and their appurtenances belonging to the ships. One thing mentioned in this inventory, which deserves notice, is the musket-arrow. In Sir Richard Hawkins's account of his Voyage to the South Sea, A. D. 1591, mention is made of his shooting arrows from muskets with great success; and as the passage fully explains their nature, it is here given in his own words:\*

"In this discourse General Michaell Angell demanded for what purpose served the little short arrowes, which we had in our shippe, and those in so great

\* P. 164, Sec. LXVI.

VOL. III.

L

quantitie; I satisfied him that they were for our muskets. They are not as yet in use amongst the Spaniards, yet of singular effect and execution, as our enemies confessed; for the upper worke of their shippes being musket proofe, in all places they passed through both sides with facilitie, and wrought extraordinary disasters, which caused admiration to see themselves wounded with small shott, where they thought themselves secure; and by no means could find where they entered, nor come to the sight of any of the shott. Hereof they proved to profit themselves after, but for that they wanted the tampkings, which are first to be driven home, before the arrow be put in, and as then understood not the secret, they rejected them as uncertaine, and therefore not to be used: but of all the shot used now a dayes, for the annoying of an enemie in fight by sea, few are of greater moment for many respects, which I hold not convenient to treat of in publique."

These wooden arrows, we learn from Lord Verulam, were called sprites, and he thus speaks of them: "The Turkish bowe giveth a very forcible shoot, insomuch as it hath been known, that the arrow has pierced a steel target, or a piece of brass, two inches thick: but that which is more strange, the arrow, if it be headed with wood, hath been known to pierce through a piece of wood of eighteen inches thick: and it is certain, that we had in use at one time for sea fight, short arrows which they call sprights, without any other heads save wood sharpened; which were discharged out of muskets, and would pierce through the sides of ships, where a halbert would not pierce."

In Germany, besides the faucon, there was another kind of cannon, called a singerin. Thus, in a letter of the Archduke of Austria, in the year 1589,\* mention is made of tormenta sua bellica, ex quibus quatuor majora vulgo singerin, item quatuor falconas, et alia insuper plurima in fossas erectas pertrahere cœpit. "His cannon, of which four were of the larger kind, called singerin,† and four faucons, and many others placed on their ramparts, he began to draw through."

After the invention of bombs, those of carcasses of different kinds, and grenades soon followed; the former, according to Strada, in the year 1588, at the siege of Vakterdone, a town in Guelders. "Nothing," says he, "frightened the burghers more than certain hollow balls filled with powder and materials that could not be extinguished; these balls were thrown into the air by mortars, and

<sup>\*</sup> De Obsidione Varadinensi.

<sup>†</sup> Probably the same as the serpentine.

had a match of a certain length, in order to set fire to the powder. Falling on the tops of houses they broke through them, and as soon as they had taken fire, they burst and spread out on every side a flame, which was difficult to extinguish with water." "This instrument," which gave origin to grenades, fire-pots, &c. the author adds, "was invented, a few days before the siege of Vakterdone, by an inhabitant of Venlo, a maker of fireworks. The inhabitants of that town proposed with it to entertain the Duke of Cleves, who was on a visit to them, and to whom they had given a grand repast; they, therefore, were desirous of making the first trial of it before him. It succeeded much better than they proposed, for the carcase falling on a house, beat in the roof and floors, and set it on fire, which, communicating with the neighbouring houses, burnt two-thirds of the town, the fire being so violent, that it was impossible to extinguish it." "I know," adds Strada, "that some have written, that a month or two before, a like experiment had been made at Bergem-op-Zoom, by an Italian deserter from the Spanish troops, who had engaged with the Dutch, and had promised to make them some hollow balls of stone or iron, which being thrown into a besieged town, and bursting after their fall, would set every thing on fire; but, as he was preparing his composition, a spark having fallen on the powder, he was killed, and, by his death, left those for whom he was working, in a state of uncertainty whether or not his secret would have succeeded."

The grenades are said to have been first used in 1594, in which year the howitzer was invented by the Germans. The bomb being intended to beat down buildings in its fall, or to break and destroy every thing around it, by the pieces of broken iron scattered in all directions by its explosion; the end proposed by the carcase and grenade, was to burn the towns by means of fire-balls.

A species of small arm for throwing grenades, called a hand-mortar, whose date, from the ornamented engraving on it, may be referred to the close of this reign, is in my son's armoury. Its length, including the stock,\* is two feet one inch, its diameter at its mouth, three inches, while that of its chamber is little more than half an inch. It is furnished with both match and wheel-lock, an invention of this period, of which there are several specimens in this collection, to counteract the effects of the wheel-lock hanging fire. The stock is inlaid with ivory, on

which are engraved several figures of warriors, &c. and one is beautifully painted on the barrel.

Sir William Monson, in his Naval Tracts, written in the reign of Queen Elizabeth and James I, gives the following account of the names and dimensions, weight of the cannon, shot, and powder, of the antient English ordnance.

NAMES.	Bore of Cannon.	Weight of Metal.	Weight of Shot.	Weight of Powder
THE REST PROPERTY OF THE	Inches.	Pounds.	Pounds.	Pounds.
Cannon royal -	- 81/2	8000	- 66	- 30
Cannon	- 8 -	6000	- 60	- 27
Cannon serpentine	- 7 -	5500	- 53½	- 25
Bastard cannon -	- 7 -	4500	- 41	- 20
Demi cannon -	- 63/4 -	4000	- 33½	18
Cannon petro -	- 6 -	4000	- 24½	14
Culverin	- 5½ -	4500	- 17½	- 12
Basilisk	- 5 -	4000	- 15	- 10
Demi culverin -	- 4	3400	91	- 8
Bastard culverin -	- 4 -	3000	- 5	- 53
Sacar	- 3½ -	1400	$-5\frac{1}{2}$	- 51/2
Minion -	- 3½ -	1000	. 4	- 4
Faulcon -	- 2½ -	660	- 2	- 3½
Falconet	- 2 -	500	- 1½	3
Serpentine -	- 11/2 -	400	3 4	112
Rabinet	- 1 -	300	1/2	34

According to Pere Daniel, the petard, of which he has a representation, was invented in France a short time before the year 1579, at which date it was used by Henry IV, then only King of Navarre. It was generally made use of to burst open gates, and was a kind of iron mortar of the form of a truncated cone, or of a bell, with a touch-hole in the centre of the breech, and four handles for fastening it to its madrier. This madrier was a square board, to which was attached a hook, wherewith it was hung on the gate intended to be burst open.

It was soon after introduced into England; for we find that the Earl of Essex,\* besieging the Irish castle of Cahir, in Munster, on the 30th May, 1599,

<sup>\*</sup> MS. Journal of the Occurrences in the Camp of the Earl of Essex, from May 21, to July 2, among MSS. of Sir James Ware, quoted in Birch's Memoirs of the reign of Queen Elizabeth, p. 401, Vol. 11.

"ordered the chief petarder to make ready his petard to play upon the wall of the bawne on the orchard side, whence it was also directed that a sap should be made; and in case either attempt took effect, Sir Charles Percy, with four old companies, should presently advance, and at the other two breaches two colonels were appointed to go on as soon as the petard had play'd, and Sir Charles had given the alarm."

Camden, in his Life of Elizabeth, says: "She was the first that procured gunpowder to be made in England, that she might not pray and pay for it also to her neighbours."

Gunpowder was at first not corned, but remained in its mealed state; it was then called serpentine powder. Peter Whitehorne, in a book published in the year 1573,\* has given the proportion of the ingredients for making it, under each of the following heads.

"The first Invention and oldest manner in making Serpentine Pouder or Pouder for Ordinaunce.

The next practis of making pouder for ordinaunce.‡

Pouder for ordinaunce of a newer making.

Pouder for do. not so olde.

Do. do. not verie olde.

Do. used of late daies for handgunnes.

Do. for ordinaunce used not long agon.

Do. for do. used of latter daies.

Grosse pouder of a newer sorte.

Grosser do. of a newer making.

Harkabus pouder of do.

Fine pouder of do.

Grosse pouder of do.

Pouder of do.

Harkabus pouder used nowe adayes.

Handgun pouder of a newer making.

Do. of a stronger and newer making.

<sup>\*</sup> It is entitled; "Certaine Wayes for ordering souldiours in battelray, &c." imprinted at London for John Wight.

<sup>+</sup> Nye, in his Treatise on Fireworks, dates this in the year 1380.

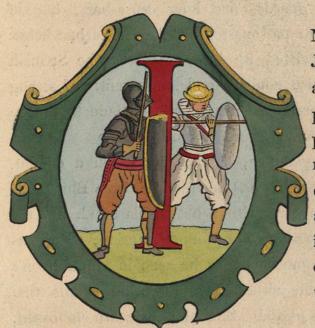
<sup>‡</sup> Nye fixes this in 1410; he also gives another kind made in 1480, which Whitehorne has not noticed; and lastly states that made in 1647, his own time.

Finer and stronger handgun pouder.
Grosse pouder used now a dayes.\*
Grosse pouder used now a dayes.
Handgun powder used now a daies.
Do. do.

\* Nye dates this 1520.

# James the First.

1603,



N the collection of my worthy friend, J. Watts Russell, Esq. M. P., is a suit of armour with an immensely thick breast-plate, which has been proved to be bullet-proof,\* and which has armour for the legs reaching down to the ankles. But armour cap-à-pie† began to fall into disrepute soon after the accession of this monarch, and in the latter part of his reign, the jambs, or steel coverings for the legs, were almost wholly laid aside.

The heavy cavalry, then under the

denomination of pistoliers, appeared in suits which ended at the knee, and continued in fashion during the following reign.

The pacific disposition of James had, indeed, induced that sovereign to observe with much acuteness, "that he could not but greatly praise armour, as it not only protected the wearer, but also prevented him from injuring any other person."

We learn from the Diversarum gentium armatura equestris, printed in 1617,

<sup>\*</sup> Noticed before. It has the two beavers.

<sup>†</sup> A black cap-à-pie suit of this period, wrongly called La Hire's, is at the Earl of Carlisle's Castle Howard, York-shire. The cuisses are of several overlapping pieces, which is the case with those of the same date in the Tower.

and which displays the costume of the cavalry at the close of the reign of Elizabeth and beginning of that of James I, that the German knights had entirely disused horse armour, having instead steel muzzles of open work placed over their mouths. Three of these are in my son's collection, one having the date 1565, another the Austrian Eagle, and the third, this inscription:

Ich reit Got geb mir ge schwind, Das ich meine feind uber wind.

" I ride, God give me speed, that I my foe may overcome."

Each of the knights, in the book above mentioned, is there represented as having two pistols at the saddle-bow, but instead of being one on each side, they are put one before the other on the near one, in a sort of double holster. On the other side they carried an ornamented martel de fer, like that in the Tower of London, put into the hand of the figure called Richard I. Their swords are long, with short hilts, broad guards, and long cross-bars, one of which is in my son's armoury. They wear patrons for pistol charges just below their hips, and have their horses tails twisted up into a knot. The Spanish cavalry are represented with stiff cloaks with conical hoods, apparently of strong buff leather, that gave them an odd appearance. The cloak is made to button down the front, and, being wide at bottom, resembles another cone.

Plate LXXIV, represents an officer of pikemen, at this period, in a corslet, precisely like one in my son's collection. This has been taken from Bingham's Tactics, printed in the year 1616. He is here with a hat in his hand, but the head-piece usually worn at this period, was a wide-rimmed morian, or a pothelmet,\* which greatly resembled it. Such morians may be seen in Montfaucon's Mon. Fr. Plate cclxiii, and cclxiv, which, although representing events that took place in 1562, were not drawn till this period. Similar figures are embossed, somewhat larger in size, on a gilt copper morian of the same form in my son's armoury, which appears to have belonged to one of the Medici family, who is represented on it on horseback.†

Bingham's work has also an engraving of Prince Charles, which exhibits the upper part of the armour of a man at arms, of this period.

In Drayton's Polyolbion, printed in 1613, is represented Prince Henry, eldest son of James I, practising "the valiance of the pike," and in the back ground are several persons engaged in the same way. Similar representations are drawn

<sup>\*</sup> See one at the foot of this Plate.

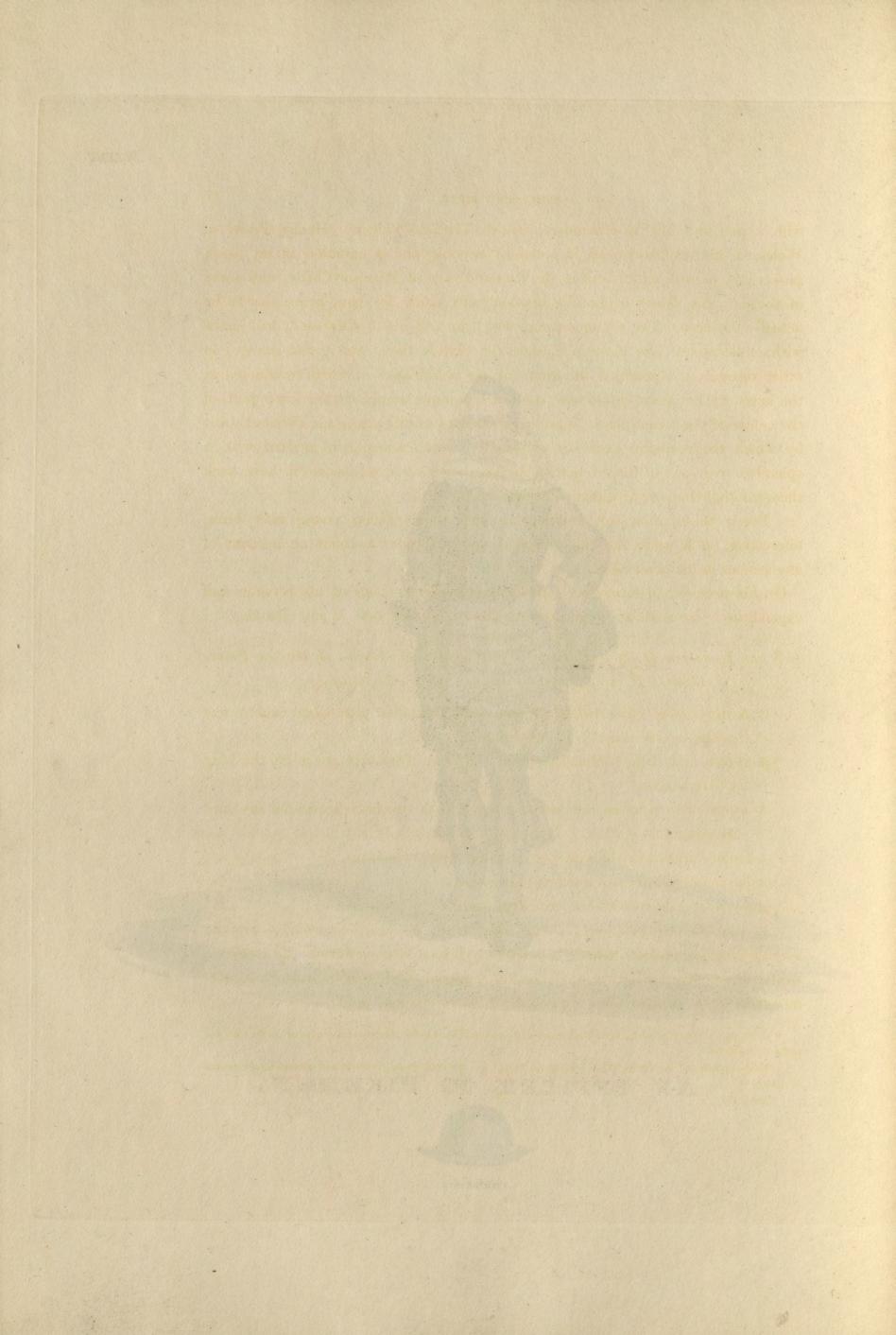
<sup>†</sup> See it under Plate LXXV.



AN OFFICER OF PIKEMEN,



(A.D.1616.)



with a pen and ink, in a manuscript in the Herald's College. Henry, Prince of Wales, is always pourtrayed in splendid armour, and a gauntlet, in my son's possession, as well as his suit in the Round-Tower of Windsor Castle, and some of those in the Tower of London, undoubtedly made for him, prove this to be actually the case. The tilting armour, which he and his brother used, had jambs with ankle-plates, like those in Edward the Sixth's time, and grand-guards; in other respects it resembled the usual armour at this period, which terminated at the knees. The grand-guard was fixed on by a staple and pin in the lower part of the centre of the breast-plate. Under the auspices of this prince the dormant spirit by which the romantic exercises of chivalry were encouraged, revived with a splendour emulous of former times, but his premature death seems to have sunk them into oblivion, never again to be awakened.

Every thing, however, relating to this accomplished young man being interesting, in a work like this it would not be proper to omit an account of any armour in his possession.

On his decease, in November, 1612, the several accounts of his revenue and expenditure were made up, together with inventories of his goods and chattels.\*

- In "the Inventorie of the Jewelles belonging once to the High and Mightie Prince Henry, Prince of Great Brytane," occur the following:
  - "A very riche cross sword all sett with dyamants with chap richelie sett gevin by hir majetiet at his creation.
  - A rapier and dagger enamelled and sett with dyamants gevin be the king of Denmarke.
  - A sword with a cross hilt enamelled sett with dyamants gevin be my lord Harrington.
  - A helmet upon a shield with a plume, sett with dyamants.
  - A payre of brydell bosses sett with dyamants.
  - A payre of gold spurres sett with dyamants."

In the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq. is a most beautifully wrought gauntlet, before noticed, which belonged to Prince Henry, having the rose and thistle struck deeply into it, and, in the engraved work, the initials H. P. surmounted by a coronet twice repeated. It is russet and gold.

M

<sup>\*</sup> In the papers formerly belonging to Sir Julius Cæsar, and published by the Society of Antiquaries, in the 15th Vol. of the Archæologia.

<sup>†</sup> This translation of the French idiom, sa majesté, is curious. By cross sword, is meant one with merely a cross-bar for its guard.

At Windsor Castle, is his horse's chanfron, on which are engraved the royal arms, and H. P.

In the Wardrobe Account of this Prince, dated 7th October, 1608, occur the following:

"Pair of spurs guilt and hatched with silver, and cut rowells -				
Twelve launce heads hatched, and gilt at	10s.			
A sword and dagger damaskined with gold, and cut in iron				
A rapier hatched, silvered, and chased with velvet scabord and	Hand			
silver handle	60s.			

In my son's collection is a sword with a beautiful ribbed blade, and a hilt of exquisite workmanship, the several parts of which are covered with embossed foliage, terminating in the heads of dolphins with open mouths. It was presented by Philip III, King of Spain, to Wolfgang William, Count Palatine of the Rhine; and on the blade are the portraits of both these great personages. Round the first is inscribed, "Philippus 1614 . . . . . Hispania: tot: et Ind: Rex:" and encompassing the other, "Ich Wolfgangius Wilhelmus, D. G. Co. Pal: ad Rhen: Dux." On the same side of the blade as the king's portrait, is inscribed, "Si Dux. . . . . . . meus non Hostes vincet op: meus," "Pro aris et focis," and "Me fecit Selensn." Below the head of Wolfgang, "Veritatem deligite, et pugnate pro patriæ:" "Fide sed cui vide," and "Pro pale: et patri."

Two highly-ornamented partisans with the arms and initials of this Wolfgang, dated 1616, are in the same collection.

It cannot be laid down as a general rule, but during this monarch's time and that of Elizabeth, the pauldrons were often attached to the armour by straps which came from under the gorget; while, in the time of Charles I, they were placed above it. In the reign of Henry VIII, the pauldrons had in them little holes which slipped on upright pins fixed on hinges placed on the gorget, and with spring catches in them to hold these shoulder-pieces fast.

Maurice, Prince of Nassau, was anxious to keep up the use of the rondelles, or rondaches; Louis XIII, King of France did the same, but perhaps the last general use of these was in 1621, at the siege of St. Jean d'Angeli; their retention after this being quite partial.

A handsome quarto volume was published in Dutch and German at the beginning of this reign, containing the exercise of the swords-men with rondaches,

and long shields, by which it appears that the latter had their legs guarded by greave-wore cuirasses and morians.

Besides these, are the infantry armed with calivers, or muskets, and rests, both which being still fired with matchlocks;\* the soldier is made to carry the match-line lighted at both ends. The soldier, armed with the caliver, has attached to his girdle at the left hip, his sword, and at the right, his powder-flask, touch-box, bullet-bag, and an additional quantity of match-cord, and for defensive armour wears simply a morian. The musketeer has no other armour; but, instead of the girdle, has a belt over his left shoulder, to which are suspended, before and behind, his bandileers, or cylindrical boxes of powder, each containing one charge, and to the bottom of which, at the right hip, are the bullet-bag and priming-box. The musket is carried on the left shoulder, and the rest in the right hand. Before this period, the caliver, as well as the arquebuss, had been generally supported on the right shoulder, but the invention of the rest, rendered the position not optional.

Besides these, this work contains the pikemen and their exercise, but their costume is not altered from the last reign.

The word, artillery was used in its most extended sense at the commencement of this reign, and comprehended "long-bows, cross-bows, slur-bows, and stone-bows; also, scorpions, rams, and catapults, formerly used, cannons, baselisks, culverins, jakers,‡ faulcons, minions, fowlers, chambers, harquebusses, calivers, petronils, pistols, and dags. This is the artillerie which is nowe in most estimation, and they are divided into great ordinaunce, and into shot or guns."§

According to Pere Daniel, dragoons are of French origin, and were first appointed by Charles de Cossé, Mareschal de Brisac, when he commanded the army of that nation in Piedmont, sometime about the year 1600. He supposes that they were called dragoons from the celerity of their motions, and the rapidity with which they ravaged a country, thereby resembling the fabulous monster of that denomination.

Sir James Turner¶ seems much of the same opinion: "For what they got

<sup>\*</sup> As the wheel did not always succeed, the match was added to it. A caliver of this kind is in my son's armoury, and I have seen a musket which had two wheels, placed one above the other, and the match as a further security. It had a rest belonging to it.

<sup>†</sup> One of these and a swordsman, have been introduced into the initial letter of this reign.

Sakers.

<sup>§</sup> Author cited by Grose.

<sup>||</sup> Mil. Fr. Tom. II, p. 498.

<sup>¶</sup> Pallas Armata.

the denomination of dragoons, is not so easy to be told, but because in all languages they are called so, we may suppose they may borrow their name from dragon, because a musketeer on horsback with his burning match, riding a gallop, as many times he doth, may something resemble that beast which naturalists call a fiery dragon."

In the latter part of this reign, some attempts were made to convert the musketeers' rest into a defence against cavalry. Martels de fer and small poleaxes, had had a tuck inclosed in them, which, by touching a spring, opened a small valve and sprung out. Of these, several are in my son's armoury. The rest, instead of having a wooden shaft, was now made of a thin tube of iron like these pole-axes, which was covered with leather, and armed with the tuck in the same manner. Two of these are in the same collection. Rests, thus armed, were said to contain Swedish, or swine's feathers.\*

John Bingham, in his notes upon the Tactics of Ælian, speaks most highly of the bow, and its superiority to the musket, and, acquainted as he was with both, it may be as well to insert his own words: "I may not pretermitte the praise of our nation in this skill. Our own stories testify, that the great battailes we gayned against the French, were gayned by the joint-shooting of our archers principally. And that the English have heretofore excelled in archery and shooting, is cleere by the testimony even of strangers. Cicutat commanding the use of bows, as necessary for the service of the field, (and that long after guns were invented) prefereth the English before all other, and setteth them downe, as a patterne for others to follow. And Patritius disputing of the violence of arrows, doubteth not to affirme, "that an English arrowe with a little waxe put upon the point of the head, wil passe through any ordinary corslette or curace." He afterwards adds: "All the wonders done by the Parthian bowes, were notwithstanding not to be compared to our auncient English bowes, either for strength, or for shooting." Bingham then goes on to draw a comparison between the power of bows and of guns, as used at the

<sup>\*</sup> Ibid. Sweynn being the German for a wild boar, and feder a pen or quill; by Sweyn's feather we should, perhaps, understand a boar's bristle.

<sup>+</sup> Published in 1616, p. 25.

<sup>‡</sup> Aurel. Cicuta de Discip. Mil. Lib. 11, fol. 206.

<sup>§</sup> Paral. Pars. 11da Lib. 111, fol. 37.

<sup>||</sup> The piles of the arrows of this time, were not only put on the shafts ferule-like, as in the modern ones, but had a spike which went from the point up the centre of the wood. The piles were also about twice the size of the modern ones. Some of these and other more antient arrow-heads are in the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq. Of the old English barbed piles, or arrow-heads, one is in the possession of my friend, Sir Walter Scott, Bart., and another in that of my friend, John Murray, Esq. commissary-general, of Ardleybury, Herts., found on his estate.

time in which he wrote, wherein he undertakes to prove, that archery ought not to be neglected; and that, in many points, it exceeded even the musket. "Surely, (says he), it may not be denied that the force of fire weapons of our time, doth farre exceed the height of all old inventions for annoying the enemy. And when I have given them the first place, I will not doubt to give the second to bowes and arrowes, being so far from casting them of, that I would rather follow the wisdom of the Græcians; who albeit they esteemed arrowes the best flieng weapons, yet thought it not amisse to hold in use slings and dartes; for every weapon has its property, and that which is fitt for one service, is not fitt for another." And after, he continues thus: "Nowe then for us to leave the bowe being a weapon of so great efficacy, so ready, so familiar, and as it were so domesticall to our nation, to which wee were wont to bee accustomed from our cradle, because other nations take themselves to the musket, hath not so much as any share of reason. Other nations may well forbeare that they never had: neither Italian nor Spaniard, nor Frenche nor Dutche, have these five hundred years been accounted archers; it was a skill almost appropriated to our nation: by it we gained the battailes of Cressy, of Poictiers, of Agincourt in France, of Navarre in Spaine; by it we made ourselves famous over Christendome. And to give over upon a conceit only (for no experience can say that our bowe was ever beaten out of the field by the musket,) will prove an imitation of Æsop's dogge, whoe carrieng a piece of fleshe in his mouth over a river, and seing the shadowe in the water, snatched at the shadowe, and left the fleshe. I speake not this to abase the service of muskets, which all men must acknowledge to be great; I only shewe, there may be good use of bowes, if our archers were such as they were wont: which is not to be dispaired, and will easily come with exercise."

Sir John Hayward, in his Life of the Norman Kings,\* after speaking of the effects of archery at the battle of Hastings, compares the advantages of fire-arms with those of the bow, and assigns four reasons for deciding in favour of the latter. "First," says he, "for that in a reasonable distance it is of greater both certainty and force. Secondly, for that it dischargeth faster. Thirdly, for that more men may discharge therewith at once; for only the first ranke dischargeth the piece, neither hurt they any, but those that are in front; but with the bow, ten or twelve rankes may discharge together, and will annoy so

many rankes of the enemies. Lastly, for that the arrow doeth strike more parts of the body; for in that it hurteth by discent; (and not only point blanke like the bullet, there is no part of the body but it may strike; from the crown of the head, even to the nailing of the foot to the ground. Hereupon it followeth, that the arrows falling so thick as hail upon the bodies of men, as less fearful of their flesh, so, more slenderly armed than in former times, must necessarily worke most disastrous effects." He adds: "A horse stroke with a bullet, if the wound be not mortal, may performe good service; but if an arrow be fastened in the flesh, the continual stirring thereof, occasioned by the motion of himselfe, will enforce him to cast off all command, and either beare down or disorder those that are neere."

He then proceeds to add: "That some thought the cracke of the piece, strikes terrour into the enemy. But use, (says he,) will extinguish these terrours. And if it be true, which all men of action doe hold, that the eye in all battailes is first overcome, then against men equally accustomed to both, the sight of a shower of arrows is more available to victory then the cracke of the piece."

Plate LXXV represents a suit of armour in my son's collection, which belonged to one of the Manfredi family.\* It terminates at the knees, jambs and sollerets having, at this time, become wholly superseded by boots, and in this manner worn by the heavy cavalry, who were called pistoliers, or cavaliers. The ground is a purplish-black, engraved with foliage, which forms a trellised pattern, and is gilt, with various devices in the intermediate spaces. Among these are the three palm branches within a coronet, and the conjoined hands, which denoted the family to which it belonged. It is remarkable for the splints within the elbows, and proves that that fashion continued from the time of Henry VIII to James I, inclusive. It has also the fine expanding garde de reine of this period, which covered the hinder parts.

At Strawberry Hill is a suit of the same time, and precisely resembling it in outline, which is falsely attributed to Francis I, King of France. This suit is embossed and gilt, and probably the latest specimen of armour with raised figures on it.

In Bingham's Tactics, is a plate exhibiting the armour and arms of a pistolier,

<sup>\*</sup> In the picture gallery at Dulwich College, is a beautiful portrait, in a suit of armour, of this pattern, but a little anterior in point of date, the period being the conclusion of the last reign. It is neither the Archduke Albert, nor painted by Vandyke, as stated in the catalogue, but some Italian prince. The conjoined hands, the cognizance of the Manfredi family, does not, as in my son's suit, make one of the ornaments, but the three palm branches within a ducal coronet, also in that, are here the principal decoration.

<sup>†</sup> I have, however, seen a gorget of this kind as late as the time of William III.



A SUIT OF

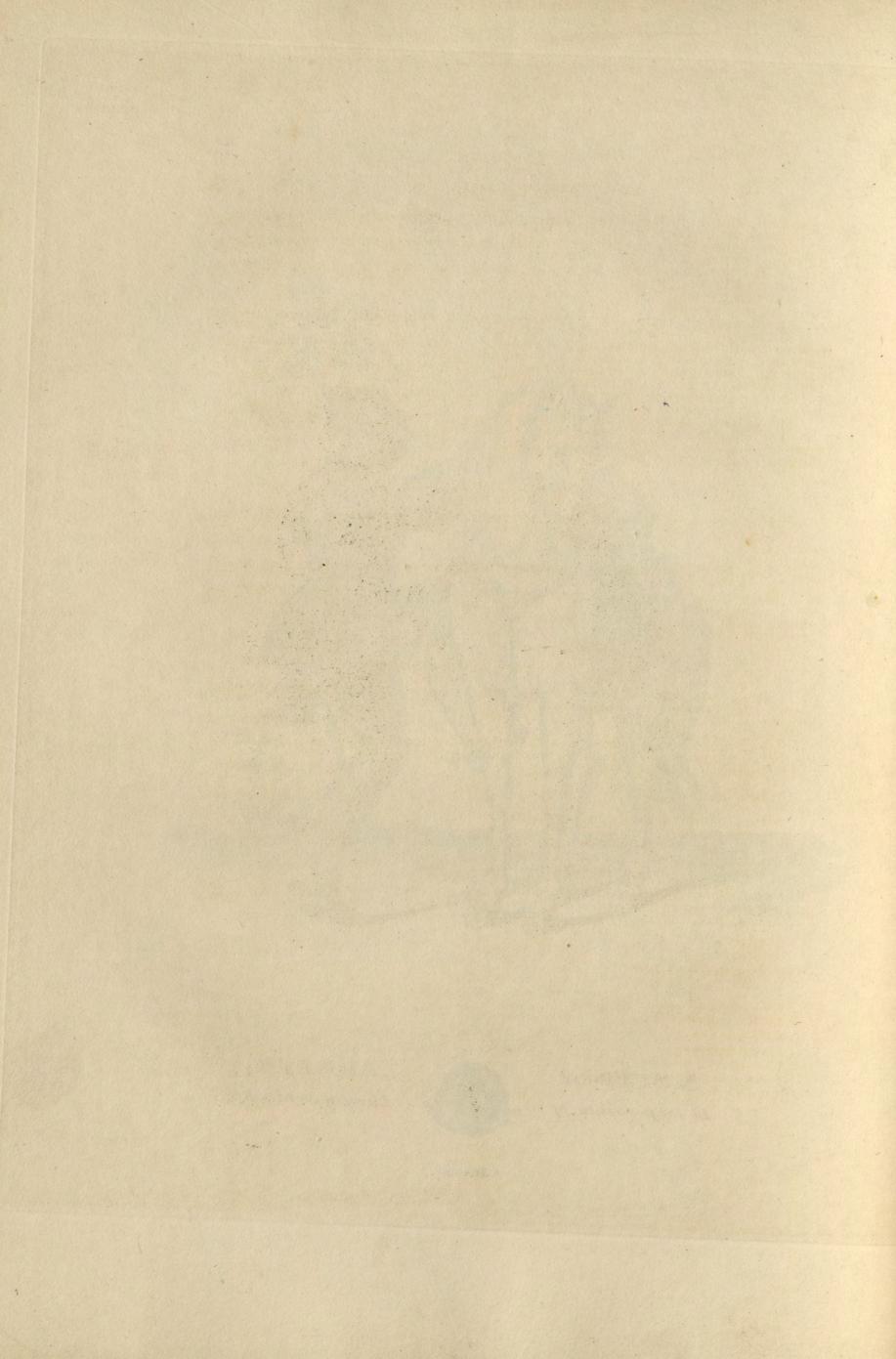
In the possession of



ARMOUR,

Llewelyn Meyrick Esq.

A.D.1620.



a pikeman, and a musketeer, of this period, by which a correct knowledge may be gained of their form. In my son's collection is a musket, caliver, two carabines, a short and two long pistols, all of this period, but with wheel-locks, being for the most part German.

At the foot of Plate LXXV, is represented a copper-gilt Venetian morian embossed with military figures, in the costume of the close of Elizabeth's and the beginning of this reign. It is in the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq. and has its comb by no means so large and elevated as that given under Plate LXXI.

The following is an interesting extract from an inventory, taken in 1603, of the furniture and effects at Hengrave, in Suffolk.

## " In the Armorye.

- "Itm, one very fayer tilt armor furnished with head peece, shield,\* and gauntlets."
- "Itm, two blacke armors of muskett proofe, one of them endged with velvett wth a small gould lace upon it; both furnished wth a head peece, and furniture beneath the knees and a payer of gauntlets.
  - " Itm, one mace for a launce.+
  - "Itm, ix launces; of the old fashion whout head pieces.
- "Itm, two launce armors furnished with gauntlets wh Sir Charles Cavendish did give.
  - "Itm, xxx corslets furnished with furniture for head and bodye.
  - " Itm, lxij almond§ rivetts.
  - " Itm, one odd back for an almond rivett.
  - "Itm, one privye coat || wthout sleeves.
  - " Itm, xj jackes of plate and such like.
  - "Itm, xxij gorgitts of mayle and a shirt of mayle.
  - " Itm, viij red cappes and xxx skulles.
  - " Itm, steele plates for two saddles.
  - "Itm, two great peeces called slinges.
  - "Itm, xxj cullivers.\*\*

<sup>\*</sup> Probably a shoulder-shield.

<sup>†</sup> That is for a lancer.

<sup>‡</sup> Lancer's armour. § Almayne, or German.

Worn concealed, or under the armour.

<sup>¶</sup> Probably from being carried in a sling.

<sup>\*\*</sup> Calivers.

- "Itm, xxiiij flasks and as many tootcheboxes.
- " Itm, xx muriens and vj Spanish burgenetts.
- " Itm, iiij cases of dagges furnished.
- "Itm, two snaphaunces and two little pocket dagges.
- " Itm, iij pethernells.\*
- " Itm, vj bowes.
- " Itm, xj sheefe of arrows.
- " Itm, xj launce staves.
- " Itm, vj light horsemen staves.
- "Itm, one very fayer pfyzen+
- "Itm, v ordinary pfyzens.
- "Itm, one ancient; and an ancient staffe with a drume.
- " Itm, iiij brown bills.
- " Itm, ix haulberds.
- " Itm, xxiij pikes for corslets.
- "Itm, one fayer arminge sworde and a daggard.
- " Itm, xix ordinary arming swordes.
- " Itm, xiiij daggards to them.
- "Itm, xiiij gyrdells and hangers to them.
- "Itm, iij ashinge staves not wrought up to any use.
- "Itm, one barrell to make cleane ye shirt of maile and gorgetts§
- "Itm, ij beams to scour armor on.
- \* Poitrinals, or petronels.
- † Partizan.
- ‡ Ensign, or flag.
- § From this interesting item, we learn the antient mode of cleaning the chain-mail, which was by putting it, as it were, into a barrel-churn with sand, and so agitate it till the rust was taken off. The Georgians and Circassians, who still wear this kind of armour, in order to brighten it, put it in a sack with a mixture of bran and sand, and shake the whole till the object be effected.

|| An old German print, by Hans Burgmair, from "the Wise king," representing the Emperor Maximilian in an armourer's shop, exhibits the various kinds of anvils and tools used for making armour, and another of the time of James I, in the possession of my good friend, F. Douce, Esq., shewes the lathes and other apparatus adopted for the purpose of polishing it.

For the advantage of all who may possess armour, I annex the following directions for cleaning and polishing it. A lathe being procured with several wheels, having brushes inserted into them; or bobs, as they are called when without, but edged with leather, to be used according to the size wanted. Attend to the following:

Where the rust has very much eaten into the steel, but in clear parts where there is no engraving or etching.

Make use of a bob, dressed with emery, fine corn, and follow with a bob dressed with flour emery—then polish with the brush and flour emery.

Where the rust is on parts which are covered with gilding, engraving, or etching:

Make use of a hard brush and fine corn emery, and finish with a brush and flour emery; but on no account suffer the bob to be used.

In those corners, or places, where the rust cannot be got at with the bob or brush, some small sticks of walnut, or mahogany, covered with buff leather, and dressed with the same materials as the bobs, will be found useful.

83

- " Itm, one chest for the armors of proofe.
- "Itm, one littel chest to keep gyrdells in.

The bobs should be covered with buff leather, such as is used for soldiers' belts, stretched tight on with thick glue, and pinned with small wooden pegs; after the glue becomes hard and set, the pegs must be cut off below the leather: they are then fit for dressing, which is done by covering the leather with thick glue, and, while warm, immediately sprinkling it with the sort of emery required; and, when the glue is hard, it will be fit for use. In each process above mentioned, the glue should stand at least twelve hours.

For the brushes. Emery and sweet-oil mixed together in a cup; but be careful not to use the brush for flour emery, at any time with fine corn emery.

As to the mode for browning armour, the following order for soldier's muskets may be of service.

#### " GENERAL ORDER.

" Horse Guards, 22d July, 1815.

- "His Royal Highness the Prince Regent, in the name and on the behalf of His Majesty, has been pleased to approve of the arms of the infantry of the army being browned, which the Commander in Chief directs shall be carried into effect as early as circumstances will permit.
- "A copy of the instructions which have been prepared by the Board of Ordnance for browning gun-barrels, and for repairing and retaining the brown upon the barrels is annexed.
- "The expence attending the measure will be defrayed by the Board of Ordnance, and, when completed, the commanding officers of corps are to transmit to their regimental agents, a statement, verified by their signatures, shewing the number of muskets, fusils, or rifles, which have been browned under this order, and the quantity and cost of the materials provided for that purpose, in order that application may be made to the Board of Ordnance for payment of the amount.

" By command of His Royal Highness the Commander in Chief.

(Signed)

" HARRY CALVERT, Adjutant-General."

#### INSTRUCTIONS FOR BROWNING GUN-BARRELS. .

#### The following ingredients:

Nitric acid	1 2	ounce.
Sweet spirit of nitre	10	do.
Spirits of wine	1	do.
Blue vitriol	2	do.
Tincture of steel	1	do.

are to be mixed together, the vitriol having been previously dissolved in a sufficient quantity of water to make, with the other ingredients, one quart of mixture.

Previous to commencing the operation of browning the barrel, it is necessary that it be well cleaned from all greasiness and other impurities, and that a plug of wood be put into its muzzle, and the vent well stopped; the mixture is then to be applied with a clean sponge, or rag, taking care that every part of the barrel be covered with the mixture, which must then be exposed to the air for twenty-four hours, after which exposure, the barrel must be rubbed with a hard brush and rag, to remove the oxid from the surface. This operation must be performed a second and a third time (if necessary), by which the barrel will be made of a perfectly brown colour, it must then be carefully brushed and wiped, and immersed in boiling water, in which a small quantity of alkaline matter has been put, in order that the action of the acid upon the barrel may be destroyed, and the impregnation of the water by the acid neutralized.

The barrel, when taken from the water, must, after being perfectly dry, be rubbed smooth with a burnisher of hard wood, and then heated to about the temperature of boiling water, it will then be ready to receive a varnish made of the following materials:

Spirits of wine	1 quart.
Dragon's blood-powder	
Shel lac, bruised	1 ounce;

and, after the varnish is perfectly dry upon the barrel, it must be rubbed with the burnisher to give it a smooth and glossy appearance.

## TO REPAIR AND RETAIN THE BROWN UPON BARRELS.

When the barrel is much rubbed from use, a little vitriolic acid may be applied to it, and then it must receive the treatment that barrels undergo in browning, care being taken to deaden the action of the acid by means of boiling water.

When brown barrels are in constant use, the brown might be continually kept perfect by means of the application of vinegar, which should remain upon the surface for a day, and then be washed well with boiling water.

N

- "Itm; one skeepe to put in sand.\*
- "Itm, iiij jumpest of watchett clothe layed with white lase.
- " Itm, iiij cases of pistolls.
- " Itm, iiij long pistolls.
- "Itm, vj flaskes with stringes.

## " In ye Sadler's Shopp.

- " Itm, vj restes for launce staves.
- "Itm, one staffe to run at the rynge win and one to set the ring on.

In the library of the Society of Antiquaries is an original manuscript written at the beginning of the reign of James I, containing "the names of His Majesties shippes, with the number of men and furniture requisite for the settinge forth of them;" and, likewise, "the generall musters taken throughout the whole realme of England and Wales." In the former, we find the crews consist of "mariners, gunners, and soldiers," and the furniture, of "calivers, bowes, arrowsheffes, pyks, bills, corsletts and murians;" and, in the latter, that the various troops of each county are ranged under the following heads: "Able men, armed men, pyoners, dimillances, and high horses." The high horses were those antiently called men at arms, and, since the reign of Queen Mary, launces.

In a Treatise, entitled, the Military Art of Training, published in 1622, the dagger is recommended as a military weapon, in the following words: "And because heere comes a controversie opportunely to be decided, I will, as near as I can, plainly and honestly answer the same, and that is about the wearing of daggers; to which I answer directly, that it is the necessariest weapon belongs to a souldier, and that for many reasons and uses. First, for ornament's sake, being a handsome, short light dagger, it addeth to his comely carriage, and supplieth the nakedness of his girdle. Secondly, for necessities sake, in defence and offence, for such may be the thronging of the battaile or company, that when he cannot use his sword, he may doe good with his dagger. Thirdly, for advantage, if it should come to a private combat, or singling out of an adversary,

If this operation be repeated monthly, a barrel, which has been properly browned in the first instance, will continue in a proper state for many years.

Office of Ordnance, 16th June 1815.

My son has varnish put on his armour in order to preserve it. This is prepared for him by Messrs, Ives, Sargon, and Mann, varnish-makers to His Majesty, Little Queen-street, and is laid on cold after the armour has been well washed with spirits of turpentine.

\* A scoop to put the sand into the barrel, before mentioned.

† Waistcoats. The watchet cloth was generally blue.

a sword may breake, and many men have made their peace with a furious close, nay kept him aloofe by threatening to throwe it at him. Fourthly, for execution, if there should be necessity in the dispatch of the vanquished. Fifthly, for tying a horse to the ground in an open field, where there is neither bush nor hedge, and nature compels a man to discharge the burthen of his belly: any, you shall reade that the Jews had a paddle staff, and why may not a souldier's dagger serve to dig a hole, and cover it with a turffe. Sixthly, and last of all, for the punishment of offenders: for a captain, or an inferior officer, that only drawes a dagger, though he strike not at all, may appease a sedition, and sometimes rather breake a head than wound a man. As for the objections of the dangers of stabbing one another, or that a man cannot tell what he will do in his fury, it is not to be talked of in martiall discipline, which is sometimes severe, and the disobedient souldier must be taught his duty with stripes."

In Mr. Gwennap's collection was a dagger, on the hilt of which is the motto of a Thuringian family, which reminds the owner not to fight, but in his own cause: Allein mein oder las gar sein: "Mine alone or not at all;" and, on the blade, which is richly engraved and gilt: In amore no se trabit: "It does not quit its sheath in love."

But, although some daggers were inscribed with incitements to revenge, this was not invariably the case; for another, in the same collection, has on the blade the date 1605, and the following curious lines:

Ask me not for schame, Drink lis and by ane.

This was to discountenance the effect of sudden fury in drunkenness.

Sir Thomas Kellie, in his Art Militaire, published in 1621, says: "The barril of a musket should be four feet in length, the bore capable of receiving bullets, twelve whereof weigh a pound." Previous to this, some had carried balls of ten to a pound.

At Brancepeth Castle is a match-lock caliver, with the date 1611 on the barrel, and a match-lock musket, on which is the name and arms of Thomas Wingfield, and the date 1615.

In my son's armoury is a set of bandileers of tin, with caps to them, and a cover to protect them from the rain. Sometimes six were hung in front and six at the back of a man; being worn girdlewise like those in my son's possession. At Hampton Court-palace, and at Windsor Castle, are immense quantities of these.

They seem to have been borrowed by the English from the Dutch, or Walloons, for Davis, in his Art of War,\* says: "And therefore these souldiers which in our time have been for the most part levied in the Lowe Countries, especially those of Artoyes and Henault, called by the generall name of Wallownes, have used to hang about their neckes, upon a baudrick or border, or at their girdles,† certain pipes which they call charges, of copper and tin made with covers, which they thinke in skirmish to bee the most readie way. But the Spaniard despising that order, doth altogether use his flaske."

To prevent the matches from being seen in the night, small tubes of tin, or copper, pierced full of holes, were invented by a Prince of Orange, probably Prince Maurice. They are thus described by Walhuysen, ‡ captain of the town of Dantzig. "It is necessary that every musqueteer knows how to carry his match dry in moist and rainy weather, that is, in his pocket; or in his hat, by putting the lighted match between his head and hat; or by some other means to guard it from the weather. The musqueteer should also have a little tin tube of about a foot long, big enough to admit a match, and pierced full of little holes, that he may not be discovered by his match when he stands centinel, or goes on any expedition." §

In an estimate for a royal army in 1620, a musket, with bandeliers and rest, is valued at £1.0s.8d.

Mention is thus made of an ornament for the pike, called an armin, in a military work, stiled the Art of Training, "You had then armins for your pikes, which have a graceful shew, for many of them were of velvet, embroidered with gold, and served for fastnest when the hand sweat; now I see none, and some inconveniences are found by them."

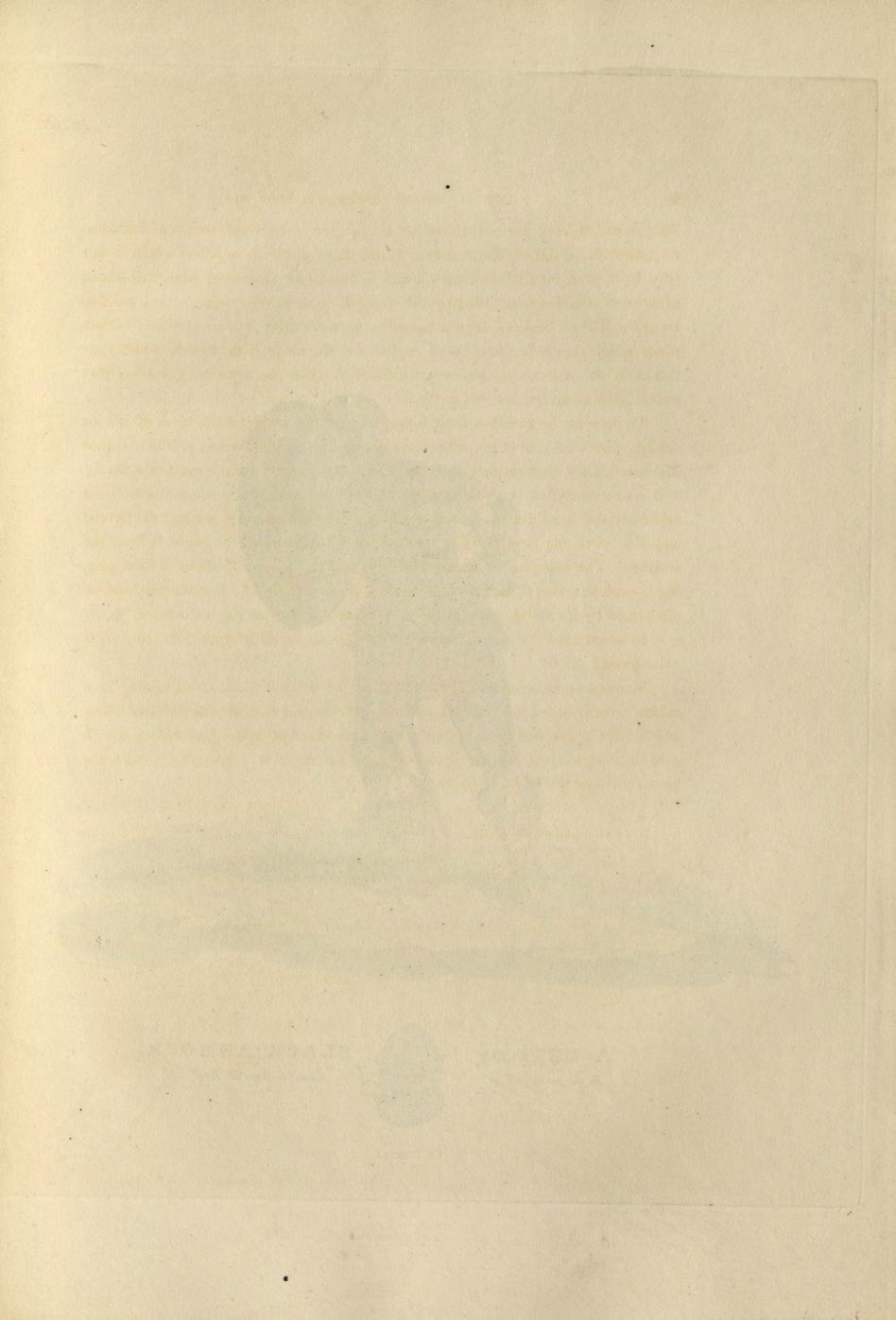
<sup>\*</sup> Page 8.

<sup>†</sup> My son's specimen is one of this kind.

<sup>‡</sup> L'Art Militaire pour l'Infanterie, printed in 1615, p. 136.

<sup>§</sup> This was the origin of the match-boxes, till lately worn by our grenadiers.

<sup>||</sup> Published in 1622, with a portrait of Charles I on horseback, whilst a boy, and also engravings of the exercise of musket and pike.





A SUIT OF

In the possession of



(A.D.1625.)

BLACK ARMOUR,

Llewelyn Meyrick Esq.

# Charles the First.

1625.



HE rondell, or rondache, which had been revived by Prince Maurice, became disused in the early part of this reign, but there is one, in my son's collection, extremely heavy, in the upper part of which is a horizontal aperture for vision, and, on the right side; in the edge, an oblique one through which the sword was thrust. It is black, and so thick as to have resisted the penetration of several bullets, one only having had effect. A suit of armour, being a species of corselet, or corslet, also black,

and of the same period, is with it, but resembling the halecrets of Henry the Eighth's time in having epaulettes for the shoulder. The figure thus equipped, is represented in Plate LXXVI.

As, however, the rondell could only be of service against the sword, the pike, and the halbard, and not against fire-arms, it was soon after this abandoned, as being rather inconvenient than useful.

Sir James Turner says: "The bore of the pistol long ago\* was made for twenty bullets in one pound of lead, but it being found that the ball entered not easily, generally they cast one pound of lead into four and twenty pistol balls; the half of the weight of the powder serves if it be good, if not, they take two-thirds, as for one pound and a half of lead, one pound of powder; but, if it be fine half will

<sup>\*</sup> His Pallas Armata was published in 1670; he speaks, however, of an alteration that took place at this period.

serve, as for two pounds of lead one pound of powder; the barrel of the pistol may be two foot long for the longest, sixteen inches for the shortest. The French use locks with half bends, and so do, for the most part, the English and the Scots; the Germans rore or wheel-works; the Hollanders make use of both."

Grose has exhibited, in his Military Antiquities, the arms and armour of the cavalry, and those of the infantry, of this period; but he has, by no means, described the snaphaunce and tricker-locks introduced during this reign. He tells us, indeed, that they first derived their name from the species of troops by whom they were used, but I strongly suspect it was the converse of this. That the snaphaunce was not the same as the firelock, is evident, from a document that will be quoted hereafter, which prefers the firelocks, but "if they cannot be procured, snaphaunces will do." I imagine, that I have discovered both snaphaunces and tricker-locks, in my son's collection. The first is where a moveable hammer is placed beyond the pan, in imitation of the cock to a wheel-lock, and brought down upon it in the same manner. The cock being placed according to the present mode, strikes against it on pulling the trigger; and, it is curious to remark, that this hammer is furrowed in imitation of the wheel in a wheel-lock. A rifle-gun of this kind, and period, is in my son's armoury, and, in length, four feet nine inches.

To make the firelock, which was a somewhat later invention,\* this hammer was affixed to the pan, supplying the place of its cover, and, as is well known, opening on the percussion. These hammers, however, retained their furrows till the commencement of the eighteenth century. The most ancient firelock, in my son's armoury, is of the time of James II, and has the cock and hammer reversed, in the manner of a wheel-lock. He has an English match-lock gun, dated 1640.

The tricker-lock, I conceive, to be that furnished with a hair-trigger, as it is now called, in addition to its other trigger, and which was, probably, the tricker.† This contrivance is applied to a wheel-lock rifle-gun in my son's armoury, the stock of which is inlaid with mother-o'-pearl and ivory, in which are representations of Turks, and also of Europeans; the latter in the act of killing game.

Four specimens of the long pistol, antiently called the dag, are in my son's armoury, and of this period. They are all different. One has the barrel inlaid with gold, the stock with ivory and mother-o'-pearl, and its length two feet five

<sup>\*</sup> The firelock-pistol mentioned in the schedule which shortly follows, is evidently a wheel-lock one, and therefore the name was retained, which we find in the inventory of Edward the Sixth's time.

<sup>†</sup> It must, however, be observed from an item in the schedule which soon follows, that tricker and trigger are synonimous, for there is a charge stated " for a match tricker-lock compleat."

inches. Another has the barrel plain, but the stock inlaid with silver and brass; and its length two feet nine inches and a half.\* The butts of both these are spheroidical, with the elongation in a line with the pistols. One, which has its stock as well as barrel of steel, and both embossed and inlaid with copper gilt, representing trophies with laurel and palm-branches, is in length two feet seven inches and a half. A double-barreled one, the barrels being placed one above and one under; has the stock inlaid with ivory;† the length is two feet ten inches. The butts of these two are like the former, except by having been made octangular. All these are wheel-lock pistols.

Some idea of the helmets of this period, may be formed by examining the engraved portraits; those, for example, of Henry, Prince of Nassau, in 1635; the Earl of Arundel, in 1636; King Charles I, in 1638; another of him in 1639, and another of the Earl of Arundel in the same year. One, in my son's collection, of this time, is given at the foot of Plate LXXVI.

King Charles I, soon after his accession to the crown, taused a survey to be made of all the armour, arms, and ammunition in the Tower of London, the several forts and castles throughout the kingdom, and also on board the different ships of war; and, in the seventh year of his reign, appointed commissioners, consisting of a number of experienced armourers, gun, pike, and bandalier makers, to travel throughout England and Wales, to survey, prove, repair, and put the armour and weapons of the militia into a state fit for service. He also took measures for bringing about an uniformity in the fashion of their armour and arms, a circumstance never before attended to, the want of which must have been productive of many inconveniences. He, at the same time, settled the prices for making and repairing the different pieces of a suit of armour, for both horse and foot; the rates to be charged for the several parts of a musket, pistol, or carbine, with those for a pike, and bandaliers. As this commission and schedule of prices contain many curious particulars respecting the arms and armour of the period, and from which we are enabled to account for distinctive marks of earlier periods occurring with those of the time in existing specimens, they are here given at length.

- "A special commission for the surveying of the armours, arms, &c., of the trained bands, and for settling the rates and prices of the same.
  - " Charles, by the grace of God, &c. to our trusty and wel-beloved John

<sup>\*</sup> The lock of this is stamped with the letters I. P. and a star beneath them.

<sup>†</sup> The lock is stamped with the figure of the sun and the initials H. R.

ţ A. D. 1629. § A. D. 1631.

Franklin, William Crouch, John Ashton, Thomas Stephens, Rowland Foster, Nicholas Marshall, William Coxe, and Edward Aynesley, workemen, armourers, and freemen of the company of armourers of our cittye of London; and Henry Rowland, Richard Burrowe, Thomas Addis, John Norcott, William Dawstin, John Watson, and William Graves, of our said cittie of London, gun-makers; and John Edwards, Robert Tucker, and Bartholomew Ray, pike-makers of our cittie of London, and John Gate and William Beauchamp, bandalier-makers of our cittie of London aforesaid; and to every of them, greeting.

"Wee foreseeinge in our princely judgment, how necessary it is for the preservation of our selfe, and the subjects of our kingdome in generall, that the armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers thereof, be from tyme to tyme repaired, amended, dressed and stamped; and that they according to the just and full number charged by the muster rolls in every severall county, be fully furnished and compleatly mayntayned; which now as we are credibly informed, are in many parts of this kingdom much decayed and neglected, and that expert and skillful workmen may be trayned up, imployed, and mayntayned, as well in tyme of peace as of warre, to the end wee may not be inforced in tyme of warre to seeke for armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, in forraigne parts, as it hath been heretofore accustomed, and we be eyther unprovided of them, or supplyed at deare and uncertain rates, at the pleasure of forraigne princes and states, when any unexpected occasion of imployment, or sudden service, for the safety and honour of our person and state shall require; and wee well weighing in our princely consideration, the dangerous consequence thereof, did, for our better information, refer the further consideration thereof to our counsell of warre, and other speciall committees, who upon mature deliberation have certified us, that the company of workmen, armourers, gun-makers, pike-makers, and bandaliermakers of our cittie of London (being the skilfullest and prime workmen of this land), are most fit to be employed and encouraged in this service, that soe they having convenient employment in tyme of peace, we may be assured of their true and effectuall service in the tymes of warre, and yett they to performe the said service at such rates and prices as shall not be left at their own discretion, but shall be particularly agreed upon, and ordered herein; and they have also certifyed unto us, that they find it very behoofefull for our service, and for the strength and safety of this kingdome, and for the increasing of the number of skilfull and expert workmen of the severall trades and professions of armourers, gun-makers, pike-makers, and bandalier-makers; that a commission should be

awarded to the tenor and effect of these presents, and a proclamation thereupon made and published, to signifie what wee herein command or forbid, for the generall good of this kingdome: and whereas the said armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, are accordingly willing to accept of and undertake this service, and according to the said certificate, have given caution in our office of ordinance to be ready, when we shall have occasion to sett them on worke, at seven dayes warning, and that the said armourers will deliver into our stores, for ready money, fifteen hundred armours every month, and the gun makers as many muskets and bastard muskets,\* and small shot, upon the same warninge; as also the pike makers, and bandalier makers, a proportionable number upon the like warning, for our service; and that the said armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, will bring up apprentices from tyme to tyme, to be expert and skilfull in these severall occupations, which are soe necessary for the defence of this kingdome, soe as they may be imployed in making, mending, dressing, stamping, and repayring of armours, guns, pikes, and bandaliers in the cittie and country, and have agreed, and entred into bond as aforesaid, that they will not exceed the rates and prices in a schedule hereunto annexed, expressing the several rates and prices which shall be allowed them respectively for the said worke, which are very reasonable, and not only without grievance, but very much for the ease and benefit of our subjects, who are or shall be thereby concerned in respect of their former trouble and charges in that kynde; and likewise will perform such other directions as wee shall from tyme to tyme prescribe unto them, for the better advancing of so necessary and publique a service as need shall require. Know yee therefore that wee, by and with the advice of the lords and others our counsell of warre, and other committees to whom wee referred the considerations of this good worke for the better effectinge and advancing of the same: and reposing assured trust and confidence in the fidelity, experience, and diligence of you the said John Franklyn, William Crouch, John Ashton, Thomas Steevens, Rowland Foster, Nicholas Marshall, William Coxe, Edward Anesley, Henry Rowland, Richard Berrowe, Thomas Addis, John Norcott, William Dawstin, William Watson, John Watson, and William Graves, armourers and gun makers; and John Edwards, Robert Thacker, and Bartholomew Raye, pike makers; and John Gate and William Beauchamp, bandalier makers of our citty of London, have authorised, assigned,

and appointed you to be our commissioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers: And we doe by these presents give unto you or any one, two, three, or more of you, and to your deputies, assistants, and assignees. and every of them by you, or the greater part of you, lawfully authorised, free libertie, licence, power, and authority, to travell or goe into any county, place or places, within this our realme of England, and the dominion of Wales, as well within liberties as without; and there with the approbation and assistance of the lord lieutenant and deputy-lieutenants where you shall happen to come, or of any other to be by them deputed and appointed, to make diligent survey of all armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers whatsoever, appoynted to be found and maynteyned at the common charge of every citie, towne, or village, and of the trayned bands in every county, as well horse as foot, throughout our said realme of Englande and dominion of Wales; and upon and after the said survey, to new make, alter, amend, dress, repayre, prove, and stampe (as need shall require), all or any of the said armours, gunnes, pikes and bandaliers, and make them compleate and fit for service, as by the said lord lieutenant and deputy lieutenants, or any other by them deputed and appoynted as aforesaid, shall be appoynted and directed; and that by the direction of the said lord lieutenants or the deputy lieutenants of the severall countyes and divisions respectively, the said armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, once or twice every yeare or oftner (if need shall be), be brought to some convenient place or places, upon the muster days, or at such other convenient tyme or tymes as they shall think fit, to the end that the same may be then and there viewed and surveyed, and as occasion shall require, be altered, amended, or renewed as aforesaid.

"And that you may the better performe this service, and informe us by the lords lieutenants and deputy lieutenants as aforesaid, as occasion shall require, of all such defects and negligences as may happen from tyme to tyme, wee doe hereby give full power and authority unto you, or any one, two, three, or more of you, your deputies, and assigns, by the direction of the lords lieutenants or deputy lieutenants as aforesaid (if they shall soe think it fitt and behoofefull for our service), to require all ministers of musters, who have the records or keeping of the muster rolls of the said armours, forthwith to deliver unto you true copyes of the said muster rolls, to the end that you may be truely informed who ought to be charged with the said armour, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, according to the just numbers and natures of them.

"And further our will and command is, that you our said commissioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, your deputies or assigns (upon your said survey), do observe what numbers of armes, armourers, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, are wholly wanting as aforesaid, that are appointed and ought to be charged upon any person or persons in any place, and that you distinguish the utterly unserviceable, from such as by mending and repairing may be made serviceable; and that you set downe the numbers and natures of their defects, and that you make up the survey in a booke to be certified under the hands of you our said commissioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, or any two, three, or more of you, to be signed and approved of by the lord lieutenant, or deputy lieutenants, or such as they in every place shall depute for that purpose to assist in the said survey; and likewise that, upon such your survey, you approve of all such armours of the said common armes and trayned band, as shall be found fit for service, and to prove and trye all sorts of gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers of the said common armes and trayned band, before they be used or exercised, and to approve of such as are serviceable for warres at the owner's charge, and being proved, shall allow as fit for service; and allowing shall stamp the same with the "A" and "Crown," being the hall mark for the company of workmen armourers of London, which marke or stamp, our pleasure is, shall, with the consent of the lord lieutenant, or his deputy lieutenants, remayne in their custodye, who shall have the charge to be intrusted with the execution of this service, wherein, and in this whole commission, they are further to follow such instructions as are and shall from tyme to tyme be given forth from us, or the lords of our privy councell, or councell of warre, in that behalf. And to the end noe abuse or deceipt may be in the number of armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers borrowed one of another, wee doe hereby give power and authority to you, or the major part of you, to cause to be formed and made, and to you, or to any one, two, three, or more of you, your deputies or assigns, to use two other markes or stamps, to be first allowed by the lords lieutenants, or deputy lieutenants, or such as they shall depute for that purpose, the one to distinguish the county, the other the place or division where the said armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers are charged and be, which markes and stamps, our will and pleasure is, shall remayne in the custodye of you, our said commissioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, or some of you, your deputies or assignes and shall be entred in the said booke of survey, to be signed as above said; for the using and putting to, of which markes and stamps of the place or division aforesaid, wee hold it very fitting, that our lord lieutenants, or their deputye lieutenants, in every place and division, do appoint and set downe some competent allowance unto you the commissioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, bandalier makers, your deputies or assigns, for your labour and attendance upon our service herein.

"And further our will and pleasure is, that upon the intreaty of you our said commissioners, or any one, two, three or more of you, your deputies and assignes, according as the wants, and defects of the said armour, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, shall appear upon the said booke of survey, signed as aforesaid, our said lords lieutenants, and their deputye lieutenants of the several counties respectively in our name, doe commaund, and give order to the severall places, and persons chargeable therewith within a reasonable tyme, and at some convenient place to be prescribed, to supply such defects, either by providing new armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, or by mending and repayring the old, as there shall be cause.

"And because divers cutlers, smyths, tynkers, and other botchers of armes, by their unskilfulness have utterly spoiled many armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, which by a skilful workman might have been altered, dressed, amended, and made serviceable, and yet have required great rates of the country for the doeing thereof; and diverse tradesmen of other trades and mysteries, do buy, barter, and sell armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, which are badd and insufficient, to the great prejudice of our loving subjects: to the end these abuses and disorders may be from henceforth restrayned and wholly prevented, we doe hereby prohibit, and absolutely forbid, that noe person or persons whatsoever, not having served seven years, or been brought up as an apprentice, or apprentices in the trade and mysterie of an armourer, gun maker, pike maker, and bandalier maker, and thereat served their full tyme of seven years as aforesaid, and be bound to do us service as aforesaid, when they shall be thereunto required, and have their name and dwelling thereunto entred by you or some of you, by your recommendation in our office of the ordinance as aforesaid, do make, mend, alter, change, dress or repayr, prove, or stampe any armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers of the common armes of any trayned band whatsoever, or any others, or any of them, or any part of them, or intermeddle therein: nevertheless it is our pleasure and strict commaund, that you give encouragement and respect to all such skilfull and

well-deserving workmen of all sortes of armes, as you shall find in every place within our kingdome and domynion aforesaid, to have them employed and set on worke; and it is our further will and pleasure, that if you, or our said commissioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers shall not be present, either by yourselves, your servants, deputies or assignes, in every county and place, when and where any defects in arms, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, at musters or any other such publique meetings, in each countye, shall be found; or if you, or any for you or under you, being so present in each countye and place, shall be unwilling and negligent to make, amend, dress, repayre, and stamp the said armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, according to the intent of this our commission, then it shall be lawful in any such your negligence or default, at such tyme or tymes, and in such cases only, for the owners of armes to carry their armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers unto such countrye workmen as heretofore have made or mended any of them, to make, amend, alter, and repayre them as heretofore they have done, without any trouble or interruption by you, or any for or under you, any thing in this our commission to the contrary notwithstanding: and we do absolutely forbid that no ironmonger, cutler, chandler, or other person whatsoever, doe vent or sell any armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers, or any part of them, except such as shall be proved and stamped with the said hall marke of the company of workemen, armourers aforesaid, being the proofe marke; and also warranted by our said commissioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, or some of them, or such as they shall appoint thereunto, and be allowed by them to be sufficient, upon payne and penaltie of our high indignation and displeasure, and such other penalties and imprisonments as by the lawes of this realme, or by our prerogative royall, may be inflicted upon them.

"And to the end that by occasion of this restraynt, no excess of prices may either through necessity or ignorance be put upon the country for new armours, gunnes, pikes or bandaliers, or for the dressing, repairing, proving, and stamping the old and serviceable, we doe hereby require and command, that no armourer, gun maker, pike maker, or bandalier maker, who shall be employed in this service doe demand, take, or receive for any new armours, gunnes, pikes or bandaliers, or for dressinge, repayring, or stamping the old or any part of them, above the rates and prices in the schedule hereunto annexed and expressed (which wee hold very much for the ease and benefit of our loving subjects, which now are, or hereafter shall be charged with armes;) willing

alsoe, requireing and commaunding all persons charged with armes, armours, gunnes, pikes or bandaliers of the common armes, or the trained bands as aforesaid, that shall hereafter have of our said commissioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, or bandalier makers, their deputies or assignes, anie new armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers, or any of them dressed, amended, altered, repayred, proved, or stamped as aforesaid, shall and will satisfie, content, and pay our said commissioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, their deputies or assignes, or any of them for the same, according to the rates and prices in the aforesaid schedule annexed, expressed, and set down; and if any difference at any time hereafter shall arise touching the natures or numbers of defects, between the armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, imployed for the said new making, amending, dressing, repayring, and stamping of any of the armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers of the common armes or trayned bands aforesaid, and those in whose custody the said armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, shall be or remaine; then our pleasure is, that the same shall be ordered by the lords lieutenants or deputy lieutenants, or any of them, or such as shall be by them, or any one of them deputed, for the tyme being, who shall make the survey above mentioned.

"And because we are credibly given to understand that the often and continuall altering and changing of the fashion of armes and armours, some countrys and parts of this kingdome, haveing armours of one fashion, and some of another, do put many of our subjects to a great and unnecessary charge, and more than need requireth: for the avoiding whereof, our will and pleasure is, and wee doe hereby appoint and command, that hereafter there shall be but one uniform fashion of armours, of the said common and trayned bands throughout our said kingdome of England, and domynion of Wales, when as any of the said armours shall be supplied and new made, and that that form and fashion of armour shall be agreeable to the last and modern fashion lately set downe and appoynted to be used, by the lords and other of our councell of warre, (the patterns whereof are now and shall remayn in the office of our ordinance from tyme to tyme, which is our pleasure likewise concerning gunnes, pikes and bandaliers, whereof patterns are, and shall remayne from tyme to tyme in our said office) and our will and pleasure is, that for the better compleating of every of the muskettiers of our said trayned bands, and that they may be

better fitted and appoynted for service, (if need requires) every muskettier of the sayd common and trayned bands, shall have and be from tyme to tyme furnished and provided of a headpeece agreeable to the modern fashion of the headpeeces of the footemans armour, whereof the pattern remayneth also in our aforesaid office of ordnance.

"Willing alsoe, requiring and commaunding all and singular our lieutenants, their deputye lieutenants, justices of the peace, majors, sheriffs, muster masters, captaines of bands, and their lieutenants, his constables, headboroughs, and all other our officers, ministers, and loving subjects whomsoever, that they and every of them, be from tyme to tyme aydeing, helping and assisting unto you our commissioners, armourers, gun-makers, pike-makers, and bandalier-makers, and every or any of you, your deputies, assistants, servants and assignes, and to all such others as shall be employed in the execution of this our commission, or the service thereby required and intended, in all things, as shall be meet, and to perform what to them or any of them shall respectively appertayne according to our pleasure herein and hereby signified and declared.

"And our further will and pleasure is, that if you our said commissioners, or any of you, your deputyes, assistants or assignes or any of them, shall find that this our commission in any part be not executed with effect, according to the tenor and intent thereof, by reason of the opposition, contradiction, remisness or negligence of any person or persons whatsoever, that then you or some of you doe certifye the cause, with the names of the persons offending, unto the lords lieutenants and deputy lieutenants of each county, and in cases so requireing, to the lords of our privy councell, or councell of warre, by whom wee may be informed thereof, to the end the offenders may be punished according to their demerits.

"And wee doe likewise hereby command and require oure saide lords lieutenants and their deputy lieutenants, within their countyes and divisions respectively from tyme to tyme to punish any of you, our said commissioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, their deputies, servants and assigns according to the quality of their faults, when they shall neglect the trust and duty committed unto them by this our commission.

"And lastly, our will and pleasure is, that this our commission shall stand in force, and that you our commissioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, and every of you, your deputies, assistants and assignes, and every of them may proceed in the execution thereof, although the same be not from tyme to tyme continued by adjournment.

"In witness, &c.

"Witness ourselfe at Westminster, Vicesimo nono die Junii,
"Per Breve de Privato Sigillo."

A Schedule containing the new Rates and Prices of the several Parts, and whole Armes, both for Horse and Foot, throughout the Kingdom of England and Dominion of Wales, set downe and established by the Right Honourable the Lords Committees of the Counsell of Warre, as every of the said Armes may be afforded at London, by the Armourers, Gun-makers, Pike-makers, and Bandalier-makers, according to the intent of the Commission, hereunto annexed, viz.

The Prices of the several parts and whole Armour of a Cuirassier russetted, viz.

			£. s. d.
A breast of pistol proofe	All Acquires of Areasty	harpathie real par	— xi —
A backe	en in the same statement and	n Jacquigotti a vo	— vii —
A close caske lyned	However to A code that	texat di holadatan	— xvii —
A payre of pouldrons	tion and reduced the ground	lencial relativity to 41 or	_ xii _
A payre of vambraces	arvenible recions	leoloning a serve	— xii —
A payre of guissets	official and the second	The paper of a	— xvii —
A cullet or guarderine	pinian di milionalina	share Programme to the territory	— vii —
A gorget lyned -	ii 16- il-jermija -e silis	contains leafner after	— iii vi
A gauntlett gloved	rent 2 gran (product/lifeth	de la seconda de la	— iii vi
Soe the price of the who	le cuirassiers armour	amounteth unto	iiii x —

The Prices of the parts of the whole Corslet or Footman's Armour russetted, viz:

	£.	s.	d.
The breast	MAKE S	v	vi
The backe		iiii	vi
The tassets	W-27	v	_
The comb'd headpeece lyned	Ables !	iiii	vi
The gorget lyned	Kimo:	ii	vi
The totall of the footman's armour	i	ii	_

	£. s. d.
If the breast, back, and tassets, be lyned with red leather	er work now od
	i iiii —
Witmes ourselfe at Westangster, Vicesimo pono dio Junii.	orden a
The Prices of the Parts and of the whole Armour for a Harquebuzier	r on Horseback*
russetted, viz:	
nativities the new Roles and Prices of the seweral Party, and whole	£. s. d.
A breast of pistoll proofe	— ix —
A backe	— vii —
A gorgett	→ iii →
A head peece with great cheeks, and a barr before the	Libra septemble
face want) - At Au 1- Ma and - of guilo - one and - ma-	_ xi _
The totall of the whole, and all parts of a harquebuzier, or	,bawanan
light horseman's armour is	i xii —
To the later of the second of	1 AII —
A comb'd headpeece for a muskettier russetted and lyned	- v -
Price of the Pike.	
set at a first the begin that the first same and will be begin to be a first the contract of the same and the contract of the	is eclosic Ad
The staffe	— ii vi
The head	i viii
Socket and colouring -	or a military
Summe	— iiii vi
iv - iv iv iv ivid fan ten severe de beskesseg r	o <del>collos de</del>
The Rates for Repayring and Dressing of a Horseman's Armour,	and Footman's
Armour.	oliuna K
to at the whole our especiers armounted bunto unit x -	£. s. d.
For unstriking, new fyling, russetting, new nayling,	
leathering and lyning of a cuirassiers armour	i iii —
For yearly dressing and keeping clean a cuirassiers armour	THE STATE OF THE S
that needs not new russetting or setting -	— iiii —
For new russetting and lyneing the head peece, and setting	a de la
a harquebuzier's armour	— vi viii
For yearly dressing and keeping clean a harquebuzier's	OHRES 3173 7
armour, that needs not new russetting or setting -	— ii vi
of the footman's armour - i ii i-	nublished in 1000
* The initial to this reign represents a harquebusier, and is taken from Captain Cruso's work, VOL. III.	563
	0.00

and the state of t	£.	s.	d.
For cutting and new fashioning a long bellied breast -	) <del>gri</del> b	ii	vi
For new russetting of an ordinary corslet of the modern			
fashion 1-4 bas on-Hamilt and - dates your possess we-a to	n <del>a a</del> br	iiii	_
For a furniture of joynts* viz. two shoulder joynts, and			
fower tasset joints, with hookes and pinnes, being all		stn	
new sett B- zonred - seemed - ovlewt - iw solled - and	1000	ii	viii
For yearly dressing and keeping clean every ordinary			
corslet and pike that needs not new russetting	tî <del>co</del> d	i	viii
For stamping every horseman's armour fit to be allowed -	to <u>wi</u> r	-	Por
For stamping every harquebuzier's armour fit to be allowed	THE	_	
r accerding to the allowance of the consel of		ata	
The Gun Maker's Rates.			
	£.	s.	d.
For a new musket with mould, worm and scowrer -	es <u>tt</u> es	xv	vi
For a new wolnut-tree stock for a musket plated at the			
butt end with iron "- wood bur-ourow, -blic	074	ii	vi
For a musket stock of beech plated at the butt end with			
- iron i	9742	i	viii
For a match tricker-lock compleat - de la land - de la la	man	i	189
For whole worke consisting of the pan, the cover of the		om	
pan, the scutchion and the screw pynn	ada	i	eka
For a stick, worm, sockett, scowrer and bone -	odt d	i	املی
For a handle or guard of a tricker	ارسے ال	1_01	vi
For a new cock fitted	14.3	ويلا	viii
For a new breech and way 12 that min thin 12 m ad at a die	רכישום	i.	<u>al</u> 9
For furnishing and setting of a tricker lock in place of			
a feare lock, with a handle, tricker, and tricker pynnes	10.34	ii	vi
For a new touch-hole screwed	197	-	X
For a new barrell of a muskett, only forged and bored fower		NEW	
foote in length, the bore according to the bullet of ten			
in the pound standing, and twelve rowleing -	F100- 5	viii	ted
For making clean and new russetting+ of a musket -	4 - 30 9	150	iiii
For a musket rest	-	demin	x
The six and all the same of th			
* Hinges.			

<sup>\*</sup> Hinges.

<sup>†</sup> This shews that browning barrels was an old practice.

A to the state of the season o
For making clean a square fyled muskett white - i viii
For the yearly dressing and keeping clean a muskett that
needs not new russetting, with the furniture and rest - x
For powder and shot for proving every muskett
For stamping every muskett proved and allowed
For a new bandalier with twelve charges, a prymer, a
pryming wyre, a bullet bag, and a strap or belt of two
inches in breadth pall-sam vin - 100 about - 100
For a pair of firelock pistols, furnished with a key, mould,
scowrer, worm, flask, and cases of leather, of length
and boar according to the allowance of the counsel of
war
For a pair of horseman's pistols furnished with snaphaunces,*
mouldes, worms, scowrer, a flask, charger and cases - ii
For a harquebuze with a firelock and belte, swivell, flask,
key, moulde, worme, and scowrer - world - wi xvi -
For a carabine with a snaphance, belt, swivel and flask, &c.
as aforesaid i i

By the comb'd head-piece for the infantry, is meant, not the pot-helmet, but the morian with a high ridge on its top. By the head-piece with great cheeks, and a bar before the face, such a one as that represented in Plate LXXIX, and of which there are several varieties in my son's collection.

From the item, "For cutting and new fashioning a long bellied breast;" the collector of armour will learn one cause, why that of Charles the First's time is more easily to be met with than that of previous periods.

The Sieur de Bellon in his Principes de l'Art Militaire,† says: "Our cavalry are now so well armed, that there is no need to speak of other arms, for they have a cuirasse, arquebuse-proof, tassettes, genouillieres, hausecol, brassarts, gantelets with a salade, the vizor‡ of which is made to raise up, and make a fine show. They might be armed à cou, and without casaques, for that has a still finer shew, provided the cuirasse be good and strong, the rest does not signify. It would be well for the first brigade only, who are

<sup>\*</sup> The snaphaunce differed from the modern firelock, in the hammer not forming the covering of the pan.

<sup>†</sup> Published in 1641.

<sup>‡</sup> By salade is here meant, not the antient head-piece of that name, but merely a casque; and, by the vizor, the umbril with a perforated plate to guard the face, attached to it. Several specimens are in my son's armoury.

always in the first rank to have lances with pistols, for that might make a great effort either against men or horses of their enemy, but then lancers must be very adroite, otherwise they would do more harm than good."

In Plate LXXVII are two specimens of the cavalry of this period, one of which is an officer, and who has over his cuisses a buckram-skirt covered with silk embroidery, the other one of the private pistoliers on horseback, where the armour described by the Sieur de Bellon, as generally worn by the cavalry of his time, is exhibited. The officer is taken from a book, entitled The Navigator, by Captain Charles Saltonstall, published in 1642, and the soldier mounted, from Herman Hugo de Milit: Equestr: 1630. By this it appears that the garde de reine still remained, but it was soon after relinquished, and a fine suit of black armour, in my son's possession, is without it,\* though of about this period.

Markham, in his "Souldier's Accidence," published in the year 1645, thus describes the cavalry of his own time: "Thus for your knowledge, not your example, I have shewed you the several compositions and armings of horsemen, according to the ancient times, when the bow and the hargobus had the first place, and the musket and other fiery weapons lay obscured. But to come to these our present times, wherein the uttermost strength of the fire is found out and explained, and to shew you that which you must only imitate and follow, you shall know that all our horse-troopes are reduced to one of these three formes;

"The first and principall troop of horsemen, for the generality, are now called cuirassiers or pistoliers, and these men ought to be of the best degree, because, the meanest in one of these troops, is ever by his place a gentleman, and so esteemed. They have for defensive arms, gorgets, curats,† cutases, which some call culets, others the garde de reine, because it armeth the hinder parts, from the waste to the saddle crootch, then pouldrons, vambraces, a left-hand gauntlet,‡ taces,\$ cuisses, a caske, a sworde, girdle and hangers. For offensive armes they shall have a case of long pistols, firelocks (if it may be), but snaphaunces where they are wanting; the barrels of the pistols would be

<sup>\*</sup> Or rather, it is so short as scarce to merit the name.

<sup>†</sup> The curat is the same as the cuirass, consisting of the breast and back-plates.

<sup>‡</sup> For the bridle-arm, probably of leather; one, in my son's collection, is engraved in Grose's Treatise, Plate xxxix; another, from Germany, presented to him by J. B. Willoughby, Esq. is at the foot of Plate LXXVII.

<sup>§</sup> These were much shorter than those worn by the infantry, and may be seen in the equestrian figure of Charles I, at Charing Cross.

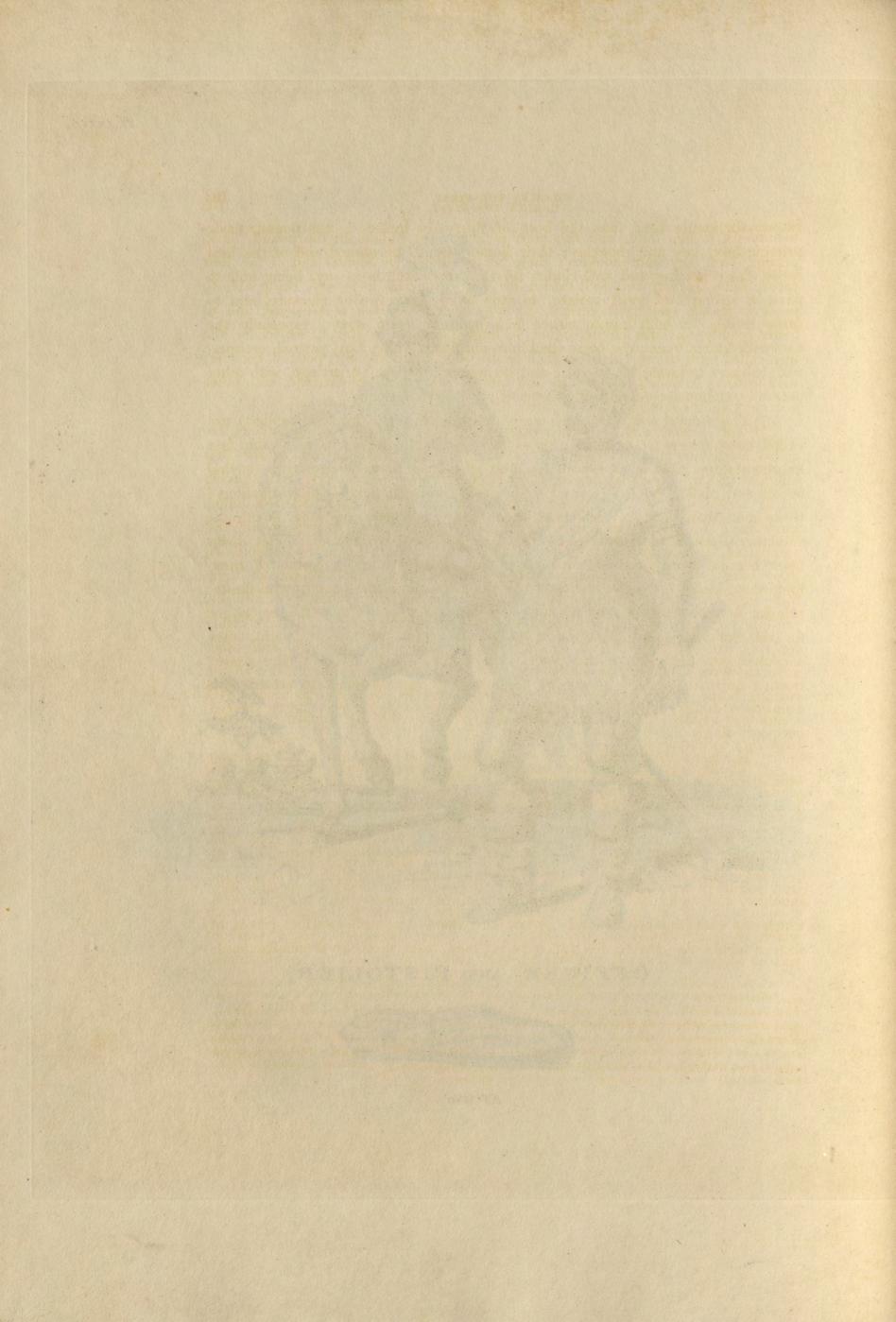
<sup>||</sup> The snaphaunce was the Dutch name for the firelocks, but, as we learn from this document, inferior to the English firelock. Both kinds of locks, however, seem to have been retained in use at this period. Grose says the snaphaunce was so called, from the particular kind of troops that used it.



OFFICER AND PISTOLIER,



A.D.1640.



twenty-six inches long, and the bore of thirty-six bullets in the pound, flask, priming-box, key and mouldes; their horses should be stoned and of the best races, faire trotting and well ridden for the wars, that is to say, being able to passe a strong and swift cariere, to stop close, to retire at pleasure, and to turne readily on both hands, either in large rings or in strayt, especially the turn called terra terra; the horse shall have a saddle, bridle, bitt, pettrell, crooper, with leathers to fasten his pistols, and his necessary sacke of carriage, with other necessary things according to the forme of good horsemanship.

"The second sort (of which many troopes of horse are compounded) are called hargobusiers or carbines; these men ought to be the best of the first inferior degree, that is to say of the best yeomen or best serving men, having active and nimble bodies, joyned with good spirits, and ripe understandings; these men shall have for defensive armes, gorgets, curats, cutases, pouldrons, vambraces, and a light head-piece, wide sighted, and the beavers to let down upon bars of iron;\* for offensive armes, he shall have an hargobus of three foote three inches long, and the bore of twenty bullets in the pound, with flaske, priming box and moulds, or instead of these, cartalages, which will serve either for this, or any other piece on horsebacke; also a good sword, and other accoutrements according to his place. His horse shall be either a faire stoned trotting horse, or a lusty strong guelding well ridden, he shall be armed with a morocco saddle, bridle, bitt, pettrell and crooper, with the rest before shewed necessary to his place.

"The last sort of which our horse troops are composed are called dragoons, which are a kind of footmen on horsebacke, and do now indeed succeed the light horsemen, and are of singular use in all actions of warre; their armes defensive, are an open head-piece with cheeks, and a good buffe coat, with deepe skirts; and for offensive armes, they have a faire dragon,† fitted with an iron worke to be caryed in a belt of leather, which is buckled over the right shoulder, and under the left arme, having a turnill of iron with a ring, through which the piece runnes up and downe; and these dragons are short pieces of sixteen inches the barrell, and full musquet bore, with firelocks or snaphaunces,

<sup>\*</sup> The beaver here seems to signify the shade over the eyes, and such a helmet is given by Grose, in his Antient Armour, Plate IV, Fig. 4.

<sup>†</sup> A species of carbine. Sir James Turner, p. 137, thus describes it: "The carabiners carry their carabines in bandileers of leather about their neck, a far easier way than long ago, when they hung them at their saddles; some instead of carabines carry blunderbusses, which are short hand guns of a great bore, wherein they may put several pistol or carabine balls, or small slugs of iron. I do believe the word is corrupted, for I guess it is a German term, and should be donderbucks, and that is thundering guns, donder signifying thunder, and bucks a gun.

also a belt, with a flaske, pryming box, key, and bullet bag, and a good sword: the horse shall be armed with a saddle, bridle, bitt, petterell, crooper with straps for his sack of necessaries, and the horse himself shall be either a good lusty gelding, or a nimble stoned horse. These dragoons in their marches are allowed to be eleven in a rank or file, because when they serve, it is many times on foote, for the maintenance or surprizing of strait wayes, bridges or foords, so that when ten men alight to serve, the eleventh man holdeth their horses: so that to every troope of a hundred, there is a hundred and ten men allowed."

Grose, in the first volume of his Military Antiquities, Plate III, has given the representation of a dragoon thus equipped; but there is a manuscript\* in the Harleian library in the British Museum, entitled "A brief Treatise of War, &c." by W. T. in the year of our redemption, 1649, which supplies this species of troops with still further necessaries. "As for dragooniers they are to be as lightly armed as may be, and therefore they are onlie to have as followeth, calivers and powder flasks. I would also have each dragoonier constantly to carrye at his girdle two swyn feathers, or foot pallisadoes, of four feet length and a half, headed with sharp iron heads of six inches length, and a sharp iron foot, to stick into the ground for their defence, whereas they may come to be forced to make resistance against horse."

The swyn, swine, or Swedish feathers, here recommended, were contrivances preceding the use of the bayonet. To render the musket-rest a defence against cavalry, whilst the musketeer was loading, it was armed with a projecting spike from one of the prongs of the fork on which the piece was laid; or by enclosing a tuck in the shaft of the rest, which, on opening a small valve, sprung out.† Rests thus armed, were called by this name, and by it are mentioned by several antient military writers, particularly Ward, Turner, and the Duke of Albemarle.‡

"Musket rests, (says Turner,§) were used a long time, and in some places are yet to ease the musketeers in discharging their guns, and when they stood centinel; but in the late expeditions in most places in Christendom, they have been found more troublesome than helpful; a musketeer in any sudden

<sup>\*</sup> Marked No. 6000.

<sup>†</sup> See one of the first kind in Grose's Antient Armour, Plate xL, Fig. 5, and of the second, Plate xxxI, Fig. 4; and three of the latter are in my son's collection.

<sup>‡</sup> In his Observations upon Military and Political Affairs, printed in 1671.

<sup>§</sup> Pallas armata, p. 176.

occasion, not being able to do his duty with musket, sword and rest, especially if you give him a Swedish feather to manage with them. Bokeler the engineer, speaks of an instrument that might serve for both rest and feather, and such, perhaps, would be very useful and convenient; he would have it at the top as all rests are, like a fork on the one side, whereof he would have an iron, of one foot and a half long, sticking out, sharply pointed; these planted in the van or flanks where you expect the charge, as the Swedish feathers used to be, will sufficiently pallisade and defend musketeers from horse, and upon them they may lean their muskets when they give fire."

The Duke of Albemarle recommends\* arming musketeers and dragoons with muskets having swine's feathers, with the heads of rests fastened to them.

In France, during the reign of Louis XIII, the carabines still continued,† and were, by the king's appointment, thus armed. "They had a cuirass and a pot or salade, without other defensive arms, a large wheel-lock arquebuss three feet or more in length, of great calibre, a sword by their sides, and a short pistol. They wore besides casaques (or large cloaks) and spatterdashes instead of boots, the more easily to dismount if necessary." They were suppressed by Louis XIV, in 1665, who formed from them his carabiniers.

Markham, also, in the Souldier's Accidence, gives a description of the manner in which a pikeman should be armed: "Next the captain shall see that every man be well and sufficiently armed, with good and allowable armes; that is to say, all his pikemen shall have good combe-caps; for their heads well lined with quilted caps, curaces for their bodies of nimble and good mould, being high pike proof; large and well compact gordgetts for their neckes, fayre and close joyned taches, to arme to the mid-thigh; as for the pouldron or the vant-brace, they may be spared, because they are but cumbersome. All this armour is to be rather of russett, sanguine or blacke colour, than white or milled, for it will keepe the longer from rust. These shall have strong, straight, yet nimble pikes of ash wood, well headed with steel, and armed with plates downward from the head, at least foure foote, and the full size or length of every pike shall be fifteene foote besides the head. These pikemen shall also

<sup>\*</sup> In his "Observations upon Military and Political Affairs," printed Anno 1671.

<sup>†</sup> Bellon des Principes de l'Art Mil: Part 1, p. 325.

<sup>‡</sup> That is, with a ridge running over them from the front to the rear.

<sup>§</sup> Some such may be seen in the Spanish Armoury in the Tower, falsely attributed to that people.

have good, sharpe, and broade swords (of which the Turkie and Bilboe are best), strong scabbards, chapt with iron, girdle, hangers, or bautricke of strong leather; and lastly, if to the pikeman's head peece be fastened a small ring of iron, and to the right side of his back peece (below his girdle) an iron hooke, to hang his steel cap upon, it will be a great ease to the souldier, and a nimble carriage in the time of long marches."

A pikeman thus equipped is given by Grose, in his Military Antiquities, Vol. I, Plate v.

This same author\* thus speaks of the halbardiers: "Your halbardier should be armed in all points like your pike, onely instead of the pike, he shall carry a faire halberd, that is strong, sharpe, and well armed with plates of iron, from the blade at the least two feet downeward upon the staffe, and fringed, or adorned according to pleasure; and these halberds doe properly belong unto serjeants of companies, who, by reason of their much employment, are exceeded from armes; otherwise in the day of battaile, or in the battaile, they are for guard of the ensigne, or matter of execution, and then to be armed as aforesaid."

Captain Cruso, in his Military Instructions for Cavalry,† says: "There are two sorts of dragoons, the pikeman and the musketeer; the pikeman is to have a thong of leather about the middle of his pike‡ for the more commodious carrying it. The musketeer is to have a strap or belt fastened to the stock of his musket, almost from one end to the other, by which (being on horseback) he hangeth it at his back, his turning match and his bridle in the left hand."

The manuel exercise of the pistol is also exhibited in several plates, and detailed by the same author, as practised by the cavalry.

The portraits and military costume of those gentlemen of the county, who attended King Charles I at the siege of Chester, are painted in glass, in a window of Farndon Church.

In my son's collection is a sword which was presented by Louis XIII, King of France, to the Duke de Lesdigueres, for his services against the Huguenots. It has a large guard, and a place in which to put the thumb to give more power in cutting, and on it and the pommel are the portraits of the king and the duke, in raised silver. It is one of those large cutting swords which came into more general fashion in the time of Oliver Cromwell.

<sup>\*</sup> Souldier's Accidence, p. 4. † Published in 1632.

<sup>‡</sup> See one of these in the plate of military weapons, of this period, in Grose's Military Antiquities.

Charles I appears to have amused himself with the exercise of the long-bow, as he is represented in the frontispiece of Markham's Art of Archery,\* in the attitude and dress of a bow-man. The exact time in which the bow became disused in war by the English army, perhaps, cannot be fixed. Pere Danielt mentions, that arrows were shot by the English at the Isle of Rhé, in 1627; and in 1643, the Earl of Essex issued a precept for stirring up all well affected people by benevolence, towards the raising of a company of archers for the service of the king and the parliament.

One Neade, in the reign of this king, obtained a commission under the great seal, wherein he and his son were empowered to teach the combined management of the pike and bow. A book was published with reference to this in the year 1625, by William Neade, with plates, entitled, "The double-armed Man," shewing the proper exercise and attitude for the occasion. The archers in it are represented in corslets and morians, and armed with bows and arrows, pikes and swords.

In the year 1633, King Charles granted a commission similar to one issued by his father in 1605, for the benefit of the Artillery company. In this, the grounds used for archery, were directed to be reduced to the state in which they were in the beginning of the reign of King James I.<sup>†</sup> This company, in the year 1638, performed an exercise of arms at Merchant Taylor's Hall before the Lord Mayor, Court of Aldermen, and many other eminent citizens, so much to their satisfaction, that, in testimony thereof, they made a present to them of the ground they now enjoy, to serve them for a military field of exercise: it was then called the Artillery Garden, and now the Artillery Ground.

A patent was granted by King Charles I, to William Drummond, of Hawthornden, in the year 1625, for the sole making and vending, for the space of twenty-one years, the following machines and warlike engines invented by him. The first is an equestrian instrument, by which a single horseman may be equal in fight to five or six armed with the common arms; which instrument, indeed, agrees also most excellently with the foot service; and, from effects not less terrible than speedy, is called the thundering-staff; but, from its various properties, the box-pistol, box-musket, box-carabyn, or box-dragoon.

<sup>\*</sup> Printed in 1634. † Milice Française, Vol. I, p. 427.

<sup>†</sup> Under these clauses, a cow-keeper, named Pitfield, so late as the year 1746, was obliged to renew one of the shooting marks which he had displaced, on which the Artillery company had inscribed, "Pitfield's Repentance;" and there has been a later instance. See Archæologia, Vol. VIII.

<sup>§</sup> Printed in his works.

The second is a new kind of spear, with which any foot-soldier, besides using it as a pike, may discharge five or six guns: this weapon may be named the projecting spear, or pike arquebus.

The third is a sort of machine of conjugated muskets, by the assistance of which one soldier or two are enabled to oppose an hundred guns, which machine, from its effect, is called the thundering chariot, and vulgarly the fiery waggon.

The fourth is a new species of gun of the greater kind, by the assistance of which, in the same time that they have been able to discharge one ball, they may now discharge three, four, or five, and that either in a land or sea engagement. Of this machine there are different figures and sizes; but, from the common property of all, they may be called by the general name of the open cannon, vulgarly the open ordnance.

The fifth and sixth are of the mortar kind, of which one, from its remarkable use in defending walls and ships, and from its wonderful expedition, is called the flat scourer. The other, which is extremely useful, in naval fights, for breaking the masts, yards, and oars, whence it is called the cutter.

The seventh is a machine not unlike a species of the antient heliopolis, accommodated to the modern discipline for defending a fortress, and also for attacking one; by the assistance of it the besiegers may enter into the inner part of a city or fortification, or over a ditch, without the use of rolling mounts; and in the defence of a city, the fortification may be so strengthened by the use of this machine, as it shall never be taken or demolished, and it will stand free on the curtain. This, from its likeness to a cavalier, and because it carries a number of soldiers, and has the power of motion, may be vulgarly called the elephant or cavalier errant.

The following articles are improvements in shipping, and, therefore, not having any reference to armour, are omitted. The patent is dated, Hampton-Court, the 29th day of September, 1626, and sealed at Holyrood House.

In 1641, the gate of Arundel castle was blown open by a petard.\*

In the Memoirs of a cavalier, from 1632 to 1648,† is the following information relative to the Scotch and Highland troops. The author after panegerizing the

<sup>\*</sup> Grose's Military Antiquities, Vol. I, p. 409.

<sup>†</sup> The work, however, having been edited by De Foe, may have been altogether composed by him, instead of being compiled at the time; but, as my friend Sir Walter Scott observes, the Highlanders, as he found them about the year 1707, when he was sent to Scotland by Harley, probably scarce differed from their predecessors in 1642, "for new fashions would creep slowly in amongst a people so primitive."

Scots musketeers in the service of the King of Sweden, speaks of their firing in three ranks, as if such was an unusual practice. As they were selected to take by storm the strong castle of Marienburgh, the Scots of other regiments formed themselves into volunteers. These were armed with partizans, each man having two pistols in his belt.\*

Speaking of the Scotch army in 1642, he says: "I observed that these parties had always some foot with them, and yet, if the horse galloped, or pushed on ever so forward, the foot was as forward as they, which was an extraordinary advantage. Gustavus Adolphus, that king of soldiers, was the first that I ever observed, who found the advantage of mixing small bodies of musquetters among his horse, and had he had such nimble strong fellows as these, he could have proved them above all the rest of his men. These were those they call Highlanders; they would run on foot with their arms, and all their accoutrements, and keep very good order too, and yet keep pace with the horse, let them go at what rate they would. When I saw the foot thus interlined among the horse, together with the way of ordering their flying parties, it presently occurred to my mind that here was some of our old Scots come home out of Germany that had the ordering of matters; and if so, I knew we were not a match for them. I confess the soldiers made a very uncouth figure, especially the Highlanders, the oddness and barbarity of their garb and arms seemed to have something in it remarkable. They were generally tall swinging fellows; their swords were extravagantly, and I think, insignificantly broad, and they carried great wooden targets, large enough to cover the upper part of their bodies. Their dress was as antique as the rest; a cap on their heads called by them a bonnet, long hanging sleeves behind, and their doublet, breeches and stockings of a stuff they call plaid, striped across red and yellow, with short cloaks of the same. There were 3 or 4,000 of these in the Scots army, armed only with swords and targets; and in their belts some of them had a pistol, but no muskets at that time among them."

Describing the German troops, he says: "There was a body of cuirassiers armed with carabins, in the imperial army that fought like lions, commanded by Baron Cronenburgh. They were armed in black armour from head to foot."

<sup>\*</sup> In my son's collection is a pair of snaphaunce pistols, completely of brass, barrels and stocks, and greatly like the form still retained by the Scots; I am not quite certain whether they are absolutely Scotch, but the date on the barrels is 1626.

This account, however, cannot be correct, as in the Diversarum Gentium Armatura. Equestris, published in 1617, their armour ends at the knees.

The spirit of the antient military exercises had not, at this time, become completely extinct in France and Germany. Gustavus Adolphus was present at a tournament in the latter country, and, in the former, was printed in 1648, a book on the subject, entitled "Le vray Théâtre d'Honneur et de Chevalerie," by De la Colombiere.

Pl.zxxvzz.



HARQUEBUSSIER



AND PIKEMAN.

Drawn by R. Bridgens

Acquatinted by Ch. Hunt

## Cromwell.

1649.



HE cavalry which, under Charles I, had been denominated cavaliers, no longer being composed of gentlemen, and a term offensive to the levellers of this period, was renounced for that of pistoliers, harquebusiers, &c. But the armour of the pistolier, which had been the same as that of the cavaliers, was soon after the establishment of the Protectorate disused, and the cuirass only worn. They were then called cuirassiers.

In Plate LXXVIII, the pistolier is seen on foot, but is represented with his back towards the spectator, that the dress and hinder part of the armour may be more fully understood; the front so greatly resembling that in the last Plate. It will be observed, that the garde de reine is no longer used. This figure has been taken from a duodecimo edition of Franc: Baroni di Verulamio Historia regni Henrici septimi Angliæ regis, dated 1647. But, as the ballads with engravings, representing the execution of Charles I, are similarly habited, I have had no hesitation in giving to it the date ascribed.

The cuirassier was armed with an open helmet and cuirass, which consisted merely of a breast and back-plate, under which last he had a good buff coat. His offensive arms were a spit-sword with a sharp point, and pistols or petronels.

His saddle and bit were made very strong, and the reins of his bridle were strengthened with an iron chain to prevent their being cut. The figure on the chair in this plate represents an officer of harquebusiers, and is taken from a painting by Terburg, about the year 1648. Not only does it exhibit the immense boot of this period, shewn in another position at the bottom of the Plate, but the large linen guard within, originating from the ornamented lace-work of the last reign.

The engraved portrait of General Ludlow, exhibits the kind of barred helmet used at this time; and those in Grose's Treatise, Plates v, xi, and xlvii others. Of all these last, similar ones are in my son's armoury. A helmet with neck and ear-pieces, covered with grey silk, and said to have belonged to Oliver Cromwell, is in the possession of the Earl of Fife. A similar one was in the collection of Mr. Cosway, and is represented in Grose's Antient Armour, Plate xxxv. Mr. Cosway's has a back and breast belonging to it, which, besides being strongly quilted and stuffed, are strengthened with little iron plates, contained between the outside and the lining; this has a small skirt to it. There is also an elbow-gauntlet for the bridle-arm covered like the helmet. This style of armour appears to be copied from that worn by some of the nations of India.

The wearing of armour to the knees had continued to the time of Cromwell, because the cavalry did not, till then, cease to use the lance. Against this weapon, therefore, there was no method of resistance, except that of strong armour. The figure with the truncheon, in the initial, shews the fashion that immediately succeeded this, and that with the bandileers slung across the body, the musketeer of the earlier period.

M. de Puisegur, in his Memoires,\* says that: "The pikemen in France continued to wear corslets till after the battle of Sedan, in 1641;" and the pikemen of the Swiss guards in the French service wore them so late even as the time of Louis XIV. In England the corslet, as well as the cavalier's armour seems to have been laid aside in Oliver Cromwell's time.

In Plate xxxix to Grose's Treatise, is the buff coat which was worn under the cuirass, the shoulder belt and swivel to which was attached the harquebuss or carabine, and the waist-belt with its sword† in it, that belonged to Sir Francis Rhodes, Baronet, of Balborough-Hall, in the county of Derby, and used by him

<sup>\*</sup> Tom. I, p. 176.

<sup>†</sup> This is two feet five inches long in its blade, which is triangular; the hilt is of silver gilt.

in the civil wars. There is also an elbow gauntlet for the bridle-arm, which is composed of three skins of leather with one of cartoon or pasteboard, and, on the outside, it is made to represent the scales of fish. A similar one is in my son's armoury, and another in that of my friend, J. Watts Russell, Esq. M. P., who has also a buff coat, formerly in the possession of the Bishop of Durham.

The musket-rests seem to have been disused during the Protectorate.\* The gorgets, at this time, were often worn alone, being made of a much larger size than ordinary. This may be observed in many paintings of this period, and there is one of blue and white ornamented steel in my son's collection. The practice seems to have been introduced by naval officers, whose portraits are generally thus painted. In my son's armoury is an Italian carabine with a firelock, which, from the costume of a portrait on the cock, seems to have been made about the close of the Protectorate. Of this, however, I am not quite positive, as it is about twenty years before the firelock is supposed to have been used in England. † One thing, however, seems to give it countenance, and that is, that it is formed to unite the flask and the primer, and to prevent the bullet slipping out of the barrel, as was the case before the introduction of cartridges. On the steel plate over its butt-end is engraved: Carabino che tira più volta no uno; " a carabine which fires more than once." This opens and the powder is put into the butt, which thus is made to act as a flask, and the fine priming-powder into a magazine by the pan. A cylinder which is made to revolve with a handle, and fixed at the chamber of the barrel, is perforated, to enable the soldier to insert a bullet. This he does when holding the musket downwards, which permits the powder to fall into its places; the turning round the handle cuts off the proper quantity and keeps the bullet from falling out, (a frequent occurrence, according to Lord Orrery, before the invention of cartridges,) and cocks the piece.

General Leslie, afterwards Earl of Leven, who had served in the Swedish army, was employed by the parliament against King Charles in the year 1640. He is said to have so surprised the English army with his tin artillery, covered with leather, that they fled with precipitation, leaving him and his Scots to

<sup>\*</sup> The use of the rest is taught in a Treatise, published in 1634, called the Souldier's Practice, by Thomas Fisher, an officer who had served twenty-six years in the Low Countries, and was afterwards employed by Philip, Earl of Pembroke, lord lieutenant of the county of Kent, to discipline its militia. We may, therefore, with great probability, date the disuse of the rest sometime about the commencement of the civil wars, when the weight and incumbrance of the musket and its apparatus might be found too great for the active service inseparable from campaigns carried on in small detachments.

<sup>†</sup> And yet I have seen a portrait of Cornet Joyce with a firelock pistol, which gives as early a date as the civil wars, should the firelock of the inventory in Charles's reign be supposed to be the wheel-lock.

gain possession of Newcastle and the Northern Counties.\* These cannons would bear two or three discharges. One Scott, a Scotchman, who had served under Gustavus Adolphus, was the inventor, as his epitaph in Lambeth Church testifies, and they are mentioned by Puffendorf, and others, who have described the wars of Gustavus Adolphus, King of Sweden.

Cromwell's troops had generally basket-hilted swords, very closely resembling the Scotch, whether the blade was curved or straight. The thumb-ring seems to have been first put on sword-hilts at the close of Elizabeth's reign, and originated in Germany, one of the earliest swords on that construction being in my son's armoury. The basket-hilt may have arisen in the time of James I, when the gauntlet began to be disused, and derived from the ornamented shell-guards previously in fashion. I conceive, that the broader the Scotch blade, the more antient it is.

At Farnley Hall, the seat of Walter Fawkes, Esq. M. P, are preserved three swords, well authenticated, as having belonged to Cromwell, Fairfax, and Lambert. The first is straight, with a guard of a single bow ending near the blade in a sort of quarter-basket, resembling such as were of general use in the time of Charles II. Fairfax's is also straight with a Scotch basket-hilt inlaid with silver; and Lambert's is a hanger, the handle formed of a lion sitting on his haunches, and holding with his two fore-paws the guard of a single bow. That magnificent sword in His Majesty's collection attributed to Lambert, is of the time of Queen Elizabeth.

An idea of the magnificence and number of banners, &c. used at the Protector's funeral, in 1658, may be formed from the following extracts from the charges made for emblazoning them.†

the state of the s	£.	s. d.	
For six great banners wrought on rich taffety in oil, and gilt		en L	
with fine gold and silver, at £6. a piece	36	0 0	
For five large standards, wrought on rich taffety in oil, and	934	ina s	
gilt with fine gold and silver, at £10. a piece -	50	0 0	
For a guidon as large as a great banner, wrought on rich			
taffety in oil, and gilt with fine gold and silver	6	0 0	
For twelve banner rolls, wrought on rich taffety in oil, and			
gilt with fine gold and silver, at 50s, the piece	30	0 0	

<sup>\*</sup> Burnet's History of his own Times, Vol. I, p. 39.

<sup>†</sup> Noble's Memoirs, Vol. 1, p. 275.

a of Joseph Land the Troubers Champes "in Thesis common	£.	s.	d.
For thirteen majesties, wrought on rich taffety, gilt with			
fine gold and silver, at £3. 10s. a piece, with mantle,	uvote		astuur
helmet, and crest, supporters, and motto	45	0	0
For his shield painted in oil, and richly gilt with a crown		ieu	or other
with fine gold	2	0	0
For a sword, richly gilt with fine gold -	1	0	0
For a pair of rich gilt spurs and gauntlets	0	10	0
For a helmet of steel painted in oil, and richly gilded with	and the		HILLIMO:
fine gold	2	10	0
For gilding and painting four carved shields in the basis of			
the uprights, at 30s. a piece	6	0	0
For eight shields embossed a yard deep, and gilt with silver			ur adir
and gold, at 30s. a piece	12	0	0
For twenty-four shields, embossed, of a lesser sort, and			MOVE.
gilt with silver and gold, at 20s. a piece	24	0	0
For six dozen of little shields embossed, at three pound a			
die biologen de la	18	0	0
For six done of pennons, a yard long, at 20s. a piece -	72	0	0
For thirty dozen of pennoncils a foot long wrought on			
taffaty, at 20s. a dozen	30	0	0
For six dozen of badges, at 24s. a dozen	6	0	0
For forty trumpet banners, at 40s. a piece, gilt with fine			
gold and silver	80	0	0
For a great banner of the white lion, wrought in oil -	6	0	0
For 36 great shields a yard deep, with the nations' arms			
imbossed, at 30s. a piece	39	0	0
For 24 shields, with crowns of a lesser sort, at 20s. a			
piece - hand- de pro- de la company de la della company dell	24	0	0
For 6 dozen of little embossed shields, at £3. a dozen -	18	0	0
For 5 dozen of badges, being his highness' crest embossed,			
at 24s. a dozen	6	0	0
For 6 dozen of pennons, a yard long, at £12. a dozen -	72	0	0
For 20 dozen of pennoncils, of a foot long, at 12s. a dozen	20	0	0
In the republican army were many commanders, who, boasting	g of v	ery	remote
ancestry, retained the arms of their families, and bore them upon	peni	nons	; they
vol. III.			

had likewise a large square banner, upon which was painted a device and motto, both of which described or alluded to the principles of the cause they had undertaken to defend, and expressive of the fanatic spirit by which they were actuated. Prestwich\* has given a catalogue of these devices, amounting to 219, the greater part of which are delineations of some feat performed during the war. Those who were entitled to bear coat armour did not fail to exhibit it, but the typhical banner was in more general use. The following contain the costume of warriors at the period. Thus, Captain Reeve, besides other bearings, had "a man in front thus apparalled, &c. on his feet large boots of brown leather, white stockings, crimson breeches, coat or jacket of the same, the sleeves of which only are seen, as the rest of the body is covered with a brown leather doublet with skirts; in his right hand a sword in pale; on his head a republican, or high-crowned hat sable, on the right side ornamented with a plume of three white feathers." Colonel Cooke, of Gloucestershire, "a man in front armed in steel, his thighs with greavest of the same; his breeches crimson, large boots of brown leather; over his right shoulder a yellow sash, his helmet at top adorned with a yellow and sable feather, and in his right hand a sword." These were, no doubt, the actual costumes of the persons.

<sup>\*</sup> Respublica, p. 53 to 67.

<sup>+</sup> Cuisses.

# Charles the Zecond.

1660-1685.



HARLES II could not favourably regard the republican army, which had subdued the adherents of his father, though he admired its martial appearance; and the best mode of disbanding it occupied the attention of the British cabinet from the moment he landed at Dover, in May, 1660.

A body of life-guards, consisting of two regiments, were raised immediately by this king, the privates of whom were taken from the cavalier gentlemen who had followed the fortunes of

Charles I during the civil war, and the high privileges they obtained were continued long after the time when they ceased to be composed of the same class of men.

The Duke of Albemarle\* recommended "arming the musqueteers and dragoons with musquets having swine's feathers with the heads of rests fastened to them." A swine's feather in a sheath so as to serve as a walking-stick, but capable of being drawn out and fixed in the muzzle of a gun, is in my son's collection, and several specimens made to throw out from the musket-rest; but this suggestion of the duke is intended to be an improvement on these.

Turner tells us,\* that "musket-rests were used a long time, and in some places are yet,† to ease the musketeers in discharging their guns, and when they stood centinel; but in the late expeditions in most places of Christendom, they have been found more troublesome than helpful. A musketeer, in any sudden occasion, not being well able to do his duty with musket, sword and rest, especially if you give him a Swedish feather to manage with them." The same author further observes: "To the musketier belongs also a bandilier of leather, at which he should have hanging eleven or twelve shot of powder, a bag for his ball, a primer and a cleanser.‡ But it is thirty years ago since I saw these laid aside in some German armies; for it is impossible for soldiers, especially wanting cloaks (and more want cloaks than have any) to keep these flaskes, though well and strongly made, from snow and rain, which soon spoils them, and so makes the powder altogether useless: besides the noise of them betray those who carry them, in all surprizals, anslachts, and sudden enterprizes."

The swine's feather-rest being thus laid aside, and the swine's feather being somewhat aukward to manage, induced such soldiers as were armed with daggers to stick them into the muzzles of their pieces. This gave origin to the bayonets, which were first made at Bayonne, in Spain. They were called by the French, bayonets à manche, and first introduced into their army, in 1671. These were made with plain handles formed to fit tight into the muzzles, and rather enlarging towards the blade, to prevent their entering too far into the piece. Three or four varieties are in my son's collection.

M. de Puisegur, in his Memoirs, says: "For my part, when I commanded in Bergue, in Ypres, Dixmude and Quenoque, all the parties I sent out passed the canals in this sort; it is true that the soldiers had no swords, but they had bayonets with handles of a foot || long, the blades of the bayonets were as long as the handles, the ends of which were fitted for being put into the barrels of the fusils, to defend themselves if attacked after they had fired."

Several contrivances had been invented in England to protect the musketeer against cavalry, after he had fired, and before he had reloaded. Thus, Bariffe says: ¶ "Having often considered the danger of the muskettier, and how unable he is to resist the horse, after he hath poured forth his shotte, without he be

<sup>\*</sup> Pallas Armata, p. 176.

<sup>†</sup> His work was published in 1670.

<sup>‡</sup> The cleanser was a large kind of gun-picker.

<sup>§</sup> From the German. Anschlagen to strike at.

Those of my son's specimens are not above half this length.

<sup>¶</sup> Young Artilleryman, second edition, 1639.

sheltered, either by some naturall or artificial defence; and withall having knowledge that in several parts of Christendome, divers captaines and souldiers have oft beene trying conclusions, to make the musketteer as well defensive as offensive. Some by unscrewing the heads of their rests, and then screwing the staffe of their rests into the muzzle of the musket, with the arming of the pike at the lower end, by which means they would use the musket and rest together, in the nature of a whole pike: but this proved so tedious and troublesome, that it fell without profit. Another sort had rests with one end of the fork or head being like a spike,\* about eighteen inches in length; this also proved extreme troublesome to themselves, dangerous to their followers, and of no validitie against the enemie. A third sorte had half pikes, of about seven or eight foot in length, useing it after the manner of a rest: but all the while the muskettier was charging (his musket) one of them was enough to trouble a whole file, besides the danger in the recovery. A fourth sorte there was (yet better than the former) that with a hooke was fastened to the girdle, while the muskettier was making ready; but this had its defects also, as being both tedious and troublesome. Many other wayes and conclusions have also been tryed, with successe like the former; which I forbeare to demonstrate, for as their conceits proved uselesse, so the discourse would prove fruitlesse. Lastly myselfe, with another gentleman of our ground (Master John Davies of Blackfriers) both well effecting the use of the musket, found out a way to use the half pike and musket with so much facilitie and ease, that is far less troublesome than the rest, and yet of greater length than any of the former rests or halfe pikes as being compleat ten foot in length with the arming. All the former devices, if they could have beene brought to any maturitie, yet would have falne farre short of this, for the triple use thereof, as being a rest, if there be no farther occasion; as being a pallisado (if there be occasion) to defend the muskettier from the horse; as being a halfe pike to use in trenches; as also when our shotte have poured out a great volly or showre of lead on the adverse muskettiers, they may then nimbly with their half pikes fall in amongst them. And lastly for the pursuite of an enemy, it being of all others the best weapon. A serviceable half-pike may be had for two shillings and six-pence, which exceeds not much the price of a rest."

<sup>\*</sup> One of this kind is engraved in Grose's Treatise on Antient Armour.

<sup>†</sup> There is such a one in my son's collection.

Robert Harford, in his English Military Discipline,\* says: "The bayonet is much of the same length as the poniard; it hath neither guard† nor handle; but only the haft of wood eight or nine inches long; the blade is sharp-pointed and two edged, a foot in length, and a large inch in breadth. The bayonet is very useful to dragoons, fusileers and soldiers, that are often commanded out in parties; because that when they have fired their discharges, and want powder and shot, they put the haft of it into the mouth of the barrel of their pieces, and defend themselves therewith as well as with a partizan."

Sir James Turner observes, that, "if the chamber of a pistol be loaden three times the diameter of her bore with powder (which is easily measured by her rammer), she hath her due charge, but all horsemen should always have the charges of their pistols ready in patrons, the powder made up compactly in paper and the ball tied to it with a piece of packthread."

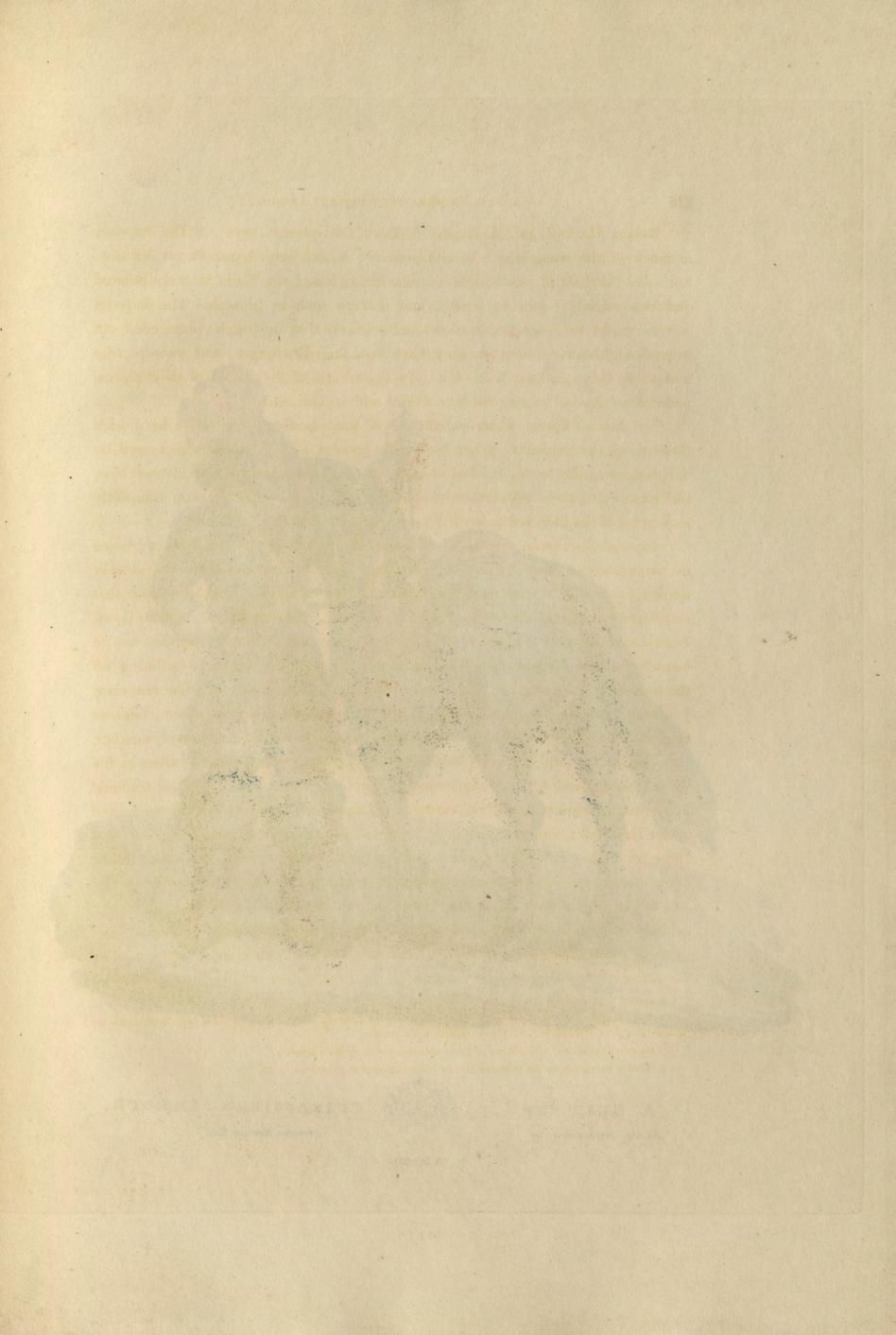
In this description we have evidently the cartridge, though not expressed by name; but confined to pistols. Harford, however, in the same work, already quoted, \$ speaks of the modern firelock as then in use, and it seems that cartridges were generally adopted at the same time, and superseded the bandileers. Lord Orrery says: "I am also on long experience, an enemy to the use of bandeleers, but a great approver of boxes of cartridges; for then by biting off the bottom of the cartridge, you charge your musket for service with one ramming. I would have these cartridge-boxes of tin, as the carabines use them, because they are not so apt to break as the wooden ones are, and do not in wet weather. or lying in the tents, relax. Besides, I have often seen much prejudice in the use of bandeleers, which being worn in the belts for them, above the soldiers' coats are often apt to take fire, especially if the match-lock musket be used; and when they take fire, they commonly wound and kill him that wears them, and those near him; for likely if one bandeleer take fire, all the rest do in that collar; they often tangle those which use them on service, when they have fired, and are falling off by the flanks of the files of the intervals, to get into the rear to charge again. To which I shall add, that in secret attempts in the night, their rattling often discovers the design, and enables the enemy to prevent it; and

<sup>\*</sup> Printed in 1680, p. 13.

<sup>†</sup> Subsequently a ring was added, by which it was put on the muzzle so as to allow the piece to be fired, and acted as a guard if used as a dagger. Such a one is in my son's armoury.

<sup>‡</sup> These are the boxes, of which two of Elizabeth's time are in my son's armoury.

<sup>§</sup> Military Discipline, or the Way and Method of exercising Horse and Foot, p. 19,





A SUIT OF
In the possession of



CUIRASSIER'S ARMOUR,

Liewelyn Meyrick. Esq."

A.D.1650.

in the day time on service, especially if the weather be windy, their rattling also too frequently hinders the soldiers from hearing, and consequently obeying the officer's word of command, which must be fatal when it happens: whereas the cartridge-boxes exempt those who use them from all these dangers and prejudices: they enable the soldiers on service to fire more expeditiously; they are also worn about the waste of the soldier, the skirts of whose doublet and his coate, doubly defend them from all rain that doth not pierce both; and being worn close to his body, the heat thereof keeps the powder dryer, and therefore more fit to be fired in service. Besides all this, whoever loads his musket with cartridges, is sure the bullet will not drop out, though he takes his aim under breast-high, for the paper of the cartridge keeps it in, whereas those soldiers which on service take their bullets out of their mouths (which is the nimblest way) or out of their pouches, which is slow, seldom put any paper, tow or grass, to ram the bullet in; whereby if they fire above breast high, the bullet passes over the head of the enemy; and if they aim low. the bullet drops out ere the musket is fired; and 'tis to this that I attribute the little execution I have seen musketeers do in time of fight, though they fired at great battalions, and those also reasonable near. It might also do well if the soldiers tyed their links of match about their middle, and under their coat and doublets, instead of tying them to their bandeleer belt, or collar, for by that means the match would be kept dryer, and fitter for service in the time of action."

Thus we see, near three hundred years elapsed after the invention of handguns before the contrivance of cartridges occurred.

In my son's collection, is a wheel-lock carabine, of this period, the butt of which is made to fold back, for the purpose of being more conveniently held in the holster; and another with the steel cap of the butt-end made to draw out, so as to encrease its length. He has also a long pistol, of this time, with its barrel curiously fluted, and several short ones, all wheel-locks, but with the trigger-guards beautifully perforated.

Plate LXXIX, represents the cuirassier as habited according to the costume at the time of the restoration. The armour and weapons are all in my son's collection; the former is of blue steel, and furnished with pauldrons and brassarts. This cuirass is worn over the buff coat, and with it the large gambado boots and spurs, which were introduced to prevent the effects of pressure in a charge. The sword is held in a large fringed baudrick, and the

carabine attached to a buff belt. Underneath is a representation of a perforated steel-cap to put in the hat of a horse soldier; an attempt to connect the helmet and hat in the same head-covering. The original is in my son's collection.

The armour and weapons directed to be worn by the militia after the restoration, are thus described in the statute of the thirteenth and fourteenth of Charles II: "The arms offensive and defensive, with the furniture for horse, are to be as followeth: the defensive arms, a back, breast and pot, and the breast and pot to be pistol proof; the offensive arms a sword and a case of pistols, the barrels whereof are not to be under fourteen inches in length, the furniture for the horse to be a great saddle or padd, with burrs\* and straps to affix the holsters unto, a bit and bridle with a pectoral and crupper.

"For the foot, a musqueteer is to have a musquet, the barrel whereof is not to be under three foot in length, and the gauge of the bore to be for twelve bullets to the pound, a collar of bandeleers with a sword.† Provided that all muster-masters shall for the present admit and allow of any musquets already made, which will bear a bullet of fourteen to the pound, but no muskets which henceforth shall be made are to be allowed of but such as are of the gauge of twelve bullets to the pound.

"A pikeman is to be armed with a pike made of ash, not under sixteen feet in length, the head and foot included, with a back, breast, head-piece and sword: provided that all muster-masters shall, for the present, admit and allow of any pikes already made,‡ that are not under fifteen foot in length, but no pikes which shall be hereafter made are to be allowed of that are under sixteen feet in length."

The tallest and strongest men were generally selected for the pike, and, ni France, their pay was somewhat greater than that of the musketeers.

Officers, at this time, often wore no other armour than a large gorget, which nearly served the purpose of a breast-plate, a circumstance commemorated in the diminutive ornament of the present day. One of these large steel gorgets ornamented with beautiful scroll-work and foliage in blue, is in the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq.: and the portrait of Gaston de France, frère unique du roi, which has been introduced into the initial letter of this reign, exhibits the ordinary costume with it.

<sup>\*</sup> Upright pieces in front of the thighs.

<sup>†</sup> The rest was, at this time, laid aside.

<sup>‡</sup> The pike-heads, during this and Cromwell's time, were longer than previously.

During this king's reign, archery was continued as an amusement, he himself sometimes attending exhibitions of shooting. But in a pamphlet, printed in 1664, which gives an account of the success of the Marquis of Montrose against the Scots, bowmen are repeatedly mentioned as in the battle.

The grenadiers of the Highland regiments, indeed, as late as the time of William III, when recruiting, wore the old red bonnet, and carried bows and arrows with them. Hume, in his History of the Rebellion, mentions the circumstance of a clergyman going to perform divine service with a bow in his hand, and his arrows put through a silk sash tied round his waist.

The Highland bow was very short, and by no means powerful, the arrow-heads were barbed and long. Specimens of both these are in the armoury of my friend, Sir Walter Scott, Baronet.

In Mr. Gwennap's collection is a poniard, on the upper part of the blade of which, on one side, is engraved a skull, and under it, "Memento Godfrey;" on the other, "Oct: 12, Anno Dom: 1678." My son has another, on which is "Godfrey, Oct: 12, Anno Do. 1678."

These daggers were made to avenge the death of Sir Edmundbury Godfrey, a magistrate who had taken the evidence of Oates, and who was thought rather active against the papists. The public mind was, at this time, remarkably heated by what was called the Popish Plot; and, as he was found murdered in a ditch near Primrose-Hill, suspicions naturally fell on the catholics. Sir Edmundbury Godfrey was regarded as a martyr for the protestant cause, and his memory reverenced and cherished by the protestants. Hence a number of medals were struck on this occasion, and hence too, with not so innocent a feeling, the origin of these daggers.

In the historical novel of Peveril of the Peak,\* we are told, that, to protect the protestants against dreaded assassinations by the papists at this time, and to avoid the inconvenience of breasts and back-plates of steel, some ingenious artist, probably belonging to the Mercer's Company, had contrived what was called the silk armour, being composed of a doublet and breeches of quilted silk, so closely stitched, and of such thickness, as to be proof against bullet or steel; while a thick bonnet of the same materials, with earflaps attached to it, protected the head. The whole was of a dusky orange colour. My son has lately met with a bridle-arm gauntlet in Oxford, exactly answering this description, which he has purchased and added to his collection.

\* Vol. III. p. 243.

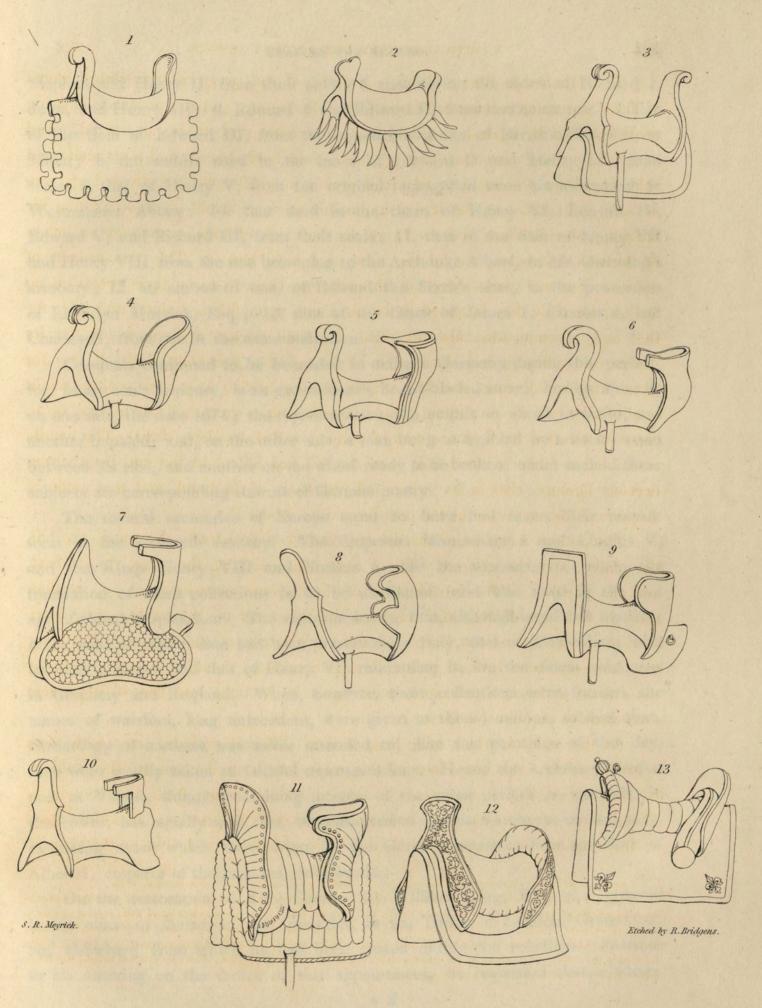
The Honorable Roger North, speaking of the green ribbon club,\* says: "There was much recommendation of the silk armour, and the prudence of being provided with it, against the time that protestants were to be massacred. And accordingly there were abundance of those silken back, breast, and potts made and sold, that were pretended to be pistol proof; in which any man dressed up, was as safe as in a house, for it was impossible any one could go to strike him for laughing, so ridiculous, was the figure, as they say, of hogs in armour; an image of derision insensible, but to the view as I have had it. This was armour of defence; but our sparks were not altogether so tame to carry their provision no farther, for truly they intended to be assailants upon fair occasion; and had, for that end, recommended also to them a certain pocket weapon, which, for its design and efficacy, had the honour to be called a protestant flail. It was for street and croud work, and the engine lurking perdue in a coat pocket, might readily sally out to execution; and so by clearing a great hall, or piazza, or so carry an election by a choice way of polling, called knocking down. The handle resembled a farrier's bloodstick, and the fall was joined to the end by a strong nervous ligature, that in its swing, fell just short of the hand, and was made of Lignum Vitæ, or rather as the poet termed it, Mortis."

The antient weapons of the infantry had been principally the spear, the bill, the glaive, and the gisarme. These were succeeded by the pike, the halbert, and the partisan. The introduction of the bayonet occasioned these, in their turn, to fall into disuse, and rendered defensive armour unnecessary, as, when musket proof, it was too heavy for the convenience of the wearer. The lance has, however, been revived in the European armies; should it become general,† the cuirass at least, if not more, must again be brought into use, so dependent are defensive on offensive arms.

As the saddles, which have been used at different periods, carry with them a great variety, the last Plate of this work has been devoted to this subject. In Plate Lxxx, Fig. 1, represents a Roman saddle, taken from the column of Theodosius; 2. a Saxon one from an illuminated manuscript; 3. saddle used at the time of the conquest, from the Bayeux tapestry; 4. that in the time of

<sup>\*</sup> Examen, or Enquiry into the credit and veracity of a pretended complete history, 4to. London, 1740.

<sup>†</sup> I have heard that several of the continental nations are arming their heavy cavalry with lances, should the antient form, in which the greatest weight is placed in the butt-end, be revived, the bayonet will be of little service against a charge of cavalry. What our lancers at present use, was formerly termed the demi-lance; and, being held in the centre, half the length is lost in order to poise it. They are taught, in the thrust, to remedy this inconvenience, by letting it slip forward in the hand: yet, I suspect, the consequent friction must lessen its impetus. The only original antient war-lance I have seen in this country is in my son's possession.



ANCIENT SADDLES.

population of free the property of the section of t  Stephen and Henry II, from their seals; 5. that during the times of Richard I, John, and Henry III; 6. Edward I and Edward II, from similar sources; 7. that of the time of Edward III, from the equestrian statue of Bernabo Visconti, at Milan; 8. the saddle used in the times of Richard II and Henry IV, from seals; 9. that of Henry V, from the original, suspended over his monument in Westminster Abbey; 10. that used in the times of Henry VI, Edward IV, Edward V, and Richard III, from their seals; 11. that of the time of Henry VII and Henry VIII, from the one belonging to the Archduke Albert, in Mr. Gwennap's armoury; 12. an embossed one, of Edward the Sixth's time, in the possession of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq.; 13. that of the times of James I, Charles I, and Charles II, from one in the same collection.

Criminals continued to be beheaded in catholic Germany during this period; for, in my son's armoury, is an executioner's broad-bladed sword, having upon it, on one side, the date 1674; the representation of a culprit so about to suffer, and another impaled; and, on the other side, a man hung to a gibbet by a hook passed between his ribs, and another on the wheel ready to be broken; under each of these subjects are corresponding stanzas of German poetry.

The several armouries of Europe seem to have first taken their present form in the sixteenth century. The Emperors Maximilian I and Charles V, and the Kings Henry VIII and Francis I, are the monarchs to whom the foundation of these collections is to be attributed, and who lived in the last age of chivalric splendour. The consequence is, that, although in private families, a few suits of earlier date had been preserved in Italy, that of Maximilian, with its steel lamboys, and that of Henry VII resembling it, are the oldest specimens in Germany and England. When, however, these collections were formed, the names of warriors, long antecedent, were given to them; and as, at that time, chronology of costume was never attended to, like the paintings of the day, they were readily taken as faithful representations. Hence the Ambras collection now at Vienna, though containing armour of the same periods as the suits in the Tower, has equally with this, been asserted to possess specimens of antiquity, exhibiting those which were worn by the German emperors from the time of Albert I, emperor of the Romans, downwards.

On the restoration of King Charles II, William Legg, Esq. was replaced in his office of master of the armouries, in the Tower of London, Greenwich, and elsewhere, from which he had been ousted during the rebellion. Previous to his entering on the duties of this appointment, he requested that a survey might be made of what remained in the armoury, and thereupon a commission, dated August 2, in the twelfth year of His Majesty's reign, 1660, was directed to Sir John Robinson, lieutenant of the Tower of London, Colonel William Ashburnham, Sir Thomas Armestronge, Knight, John Wood, and Bartholomew Beale, auditors of the imprests, to take the remaynes of all the armes, tooles, and other utensils, in the Tower of London, and magazines, and storehouses at Greenwich. The survey was accordingly made in the month of October, 1660.

As it may be of some curiosity to shew what antient armour had been left untouched in the preceding time of distractions, without particularizing the numbers of each kind, the parts and sorts enumerated in this survey,\* are as follows.

Breasts.

Backs.

Harquebuzeers and other Horsemen's Armours, viz.

Head peeces.

Strong harquebuze armor, consisting of backe, brest, placket.

Head peeces and taces.

Dutch horsemens' head peeces with single barrs.

Curaseers Armours, with their Furniture, viz.

Close white curaseer head peeces.

Cushes.

Knee capps.

Flemish pouldrons with vambraces.

Light horsemen's armes wanting two pair of taces.

White curasseer armes complete for tilting.

Tilting armor for curasseers, consisting of backe, breast, pouldrons, vambraces, taces, and collar.

Large white armor complete, said to be John of Gaunt's.† Small white armor cap a pe, said to be Prince Henry's.

<sup>\*</sup> An attested copy of the original was in the possession of Mrs. Tucker, of Betchworth Castle, Surrey.

<sup>†</sup> We learn from this, that what was called white armour was, in fact, bright steel, as this suit, falsely attributed to John of Gaunt, but of the time of Henry VIII, still remains in the Tower. The helmet belonging to it is engraved in Grose's Antient Armour, Plate VIII.

Danish foot armes, viz. breasts, backes, taces. Danish breasts, with cross girdles.

## Armour of Toyras Provision.\*

Breasts, backes, head peeces, whereof some were made in England to wear with the said armes.

## Corsletts and Curates, with their Furniture, viz.

Curate breasts, backes, head peeces, taces, coome murrions, and other old head peeces and capps, gorgets, murrions, white field head peeces.

Masking armor complete, reported to be made for King Henry the Seventh. Foot armes, black and plaine, black and guilt.

Pace guards, russet white.

Grand guards, russet white.

Vambraces, plaine, guilt.

Old grave.§

Culet or guardreine.

Mainefaires, russet, white.

Vamplates for tilting staves.

White short gauntletts.

White tilt collers.

Flemish gauntletts, short, long.

Amunicion swords.

Belts for swords.

Saddles for great horses.

Battle axes.

Wood crosses to hang armor upon.

Sundry other Armes and Parcels of Armor, Ammunicion, &c. viz.

Shaffroones.

Launces and launce staves.

<sup>\*</sup> That is provided by the city of Tours.

<sup>+</sup> Combed or crested morions.

This is that curious suit with steel skirts, in which are inlaid the initials H. R. in gold. Masking probably implies § Greave. damaskine.

<sup>||</sup> If any of these now remain in the Tower, they are no where exhibited.

<sup>¶</sup> Chanfrons, or champfreins.

Great launces,\* whereof two are said to be King Henry the Seventh's, and one Charles Brandon's Duke of Suffolke.

Pikes.+

Great hearse of John of Gaunt.

Spanish coller for torture taken in 1588.‡

Two hand swords.§

Shields guilt.

Targets of iron.

Buckelers of iron.

Wooden buckelers.¶

Barbes for bestes wanting one shaffroon.

Anticke head peece, with ramshornes, coller and spectacles upon it, one tache, and one sword, all said to be William Sommers' armes.\*\*

#### Armorers Tooles.

Small bickernes.

Tramping stakes.

Round stake.

Welting stakes.

Straite sheeres.

Fileing tonges.

Hamers.

Old tew iron.

Great square anvill

Bellows.

Smiths vices.

Threstles.

<sup>\*</sup> These are still suspended from the ceiling of the armoury in the Tower. They are, probably, hollow, for such are spoken of by P. de Comines, and retained till the time of James I.

<sup>†</sup> These form the square pillars in the small armoury.

<sup>‡</sup> Its place here seems to be an evidence, that the Spanish armoury was not, at this time, formed.

<sup>§</sup> One of these large two-handed swords, of the time of Henry VIII, is placed with the armour attributed to De Courcy.

<sup>||</sup> One of these, embossed with the labours of Hercules, and attributed to the Commander in Chief of the Armada, is in the Spanish armoury. There is on it the date 1376; but, as embossed work was not of earlier use than the close of Henry VIII, the 3 was probably a 5.

<sup>¶</sup> Some with pistols in them are in the Spanish armoury, and these were noticed by Hentzner.

<sup>\*\*</sup> The suit of armour added to this is not older than the time of Charles I, painted blue and gilt, into the helmet of which has been placed an iron mask, on the nose of which are spectacles, and the helmet has affixed to it ramshorns of iron.

## In the Closet within the Armory at the Tower.

Armor of King Henry the Eighth, cap a pe, being rough from the hammer.\*

Long elbow gauntlets.†

Strong brests and plackets.

Male jackets.‡

Powder, half a barrell.

Sundry compleat Armor, and others, whereof some of them were formerly standing at Greenwich, in the Green Gallerie there, viz.

- 1. Upon a horse statue of wood, one compleat tilt armor, cap a pe, richly guilt, part engraven, part damasked, made for Prince Henry, with two gauntletts, and one guilt grand guard, the horse furniture being one shaffroone of the same sort, one old leather sadle and bitt.
- 2. Upon a like horse, one armour cap a pe, white and guilt, made for King Henry the Eighth, the horse furniture being one shaffroone brest-plate, and buttocke of the same sort, one old saddle and bitt.§
- 3. Upon a like horse one armor cap a pe damasked and guilt, made for King Henry the Seventh, the horse furniture being a shaffroon, crivet for the necke, brest plate and buttocke of the same, saddle, stirrups and bitt.
- 4. Upon a like horse one armor cap a pe white engraven, and parcell guilt, made for King Edward the Third. The horse furniture being one shaffroone, crivet for the necke, brest plate and buttocke of the same, an old sadle and bitt.
- 5. Upon a like horse, one curasseere armor richly guilt and engraven, made for his late Majesty of ever blessed memory Charles the First. The horse furniture being one shaffroone of the same, and an old sadle.
- 6. Upon a like horse, one white armor cap a pe, made for King Edward the Fourth. The horse furniture are shaffroone, crivet for the necke,

<sup>\*</sup> Engraved by Grose, Plate xix, and the helmet enlarged, Plate viii.

<sup>†</sup> Some of these are put on the figures in the armoury of small arms.

<sup>†</sup> None of these are now exhibited, but they were remaining within memory.

<sup>§</sup> This suit of armour which is of polished steel, with its foliages gilt and inlaid with gold, is now shewn with the likeness of Henry VIII in it. The two feet, however, are not fellows.

<sup>||</sup> This suit of Henry the Eighth's time is engraved by Grose, Plate xxv, but without the two crowns on his sword as exhibited in the Tower.

brest-plate, buttocke, and one old sadle, with two gauntlets, and a pace guard.\*

- 7. Upon a like horse, one armor made for King Henry the Sixth, consisting of an head peece, backe, brest, a pair of pouldrons and vambraces, a pair of greaves and a pace guard. The horse furniture being a shaffroone, and an old saddle and a bitt.
- 8. Upon a like horse, one armor compleat, cap a pe, engraven with the ragged staffe, made for the Earle of Leicester. The horse furniture being a shaffroone, crivet for the necke, and brest-plate of the same, one sadle, bitt, and reines.†
- 9. Upon a like horse, one armor compleate, cap a pe, white and plaine, made for Charles Brandon, Duke of Suffolke. The horse furniture being a shaffroone, brest-plate, and buttocke of the same, one sadle, bitt and bridle.
- 10. Upon a like horse, one armor compleat, cap a pe, white and plaine, made for William the Conqueror. The horse furniture being a shaffroone, crivet for the necke, with a sadle, bridle, and stirrups.

In several trunckes brought from Mr. Annesley's house in the Tower were several armours richly guilt and graven, made for King Charles the First, Charles the Second when prince; some with bosses of gold, and corded with silver.

Foot armor of Henry the Eighth, richly guilt, consisting of backe, brest, and placket, taces, gorget, a burgonet, with a buffe or chin peece.

Sheeves of male, with a velvet coat to them.

Armor sent his now Majestie Charles the Second, by the Great Mogull, consisting of backe, brest, baces, head peece, vizard, and peeces of the greaves.

#### Greenwich.

They found, upon view and information of divers officers of the armory, shopkeepers, and others, that, during the time of the late distractions, the several armes, amunition, and habiliments of war, formerly remaining in the Greene

<sup>\*</sup> This is a bright suit studded; of the time of Henry VIII.

<sup>†</sup> This suit was formerly kept in the Tilt-yard, and exhibited on particular days, but it is now shewn in the Tower as the armour of James I.

<sup>‡</sup> The mentoniere.

<sup>§</sup> Qu.? if not sleeves.

<sup>||</sup> This is still shewn in the Tower. It is made of small iron tubes about two inches long, finely japanned and ranged in rows, one row slipping over another very ingeniously: they are bound together with silk twist very strong.

Gallery at Greenwich, were all taken and carried away by sundry soldiers who left the door open; that sundry of the said armes were afterwards brought to the Tower of London, by Mr. Annesley, where they were then remaining; that the wainscot in the said gallery was then all pulled down and carried away, and, as they were informed, was imployed in wainscotting the house in the Tower where the said Mr. Annesley lived; that a great part of the seeling was very much ruined, and the whole house much decaied; that all the several tooles, and other utensills for making of armour, formerly remaining in the master armourer's work-house there, and at the armourer's mill, were also at the time of the said distractions taken and carried away, except some few things; that sundry of the tooles and other things had been sold to private persons; that the great anvill, called the great beare, was then in the custody of Mr. Michaell Basten, locksmith, at Whitehall; and the anvill, called the little beare, was in the custody of Mr. Thomas Cove, one of His Majesty's armourers; the mill, formerly employed in glazeing and cleaning armes, was destroyed and converted to other uses by one Woodman, who claimed it by a grant from King James of blessed memory, but the officers of the armoury then had it in their possession. This report is signed by

J. Robinson, Li. Gen. Toure. John Wood. Barth. Beale.

From this curious survey we learn that the armour, now in the Tower, came from Greenwich and other places; and, as in the statement no mention is made of the Spanish armoury, we may fairly conclude that it did not then exist. We have seen, indeed, that the targets with pistols in them were in the Tower in the reign of Edward VI, and therefore, could not as said, have belonged to the Armada. The pikes in it were common to the English soldiery, as well as the Spaniards; and the glaives, bills, halbards, pertuisans, &c. which principally compose this collection, were used in England in the reign of Henry VIII. The instruments of torture, and the catholic banner, may have been part of the Spanish spoils; but, it is probable, that the remainder were furnished from the stores in the Tower. Indeed, it has been observed, that there was a sale by lottery of a quantity of foreign armour in the 29th of Elizabeth, which was probably that of the Armada and thus sold, to produce a part of the prize money due to the captors.\*

<sup>\*</sup> In Bughley's State Papers, Vol. II., p. 784, the lottery of armour under John Calthrop, is assigned to June 1586.

VOL III.

T

Hentzer too, visiting the Tower, in 1598, never saw so remarkable an exhibition, as Elizabeth in armour, as being so particular in describing its curiosities, and also every thing concerning her, he otherwise, would certainly not have omitted to mention it. The historians, who record her going to Tilbury to review her troops, never notice so extraordinary a circumstance, as her appearing in armour: nor, had this figure existed previous to the rebellion, would the republican principles of the Commonwealth have permitted it to have continued. This is exemplified in that beautiful equestrian statue of King Charles the First, in his armour, at Charing Cross; which was pulled down and sold to a brazier on condition of its being melted. On the examination of the armour on the figure of Elizabeth, it appears that the fluted breast-plate she has on, belonged to her father and the garde-de-reine, with the conjoined rose, did so too; but it is put on Her Majesty's abdomen. Certain it is, she could not have worn it in a sitting posture.\* So much for the Spanish armoury in the Tower: and, I cannot help lamenting that, in this enlightened age, persons visiting curiosities intrinsically valuable, as these certainly are, should continue to be deceived by such false representations. The horse armoury, is liable to the same observations: and, even George II, is represented in full armour.

The truth is this: on the restoration, it was the policy to attend to every thing that seemed likely to exhibit the kingly character with splendour.

The armour, which had been formerly in the Green gallery, at Greenwich, placed on horseback, and dignified with the names of some of the kings, gave the hint for an exhibition of this sort. The defeat of the Spanish Armada, and the noble and heroic conduct of Elizabeth previous to that occasion, could not fail of being acceptable to a nation of a military character. For the same reason, William the Conqueror, Richard I, Edward I, Edward III, John of Gaunt, and de Courcy, were all proper for representation. To excite sympathy, the lamentable fate of the young King Edward V, was worth attention: and the family of Tudors and Stuarts, were only wanted to connect the previous sentiments with the then reigning family.

Accordingly, it was not long after this survey was completed, that such a work was begun. On the death of Charles II, in 1685, it was thought that the restored constitution was pretty well established; therefore, in 1686, his face and that of Charles I, with the horses on which they are placed, were carved by Grimlin

<sup>\*</sup> I have since learnt that the figure has been made up within memory.

Gibbons, one of the best artists of his time, and their figures set up in armour, as now exhibited. In 1688, one king's face and horse were executed by William Morgan; another, by John Nort; one by Thomas Quillans, and two by Marmaduke Townson. In 1690, John Nort made five more; and, on this principle, on the 22nd of June, 1702, the face of King William III, was fashioned by Alcock.\*

The following, I find to be the actual state of the armour† composing the line of Kings:

- 1. That attributed to William the Conqueror, is of Edward the Sixth's time, or the early part of Elizabeth; it is of plain steel, commonly called white armour.
- 2. That called Edward I is also a suit of Edward the Sixth's time. The steel is blue, and the ornamental indentations, in imitation of the slashes in the dresses of that time, gilt. It has a pass-guard on the left shoulder; but its greatest curiosity, is that the insteps of the feet, are of chain-mail. In the hand is placed a martel-de-fer of the time of James I. A garde-de-bras, belonging to this suit, is affixed to the wall at the end of the room.
- 3. That said to have belonged to Edward III is a suit of white armour of Henry the Eighth's time with large pass-guards, but the helmet does not belong to it, being that of a demi-launcer. On the bridle hand, is a long armed gauntlet. The horse had on its chest a fine poitrine, now removed to a figure behind. The figure has a sword in its hand.

Most of the effigies are mounted on steel, or war saddles of Henry the Eighth's time, and have chanfrons and manefaires.

- 4. That fitted up as Henry IV is a suit of white armour, of Edward the Sixth's time. The front of the steel saddle is embossed, but never belonged to the suit, yet probably of the same period.
- 5. The suit shewn as that of Henry V. This is composed from parts of three white ones; the upper part is of the time of Charles I, while the legs, which are not fellows, are of that of Henry VII. The fans of the genouilliers are curious.

<sup>\*</sup> These curious particulars, were extracted from a M.S. in the possession of a friend of Captain Grose.

<sup>†</sup> Notwithstanding the sneers of interested individuals the Tower contains some very fine and unique specimens, and, if collected and properly arranged, the complete horse armour would be found, viz: chanfron, manefaire, steel saddle, poitrail, flanchards, and croupiere; of which two last, Mr. Gwennap's specimens are deficient, of no less than six suits, with corresponding armour of the riders; one being entirely fluted and engraved. I have had the honour of several interviews, and much correspondance with the Duke of Wellington, on the proper mode of displaying these: having made a voluntary offer of my service in the arrangement, on condition of receiving no reward; but the subject stands over, till money can be spared to put the whole in a proper receptacle.

- 6. That for Henry VI is white armour, but has the upper part like the last of Charles the First's time, and legs of Henry VIII.
- 7. Edward IV is represented in another composed suit; the upper part being of the time of Charles I, and the legs of that of Henry VIII. He has a sword in his hand.
- 8. The suit in which the head of Edward V is represented, is very beautiful, rich, and finely decorated; and was, probably, made for Henry Prince of Wales, son of James I.
- 9. Henry VII. This suit undoubtedly belonged to that monarch, being of the period, as well as having the initials, \$\mathbb{H}\$. \$\mathbb{R}\$. of gold, let into the steel lamboys on the right side. It is plain, but engraved all over, and has been washed with silver. On the breast is traced the figure of St. George, in a more antient armour, having tuilles over the cuisses; and the dragon. This suit has small pass-guards, and is altogether complete except the gauntlets, that for the bridle hand being a long one of the latter part of Henry the Eighth's time. But, what renders this the greatest curiosity in the Tower, is the lamboys or puckered petticoat being of steel, and so contrived as to reach the saddle behind, and then fall on each side. He has a Highlander's sword in his right hand.
- 10. Henry VIII, in what is said to be his own proper armour, being white and plain, but the foliages inlaid with gold. This is certainly of his time. It has, however, only one pass-guard, and the two legs are different, the toes of one projecting on each side more than the foot. This horse had, till lately, a poitrail, and he has a sword in his hand.
- 11. This figure is intended for Edward VI. The armour is very handsome; a great variety of scriptural subjects, being engraved on it in different compartments; but it seems to be one of those suits which were made for Henry, son of James I. In his right hand is a truncheon.
- 12 James I. The suit that this monarch wears has R. L. on the cuisses. On the horse's chanfron is the bear and rugged staff, figured in Grose, and there are other pieces belonging to the suit similarly ornamented. It belonged to the Earl of Warwick about the time of Queens Mary and Elizabeth. It is indented all over with his device, but is white He has a truncheon in his right hand.
- 13. King Charles I is in a rich suit of his own proper armour, gilt and curiously wrought: presented to him by the city of London when he was Prince of Wales.

- 14. King Charles II. This is a most splendid suit of armour, of the time of Edward VI. The pauldrons and elbow pieces are embossed so as to resemble lions' heads; the colours of the suit are russet and gold. This is by far the finest suit in the Tower, and would naturally be chosen for the monarch at the close of whose reign the collection was set up. He sits with a truncheon in his hand, richly caparisoned with crimson velvet laced with gold.
  - 15. William III has been put into a black and gold suit of Edward the Sixth's time, and a flaming sword in his hand. The furniture of his horse is green velvet, embroidered with silver.
- 16. George I, is in a plain suit of Henry the Eighth's time, with a truncheon in his hand. He has a Turkish bridle, gilt and ornamented with the globe, crescent, and star. The furniture of his horse is crimson velvet laced with gold and gold trappings.
  - 17. George II. A suit of Henry the Eighth's time ornamented with gilding, and a sword in his hand. The horse furniture much resembles that of the last.

That suit called de Courcy's is a demi-launcer's of Edward the Sixth's time, to which has been added a fluted helmet of Henry VII.

That called John O'Gaunt's is of Henry the Eighth's period. It is seven feet high and has pass-guards. The cod-piece belonging to it has been since removed but not lost.\*

In the small armoury, the figures called Kings John, Henry III, Henry V and Henry VI are all in suits of cavalier's armour of the time of Charles I, and the flaming swords, which they hold in their hands, are not earlier than that of Charles II.

A figure shewn in the new small armoury for Charles Brandon, Duke of Suffolk, is with his lance of the same period, as is also that armour attributed to Will Somers.

In the Spanish armoury, Queen Elizabeth has a fluted breast-plate of the time of Henry VIII, below which is a piece of armour that, without minute attention, it is impossible to understand; it covers the abdomen, and on inspection, proves to be the garde-de-reine belonging to the breast-plate, being part of the suit worn by Henry VIII, at the Battle of the Spurs, and such as occurs in the painting of that event at the apartments of the Society of Antiquaries. The armour for her arms is of Charles the First's time; and the helmet held by the page of that of Edward VI, and of an elegant shape.

<sup>\*</sup> It is engraved in Grose's Treatise.

#### At Windsor Castle

In the small guard-room are some curiously shaped grand-guards, and garde-de-bras, and muskets, bayonets, and bandileers with barred helmets, and cuirasses of the time of Charles II. In the large guard-room, or armoury are six suits, none of which are older than the time of Edward VI. One has a placard, but all want their cuishes and jambs. In the round tower are two suits, one of which belonged to Henry, Prince of Wales, son of James I; but these are in the same mutilated condition. There is also the horse's chanfron belonging to the last, on which are the royal arms, the rose and thistle, and the initials, H. P. Over the door, on the staircase, is a curious chanfron, flat and of three pieces, and an engraved steel target of Elizabeth's time, or somewhat earlier. False stories are attached to all these things.

#### At Hampton Court

There are only four grand-guards, and some steel hats or pot helmets, besides the partuisans, muskets, bandileers, &c.

#### At Woolwich

Is a collection taken from the French, being part of that formerly at the Chateau of St. Germaine, in which is the armour of the Chevalier Bayard. A mentoniere, a beautifully engraved vamplate, two curiously constructed ones with cylindrical tilts for the lances; a chanfron, an engraved shield with the Bavarian arms, a cuisse, and jambs, of the time of Elizabeth; several varieties of guns, partizans, pikes, halberts, and swords, some of which are two-handed; with two cross-bows of Henry the Seventh's time, a finely engraved salade of Henry the Seventh's time, and two or three morions of Elizabeth's.

#### The British Museum

Contains very curious specimens of Greek, Roman, and Carthaginian arms and armour, an Italian circular shield, on which is embossed the story of Brennus, of the time of Henry VIII, and an embossed casque of that of Elizabeth.

The Temple, London, and many of the provincial town halls have armour mostly of the time of Charles I.

Of private collections there are a few in England.

That of His Majesty's at Carlton House, consists chiefly of Asiatic armour,

but of the most splendid and costly kind. There is however, a Hanovarian suit of Henry the Eighth's time, one antient battle-axe said to have belonged to the Black Prince, precisely like two in my son's collection, from Vienna, and one in the Tower, wrongly called Lochaber axe.\* They are probably of the time of Henry VI, though they differ little from those used in Edward the Second's time.

There is also a most splendid embossed target at Buckingham House, presented by Maximilian I to King Henry VIII.

His Royal Highness the Duke of York has also a fine collection of Asiatic armour.

The Duke of Rutland at Belvoir Castle, possesses a small collection of Asiatic and European armour.

The Duke of Devonshire at Chatsworth.

The Earl of Warwick's collection is well known; and his fluted suit of the commencement of Henry the Eighth's time is engraved for Grose's Treatise. This armoury contains the following very curious specimens: a croupiere and poitrall, an immense chanfron of the time of Henry VI, a bacinet of the time of Edward III, a pair of pointed slippered stirrups of Henry the Sixth's reign, a Hungarian pavois, falsely called a breast-plate, of Henry the Seventh's time, a vizored wall shield of James I, and many other interesting pieces.

The Earl of Harrington has several suits of armour, &c.

The Earl of Grosvenor at Eaton Hall.

The Earl of Carlisle has also a collection at Castle Howard.

The Earl of Waldgrave has a fine embossed suit at Strawberry Hill.

The Earl of Fife.

The Earl of Arundel at Wardour Castle has a suit of armour that belonged to the celebrated Mr. Roscoe.

Lord Mount Edgcumbe has armour in Cotele House, Cornwall.

Lord Sydney at Penshurst Castle has some.

Sir Jacob Astley has some antient family specimens at Melton Constable, Norfolk.

Sir Godfrey Webster, Bart. has also a collection at Battle Abbey.

Sir George Jerningham, Bart. at Cottessey, Norfolk.

Sir Thomas Philips, Bart. has, at his seat, Middle Hall, near Evesham, Worcestershire, a collection of armour, brought from an old house belonging to him, called Buck-land, in the county of Gloucester.

<sup>\*</sup> The Lochaber axe is accurately figured in Grose's Treatise, one such being in my son's collection.

Sir Laurence Paulk, Bart. Asiatic armour in Bruton Street.

Sir Walter Scott, Bart. at Abbotsford, has an armoury which contains some curious specimens of Scotch weapons.

Sir Thomas Mostyn, Bart. at Mostyn in Flintshire, old English armour.

General Popham, Littlecot Hall, near Hungerford, Wiltshire, a large armoury.

John Murray, Esq. Commissary General, another large and interesting one at Ardleybury, Hertfordshire.

Colonel Bradyll, another collection.

J. Watts Russell, Esq. M. P. another.

Matthew Russell, Esq. M. P. of Brancepeth Castle, Durham.

Colonel Dick, a small one, but with some curious specimens.

The Right Honorable W. W. Wynne, some fine Italian armour.

Captain Fitzclarence, London.

Bernard Brocas, Esq., a large collection at Wokefield, Berkshire.

- Edgar, Esq., London.

P. V. Utterson, Esq., London.

- Wyatt, Esq., London.

W. Reader, Esq., London.

J. B. Willoughby, Esq., London.

The Rev. Mr. Mayo, Moat House, Cheshunt, Middlesex.

Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq. has a large, and probably the most instructive collection in Western Europe.

Mr. Goldwier, Bristol.

Mr. Dom. Colnaghi, London,

Mr. Gale, London.

Mr. Gwennap, a fine armoury.

There are, doubtless, several other collections of which I have not been able to get any information.

The modern French, in general,\* affect to despise collections of this nature, as shewing a barbarous and unrefined taste. But those of their savants, who had the care and arrangement of the works of art, deposited by order of the emperor, about a dozen years ago, thought armour not unworthy of being placed with the productions of the Greeks and Romans. Thus, from the XVth volume of the Annales de Musée, it appears that the hall for painting in the Museum at Paris, contained, among the captures made by the French army in 1806, and 1807, the armour falsely

<sup>\*</sup> I know some honorable exceptions.

Rudolph of Hapsbourgh,\* and that of François I, King of France, both are on barded horses. The first of these suits is of the latter part of the reign of Henry VIII, having a projecting breast-plate and square toed sollerets. The horse has a poitral and croupiere; and its neck entirely envelopped by the overlapping plates of the crivet, in the same manner as appears in some of the engravings in Rixner's Tournament-Book; the ears of the chanfron are also made to terminate in rams' horns. The armour of Francis I has pass-guards, and that of his horse consists of poitral, croupiere, mainfaire with its claps, and a chanfron. Between these two figures was heaped up a great variety of armour consisting of curious helmets, breasts, backs, justing pieces, vamplates, models of cannon, swords and other weapons surmounted by the French eagle. Over the entrance from this apartment into the gallery of Apollo was a circular shield, over which hung a gauntlet, and which was placed upon two swords, one of which had a flaming blade. In the gallery of Apollo were two other suits of armour on horseback. In the hall of the Marshalls four Bavarian justing suits, now in England; and in the Imperial library the magnificent casque of François I.†

The following extract from the Moniteur,‡ will shew the present feeling of persons of the same class; and that the contempt of armour, by the generality, is merely to cover the want of possession. D'habiles ouvriers sont occupés à nettoyer les anciennes armures qui existent au Musée d'Artillerie. Celle de François I<sup>er</sup> étant parfaitement conservée, elle sera placée au milieu de la salle principale, sur un mannequin monté sur un cheval de bataille, entièrement bardé de fer. "Skilful workmen are occupied in cleaning the antient suits of armour that existed in the Museum of Artillery. That of Francis I being perfectly preserved, will be placed in the middle of the principal hall on a lay figure, mounted on a war horse entirely barded with iron."

My acquaintance with what is to be seen on the continent, is at present very slight. It is, however, the following:

# At Berne,

In the arsenal is a complete fluted suit for man and horse of Henry the Eighth's time, said to have belonged to John Francis Nagelli, who commanded the Bernese troops in the conquest of the Pays-de-Vaud, in 1536. A heavy

<sup>\*</sup> Rudolph Count of Hapsbourgh lived in the thirteenth century, and was Landgrave of Uppe Alsace. He became Emperor of Germany in 1273, and died in the year 1291.

<sup>†</sup> This is engraved in Dibdin's Tour.

<sup>‡</sup> Le Moniteur Universel, Vendredi, 14 Décembre 1821.

double-breasted justing suit with a round vizor, wanting its legs, of the sixteenth century, but ascribed to Mæringer the founder of Berne. A genuine Swiss suit with splints in the arms, upon which the folds and slashes of the time of our Elizabeth are imitated, and several others of no great moment. Among the weapons are several battle-axes, and two superb two handed swords, one with a flaming blade, and the other sabre shaped, but with the edge, point and part of the back, sawed or indented. There is also part of a jazarine jacket ascribed to Charles the Bold.

# At Zurich,

Among other things, is an antient bombard in its original stand or carriage, and made of wood covered with leather, and strengthened with iron hoops.

## At Malta

Is the superb collection belonging to the knights, of about the same date as that in the Tower of London.

# At Hanover,

In the arsenal, are a few suits of armour and an antient iron gun, carrying a 24lbs. ball. It was cast by order of Duke Julius, in MDLXXXV, at Gittel in the Hartz. It is 19 feet 8 inches long, (Callenberg measure) and has no breach or cascable, resembling in that respect the cannon in St. James's Park brought from Egypt, but was loaded at the side. It was cast by Wildeman.

# At Berlin

Is the armour of the great Elector of Brandenburgh, and what the Prussians have taken from the French.

## At Dresden

Is probably the finest collection of armour in the world; the French having always respected the territory of Saxony, and it occupies several apartments. The justing armour is most splendidly set up.

## At Munich

The Prince of Bavaria in his taste for the arts, collects and preserves whatever comes within his reach.

#### At Vienna

The armour is deposited in a palace called the little Belvidere. Mr. Dibdin gives the following account of it.\* "We had resolved to take the Ambras or little Belvidere in our way. Both the little Belvidere and the large Belvidere rise gradually above the suburbs, and the latter may be about a mile and a half from the ramparts of the city. The Ambras contains a quantity of antient horse and foot armour, brought thither from a chateau of that name near Inspruck, and built by the Emperor Charles V. Such a collection of old armour, which had once equally graced and protected the bodies of their wearers, among whom the noblest names of which Germany can boast may be enlisted, was infinitely gratifying to me. The sides of the first room were quite embossed with suspended shields, The floor was almost filled by champions on cuirasses, and breast-plates. horseback, yet poizing the spear, or holding it in the rest; yet almost shaking their angry plumes, and pricking the fiery sides of their coursers. There rode Maximilian, and there halted Charles his son. Different suits of armour belonging to the same character, are studiously shewn you by the guide: some of these are the foot, and some the horse armour, some were worn in fight, yet giving evidence of the mark of the bullet and battle-axe; others were the holiday suits of armour, with which the knights marched in procession, or tilted at the tournament. The workmanship of the full dress suits, in which a great deal of highly wrought gold ornament appears, is sometimes quite exquisite. The second or long room, is more particularly appropriated to the foot or infantry armour. In this studied display of much that is interesting from antiquity, and splendid from absolute beauty and costliness, I was particularly gratified by the sight of the armour which the Emperor Maximilian wore as a foot-captain.† The lower part, to defend the thighs, consists of a puckered, or plated steel petticoat, sticking out at the bottom folds, considerably beyond the upper part. It is very simple and of polished steel. A fine suit of armour, of black and gold, worn by an Archbishop of Saltzburg, in the middle of the fifteenth century, had particular claims upon my admiration; it was at once chaste and effective. The mace was by the side of it.

<sup>\*</sup> The Bibliographical Antiquarian, and Picturesque Tour, Vol. III, p. 567.

<sup>†</sup> This is probably the story of the Cicerone, as it exactly resembles the armour of Henry VII in the Tower of London.

‡ I rather take this to be what Keysler thus describes in his account of the armour at the Castle of Ambras. "The cuirass and truncheon, both cast of Matthew Langen, cardinal and archbishop of Saltzburg; this martial ecclesiastic, who held the see of Saltzburg from the year 1519 to 1540, is by some, said to have been a natural son of the Emperor Maximilian I, by a very beautiful young lady of Augsburg, of the Langen family.

This room is also ornamented by trophies taken from the Turks; such as bows, spears, battle-axes, and scymitars. In short, the whole is full of interest and splendour. I ought to have seen the arsenal, which I learn is of uncommon magnificence, and although not so curious on the score of antiquity, is yet not destitute of relics of the old warriors of Germany. Among these, those which belonged to my old bibliomaniacal friend Corvinus, King of Hungary, cut a conspicuous and very respectable figure."

Of the Ambras collection a folio volume of description, with plates, was published in 1601, entitled, Armamentarium Heroicum Ambrosianum, by James Schenck, and a copy having been lent to me by my worthy friend Mr. Douce; as the work is scarce, I will give an outline of its contents. From the costume of the figures we learn that they could not have been set up above forty years before the date of this work; \* the shoes, particularly, where armour is wanting, being all of the middle of our Elizabeth's reign. The number of statues, independant of two or three Asiatics, not in armour, is 108, and they are thus named, and armed.

Albert I, Emperor of the Romans - In a suit of Queen Elizabeth's time. Frederick III, the Fair, Emperor of the In a suit of Queen Elizabeth's time.

Palatine of the Rhine, and Duke of Bavaria, 1400

1500

Charles V, Emperor of Germany

Ferdinand I, Emperor of Germany

Rupert, Emperor of the Romans, Count In a fluted suit with pass-guards and bourgonet, of the commencement of Henry the Eighth's reign.

Maximilian I, Emperor of Germany, Probably his own armour, with tuiles, and a fluted helmet like that in Plate LXIV.

> - A demi-lancer's suit of the close of his reign, with an armet petit et grand.

> - Probably a suit of his own, with a double vizored bourgonet.

Maximilian II, Emperor of Germany - In a suit of his own time, with splints, pass-guards, and cod-piece.

Ferdinand V, King of Spain, died in Apparently a made up suit of the close of Elizabeth's reign, with pointed toes after the antient fashion, but the sollerets are not attached to the jambs in a corresponding manner.

\* Probably by Ferdinand, Archduke of Austria.

Francis I, King of France	This has every appearance of being, as is
unt, the whole is full of interest and	said, the suit he wore at the Battle of
senal, which I learn is of uncommon	Pavia, but the helmet does not belong
on the score of antiquity, is yet not	magnificance, and although not so, it of one
	In a suit of the beginning of his reign.
	A cuirass with epaulettes of the close of
someomore time confubrate	
	A half suit of Elizabeth's time.
Stephen Bathoreus, King of Poland -	A half suit of Henry the Eighth's time,
	with a Turkish (or perhaps Polish)
	the work is someo, I will give show odd
Philip, Duke of Burgundy, died in 1467.	In a suit of Henry the Eighth's time.
Ferdinand Consalvus de Corduba, died	
o in 1514 chargabal sentate to radian -	of the middle of our Elizabeth's reign. The
Albert, Marquis of Brandenburgh, died	If this be his armour, it must have been
in 1486	made at the close of his government.
a suit of Queen Elizabeth's time.	It is, however, the most curious suit in
a suit of Queen Elizabeth's time.	the collection, shewing that the opening
to the same of the sould share after him of	for the saddle in the front of the steel
a fluted sait with pass-guards and	lamboys, was closed by a similar piece
bourgonet, of the commencement of	when the wearer was on foot. Its
Henry the Eighth's reign.	having splints and no pass-guards, and
obably his own amour, with tniles, and .	a bourgonot, incline me to give it a
a fluted in linet like that in Plate LXIV.	still later date. The vizor of the last
demi-lancer's suit of the close of his	is shaped like an eagle's head with
reign, with an armet petit et grand.	crimped ears.
Frederick, Count Palatine of the Rhine,	This is a fabricated suit mixed with some
1425	real armour, but of much later date.
Sigismund Pandulph Malatête	There is some reason to conjecture that
pasa-guards, and cod-piace.	this suit is of the time of Edward IV.
J. M. Fregosi of Genoa	A suit of Henry the Eighth's time.
Frederick III, Duke of Urbino -	A half suit of Henry the Eighth's time,
ofter the action fashion, but the sol-	the helmet much later.
Frederick Gonzaga, Marquis of Man-	Time of Henry VII, with tuiles, helmet
tua - comem guibuoquertos a sti	much later.
Sigismund, Archduke of Austria -	A suit of Elizabeth's time, with fabricated

of the time of Ohner Many, in the Me the	solerets, a vizored salade with its corresponding mentoniere, earlier than the rest.
Francis Gonzaga, Marquis of Mantua - A	suit of Henry the Seventh's time with tuiles.
	suit of Henry the Eighth's time with rondelles and bourgonot.
Matthew Langius, Archbishop of Saltz- A burgh	
Francis, Duke d'Urbino - A	cuirass with tassettes and casque of the time of Henry VIII.
Charles II, Duke de Bourbon - A	
John de Medici	hallecret, and a morion of Henry the Eighth's time.
Philip, Duke of Bavaria	fluted suit with pass-guards and bour-
and branched to smishing a reconst-infection	sixteenth century.  suit with rondelles and bourgonot of
country to the sand in the sand and a sand a sand	the time of Henry VIII.
Andrew Aurea Cu	f Elizabeth's time.  uirass with tassets and casque of the close of Henry the Eighth's reign.
	it of the close of Elizabeth.
	alf suit of Edward the Sixth's time, with splints.
in a total phase say but any areas.	uted suit of Henry the Eighth's time with splints, but no pass-guards, the helmet older.
A venteral la una chose of Elizabeth .	uted and engraved, with pass-guards and bourgonot of Henry the Eighth's time.
	uted with pass-guards and bourgonot of the same period.
Ferdinand Gonzaga, Duke of Arrian - Ha	alf suit with pass-guards and splints of the time of Edward VI.

Milan	
	A hallecret with epaulettes, and long-
denentració ano establecent	armed gauntlets of the time of Queen
The said a diduct salt report who acid a	Elizabeth.
Alphonso II, Duke of Ferrara	A very rich demi-launcer's suit of the
to superor but andorres alla consuma d	close of Elizabeth.
Cosmo Medici, Duke of Florence -	
Frederick, Archduke of Austria, &c	Close of Henry VIII.
	Time of Edward VI.
	Half suit of the same period.
Marc Anthony Colonna	
	A suit of Elizabeth.
da - III D L CM	
Francis II, Duke of Montmorency	Demi-lancer's armour of Edward the Sixth's time.
Henry Montmorency, Lord of Anville -	A suit of the time of Edward VI.
Charles, Archduke of Austria -	Demi-lancer's suit with splints, of the time of Henry VIII.
Sebastian, Doge of Venice, died in 1588	
Charles, Duke of Lotharingia	
	Half suit with bourgonot, close of Henry
Studed and of Bungy the Kindth's time	VIII. wie should be saidely all mande should
	Cuirass of Edward the Sixth's time, with a cavalry morion of the close of Eliza- beth's.
Alexander Farnese, Duke of Parma -	
Henry, Duc de Guise -	
	A half suit with helmet, of the close of
the search periodice of 1915 and the	: [18] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2
Matthew, Archduke of Austria	
Ferdinand, Duke of Bavaria	Suit of the close of Elizabeth.

Maximilian, Duke of Austria -	Suit of the close of Elizabeth.
Albert, Archduke of Austria -	Half suit of Queen Mary.
Nicholas Radzivil, died in 1560	Half suit of the close of Elizabeth.
Nicholas Radzivil, died in 1584	Half suit of Edward VI.
Maurice, Count of Nassau	Demi-lancer of Edward VI.
Charles of Austria	Suit of the close of Elizabeth.
Andrew, Cardinal of Austria -	Demi-lancer of Elizabeth.
Nicholas Christian Radzivil -	Half suit with pass-guards and a casque,
latti sviti ot klival deka orith splintadi i	of the time of Elizabeth.
John Zisca V- maybe-down - and sin-	Half suit of the close of Elizabeth with
sonir came alore.	a morion, and holding a morning star.
Bartholomew Cole	Cuirass of the time of Edward VI.
Eitel Frederick, Count of Zolhern -	Close of Henry VIII, with bourgonot.
Andrew, Count of Sonnenberg	Commencement of Henry the Eighth's
in a state of the	reign, with pass-guards.
	Close of Elizabeth, with a salade having
	a moveable vizor, of the time of Edward
the foguetic to recommend which will be	IV. Same would be taken at the all
Frederick, Count of Furstenburgh -	Suit with pass-guards and bourgonot,
ish and at the substitution of the state of	time of Henry VIII.
George Freundsberg	time of Henry VIII.  Demi-lancer of the close of Elizabeth,
George Freundsberg	Demi-lancer of the close of Elizabeth, with a halbert of her time.
George Freundsberg	time of Henry VIII.  Demi-lancer of the close of Elizabeth, with a halbert of her time.  Cuirass of the close of Elizabeth.
George Freundsberg  Ulrick of Schellenberg  William, Baron Rogendorf	time of Henry VIII.  Demi-lancer of the close of Elizabeth, with a halbert of her time.  Cuirass of the close of Elizabeth.  Hallecret of Henry VIII.
George Freundsberg  Ulrick of Schellenberg  William, Baron Rogendorf -  Marc Sitichius of the Upper Ems	time of Henry VIII.  Demi-lancer of the close of Elizabeth, with a halbert of her time.  Cuirass of the close of Elizabeth.  Hallecret of Henry VIII.  Hallecret of Henry VIII.
George Freundsberg  Ulrick of Schellenberg  William, Baron Rogendorf -  Marc Sitichius of the Upper Ems  Camillus Ursini	time of Henry VIII.  Demi-lancer of the close of Elizabeth, with a halbert of her time.  Cuirass of the close of Elizabeth.  Hallecret of Henry VIII.  Hallecret of Henry VIII.  A cuirass of the time of Elizabeth.
George Freundsberg  Ulrick of Schellenberg  William, Baron Rogendorf -  Marc Sitichius of the Upper Ems  Camillus Ursini  Anthony Leyva	time of Henry VIII.  Demi-lancer of the close of Elizabeth, with a halbert of her time.  Cuirass of the close of Elizabeth.  Hallecret of Henry VIII.  Hallecret of Henry VIII.  A cuirass of the time of Elizabeth.  A suit with pass-guards of the close of
George Freundsberg  Ulrick of Schellenberg  William, Baron Rogendorf  Marc Sitichius of the Upper Ems -  Camillus Ursini  Anthony Leyva	time of Henry VIII.  Demi-lancer of the close of Elizabeth, with a halbert of her time.  Cuirass of the close of Elizabeth.  Hallecret of Henry VIII.  Hallecret of Henry VIII.  A cuirass of the time of Elizabeth.  A suit with pass-guards of the close of Henry VIII, with an armet petit et
George Freundsberg  Ulrick of Schellenberg  William, Baron Rogendorf  Marc Sitichius of the Upper Ems -  Camillus Ursini  Anthony Leyva	time of Henry VIII.  Demi-lancer of the close of Elizabeth, with a halbert of her time.  Cuirass of the close of Elizabeth.  Hallecret of Henry VIII.  Hallecret of Henry VIII.  A cuirass of the time of Elizabeth.  A suit with pass-guards of the close of Henry VIII, with an armet petit et grand.
George Freundsberg  Ulrick of Schellenberg  William, Baron Rogendorf  Marc Sitichius of the Upper Ems -  Camillus Ursini  Anthony Leyva	time of Henry VIII.  Demi-lancer of the close of Elizabeth, with a halbert of her time.  Cuirass of the close of Elizabeth.  Hallecret of Henry VIII.  Hallecret of Henry VIII.  A cuirass of the time of Elizabeth.  A suit with pass-guards of the close of Henry VIII, with an armet petit et grand.  Demi-lancer of Henry VIII.
George Freundsberg  Ulrick of Schellenberg  William, Baron Rogendorf  Marc Sitichius of the Upper Ems -  Camillus Ursini  Anthony Leyva  Conrad of Bemelberg  Aliprand, Baron Brenton	time of Henry VIII.  Demi-lancer of the close of Elizabeth, with a halbert of her time.  Cuirass of the close of Elizabeth.  Hallecret of Henry VIII.  Hallecret of Henry VIII.  A cuirass of the time of Elizabeth.  A suit with pass-guards of the close of Henry VIII, with an armet petit et grand.  Demi-lancer of Henry VIII.  Half suit of the close of Elizabeth.
George Freundsberg  Ulrick of Schellenberg  William, Baron Rogendorf  Marc Sitichius of the Upper Ems -  Camillus Ursini  Anthony Leyva  Conrad of Bemelberg  Aliprand, Baron Brenton  Sebastian of Burtenbach	time of Henry VIII.  Demi-lancer of the close of Elizabeth, with a halbert of her time.  Cuirass of the close of Elizabeth.  Hallecret of Henry VIII.  Hallecret of Henry VIII.  A cuirass of the time of Elizabeth.  A suit with pass-guards of the close of Henry VIII, with an armet petit et grand.  Demi-lancer of Henry VIII.  Half suit of the close of Elizabeth.  Half suit of Edward VI.
George Freundsberg  Ulrick of Schellenberg  William, Baron Rogendorf  Marc Sitichius of the Upper Ems -  Camillus Ursini  Anthony Leyva  Conrad of Bemelberg  Aliprand, Baron Brenton  Sebastian of Burtenbach  Francis Chastelhault	time of Henry VIII.  Demi-lancer of the close of Elizabeth, with a halbert of her time.  Cuirass of the close of Elizabeth.  Hallecret of Henry VIII.  Hallecret of Henry VIII.  A cuirass of the time of Elizabeth.  A suit with pass-guards of the close of Henry VIII, with an armet petit et grand.  Demi-lancer of Henry VIII.  Half suit of the close of Elizabeth.  Half suit of Edward VI.  Half suit of Henry VIII.
George Freundsberg	Demi-lancer of the close of Elizabeth, with a halbert of her time. Cuirass of the close of Elizabeth. Hallecret of Henry VIII. Hallecret of Henry VIII. A cuirass of the time of Elizabeth. A suit with pass-guards of the close of Henry VIII, with an armet petit et grand. Demi-lancer of Henry VIII. Half suit of the close of Elizabeth. Half suit of Edward VI. Half suit of Henry VIII. Half suit of the close of Elizabeth. Half suit of the close of Elizabeth.
George Freundsberg	time of Henry VIII.  Demi-lancer of the close of Elizabeth, with a halbert of her time.  Cuirass of the close of Elizabeth.  Hallecret of Henry VIII.  Hallecret of Henry VIII.  A cuirass of the time of Elizabeth.  A suit with pass-guards of the close of Henry VIII, with an armet petit et grand.  Demi-lancer of Henry VIII.  Half suit of the close of Elizabeth.  Half suit of Edward VI.  Half suit of Henry VIII.

Charles Gonzaga III - ocolo - 11 10 11-2	A half suit of splints, and casque of the
	time of Queen Mary. Malana and A
Peter Strozza the Florentine	A half suit with a target of the close of
Half suit of Edward VI.	Queen Elizabeth. In Avishall adodolis
Sforza, Marquis of Corte Majore	A whole suit of Elizabeth's time.
Gabriel Sorbellon of Milan	A cuirass with pauldrons, long gauntlets,
Demi-lancer of Elizabeth.	and triple ridged casque of the time of
	Henry VIII. Visiball antichel anfodolis
Daniel Ranzovius desil - 10 sm - sdi 10-	Half suit of Elizabeth, with splints.
John Ranzovius and - od lo- doe 10-11	Demi-lancer's of Edward VI, armet petit
	et grand.
Augustin Barbadico of Venice	Half suit of splints, of the time of Mary.
Francis Duodus of Venice	Half suit of Edward VI.
James Superans of Venice	Half suit of Edward VI.
Cornelius Bentivoglio - and di - angion-	Half suit of Edward VI.
Guido Bentivoglio	Half suit of Edward VI. From trodon
Sforza, Count of St. Flore	Half suit with cuisses of Edward the
NI.	Sixth's time.
Cincius Capisuchio ma - and - liw the	Cuirass of the close of Elizabeth.
Ascanius Corneus IIIV- vinoH-20 smil-	Half suit of Elizabeth.
Wolfgan Theodore of Ems	Half suit fluted with the vizor of the bour-
with a halbert of her time.	gonot in the shape of a face, Henry
Cuirass of the close of Elizabeth:	Ulrick of Schollenberg
James Malatête VV - WW	Half suit with cuisses, of the time of Eli-
Hallogret of Henry VIII.	zabeth. If you'll out to autionic out.
Galeatius Pregosius	A suit of the close of Elizabeth.
Lazari Schvend, Baron Hohenlandsperg.	Of the close of Henry VIII, with a casque.
Lazari Schvend, Baron Hohenlandsperg. Charles, Baron Zierolin	
	Of the close of Henry VIII, with a casque.
Charles, Baron Zierolin	Of the close of Henry VIII, with a casque. Half suit of splints of the time of Mary. Demi-lancer of the middle of Henry VIII.
Charles, Baron Zierolin  John Ferenberger	Of the close of Henry VIII, with a casque.  Half suit of splints of the time of Mary.  Demi-lancer of the middle of Henry VIII.
Charles, Baron Zierolin  John Ferenberger  Andrew, Baron Gundersdorf  Andrew de	Of the close of Henry VIII, with a casque. Half suit of splints of the time of Mary. Demi-lancer of the middle of Henry VIII. Cuirass of the middle of Henry VIII, hel-
Charles, Baron Zierolin  John Ferenberger  Andrew, Baron Gundersdorf  Jacob, Count de Haultamise  Jacob, Count de Haultamise	Of the close of Henry VIII, with a casque.  Half suit of splints of the time of Mary.  Demi-lancer of the middle of Henry VIII.  Cuirass of the middle of Henry VIII, helmet much later.

LONDON:
PRINTED BY G. SCHULZE,
13, POLAND STREET.

Committee of the Commit Charles of Control of the Control of . A dear the manufacture of the contract of the the first the second of the se the sympological property of the property of adaptive to

# a slossary

Of such Military Terms of the middle Ages as are either not explained, or not fully so, in this Work.

ABSCIDILIUM. A knife for cutting the hoofs of horses.

Ac or HAG. To hack or cut with a stroke; hence, an axe.

Acanzi. A peculiar species of volunteer guards among the Turks. Thus Jovius, Vol. I, B. 14, In lævo Sinam Bassam eunuchum cum Asiatico equitatu constituit antecedentibus acanzis, qui sunt voluntariæ militiæ equites, ex vario gentium genere, spe prædæ ad bellum acciti.

ACCAYRA. A species of fight among slingers.

Accetta. A battle-axe or hache-d'armes. In the constitutions of Charles II King of Sicily, occurs: Qui cum ronchâ ferreâ, accetta, manaria, cultello quocumque, quemquam percusserit.

ACCIATUS. A large and sharp knife, so shaped as to rescind; hence,

Acciatus pugio, conjungo novacula cultris Cultellosque, spatas, rasoria, jungimus illis.

The poet Dante uses azza in this sense: acetta, Italian; hache, French; hatchet, English. Acha, Achia. A battle-axe. In 1488. Armati cum achiis, partesanis, &c.

ACTILE. A military implement generally. It seems to have had its origin from the French outil.

Adobare. To intrust with arms; to confer the military girdle. A corruption of adoptare. In the old statutes of Padua, which are extant in the public registry of that city, occurs the expression, Faciat se fieri militem adobatum, the meaning, therefore, is clearly "adopted into the military class." Robert Bourron, in his MS. History of Merlin and Arthur, has

Or aten jusques à le matin que je t'adouberay et te donray arms. So the Roman de Garin:

Adouber vueil l'enfant Girert mon fil, Si m'aidera ma guerre à maintenir. C'est bien à fere. Sire, dit, Auberi, Envoyez-le l'Empereres Pepin Si fera bien chevalier le meschin.

Again:

Adoubês moi, biax oncles, dit Garin, Et dit Fromond, volentiers biax amis, Or vos alez bagnier et revestir, &c.

In the MS. Roman de Girard de Vienne is-

Mes d'une chose me dites verité, Se onques fûtes chevalier adobé.

The MS. Roman d'Auberi has-

Sire, dit-elle, pour Deu de Paradis Soit adoubez mes freres Auberis.

Le Roman de Florimond (MS.)-

Sire je suis à vous venus Asses fu grans, fors et creus, Or si voudroie estre adoubez.

The Roman de Gaydon, in MS., has-

Là me fist-il chevalier adoubés.

Whence it is clear that our expression, "dubbed a knight," is to be derived, rather than from the candidate's shoulders being struck with the blade of the sword.

Adramire. To warn, by promising to decide the matter by duel. This was called arramire bellum in curiâ; in French, aramir bataille; and in Spanish, the order for a duel was termed "nostre lettres de arramimentes de batailles." The Chronicle of Bertrand du Guesclin, MS. has—

Si non li Sarazin de combattre aramis.

In the MS. of Baldwin de Condato the expression is aramir un tournois, "to challenge to a tournament;" thus:

Et il est entre deus rens mis Ainsque tournois soit aramis.

AGIADES. Turkish pioneers, who not only cleared the roads but fortified the camps. Chalco-condyles thus speaks of them: Sunt in castris et alii ex Asiâ oriundi pedites, qui agiades nominantur, quorum opera rex utitur ad itinera purganda, et ad castra communienda, nec non ad alia, quibus in castris opus est.

Agonizare. To attack a place; whence a warrior was sometimes called agonista, and agonizeta.

AGUINIA. A corruption of ingenia, machines for war, whence our word engines.

Aguzo. The point of a spear, sometimes used for the spear itself; hence the Italian word aguzzare, to sharpen like a spear.

Alabarda, Albardacha. A weapon uniting the axe and the spear, particularly used by the Helvetii and Germans. Jovius, in his History, thus speaks of them: Arma eorum erant breves gladii atque hastæ fraxineæ denum pedum, angusto præfixæ ferro. Quarta ferme eorum pars ingentibus securibus, quarum è summo quadrata cuspis prominebat instructa. Has cæsim punctimque feriendo ambabus manibus regebant. Alabardæque eorum lingua vocabantur. Cluverius also, in his Antiquities of Germany, says: Quod vocabulum hallebard nihil aliud significat, quam securim Palatinam, quâ regum nune principumque satellites et corporum custodes armantur; Halle quippe est atrium palatii veteri Germanorum sive Celtarum vocabulo et Bard securis. It is not, however, because it was used in a hall that it was so named, the etymology signifies cleave-all. In a letter, dated 1448, it is likened to the gisarme: thus, Ung baston appellée une hallebarde ou gisarme. William of Malmsbury seems to consider this species of arms as of Danish origin.

Alapa. The military blow given on making a knight by striking him three times on the shoulders with the blade of a sword, by which he was, as it were, manumitted from the prohibition of bearing arms. In the Ceremoniale Romanum, lib. 1. s. 7. which relates to the knights made by the sovereign pontiff, is said: "Tum accipiens illius ensem nudum ter militem percutit plane super spatulas, dicens, Esto miles pacificus, strenuus, fidelis, et Deo devotus." Lambertus Ardensis says, Eidam comiti in signum militiæ gladium lateri, et calcaria sui militis aptavit, et alapam collo ejus inflixit. And in another place, Licet enim militarem nondum recipisset alapam in armis tamen strenuus erat. It was also called colaphum, from collo; and hence, in the Norman writers, colées. The MS. of Huë de Tabarie, entitled, l'Ordene de Chevalerie, has—

Et en après li demanda
S'il falloit plus nulle cose,
Sire, oil, mais faire ne l'ose,
Que chou est dont? chest li colée
Pourquoy ne me l'avés donnee?
Et dit la senefianche
De celuy qui l'a adoubé
A chevalier et ordonné, &c.

The Roman de Garin describes the same ceremony thus:

Huë demande froberge au Pont d'Orfin Regnautla ceint qui volontiers le fist Hauce la paume, ens el col le feri, Par un petit, que il ne l'abati.

The Vetus Ceremoniale de Militari Inauguratione, says: Lors le prince ou aucun Seigneur chevalier luy donne la colée, et luy ceint l'espée dorée.

Alarica. A powerful spear, having a triangular head.

Albalista. A cross-bow. The word is used by Henry of Knighton, under the year 1339. The Norman writers call it aubaleste and arbaleste. In the liberties granted to the town of Vitré, by Theobald Earl of Champagne, in 1220, occurs the following: Chascuns de la commune de Vitré, qui aura vaillant 20 livres, aura aubeleste en son ostel, et quarriaux jusque 50. So in the MS. Roman de Garin.

Une aubelestre trois fois ne tireroit mie.

From the Norman word arbalestrier came alabastarius, which Simeon Dunelm. uses, in the time of Henry I, for a cross-bowman: Eminebat machina, unde sagittari, et alabastarii præliabantur.

ALBENDA. A Spanish word in which is prefixed the Arabic article al. It signifies a band to which a sword is appended, and is the same as the French baudrier, and English baudrick. The Liber regulæ Monast. Legerensis has, Quos cùm benè dixisset dedit Sancio fratri suo quatuor albendas, et unam cortinam, et tria cornua, et spatam cum vaginâ, loricam cum collare de auro, diadema de capite suo, scutum et lanceam cum camo, freno et sellâ, duas tendas, et duas ciclades.

ALBERC. A cuirass, called by the Germans, auber, hauberg, and halsberg.

Albergellum, Albergio, and Albergio. The haubergeon. In the ordinances of France, in 1275, Balistæ vero, et quarelli, torni, scuta, loricæ, albergiones, perpuncta, &c.; and in an inventory, dated 1255, Prætereà inveni in dictis bonis quinque albergions, et unum alberc, et tres balistas et unam contrepointe. In the year 1336, in an account in Dauphiny: Item tres albergiones valoris 6 sol. grossarum. Hence an inn for the reception of soldiers was called albergagium, auberge.

ABERJONATUS. Haubergeonné, formed of work like that in haubergeons. In 1343, in the Libert. Brianzon it occurs.

Alberia. A shield without ornament or armorial bearings, so called from being white. Festus says: "Because used by the Albenses."

Alborium or Aubor. A hazel-bow, called arc de aubour. In a Norman charter occurs: Julianus arcuarius habet pro 10 sagittis et arcum de aubore cum cordâ. It is also called alburnum; and, falsely, because used on board a ship, arc à galees.

Alebastrarii. Cross-bowmen. In a letter, dated 1218, is Et tot arma alebastrariorum et sagittariorum in illo castro invenimus.

ALEMELLA, ALIMELLA. A kind of knife. In a letter of the year 1357, Cum ratione certorum cutellorum seu alemellarum, Gallicè alemelles—lis, seu verba irascibilia moventur. It also signifies a blade.

Alfaquaquus. A Spanish word, implying one who redeemed captives. Such a person was always entitled to carry his banner erect when he went on the king's highway.

Alferus. A Spanish standard-bearer. Italian, alfieri. The banner was called alferana.

Alfoces same as Alfozio. A Spanish bailiff or castellan.

ALGARA. A Spanish word, implying a military tumult. In a charter of Dionysius King of

Portugal, in 1267: Omnes milites qui fuerint in fossado vel in guarina de cavallos, qui se perdiderint in algara vel in lida.

ALGARU and ALGARUM. The name which the Moors gave to their expeditions against the Christians.

ALLABARDERIUS. A halbardier.

Almocadenus. A Spanish captain of infantry.

Almogavares, Almugavari. Spanish troops celebrated for their bravery.

A L'OSTEL. A cry of the heralds at tournaments, commanding the combatants to quit the lists, and retire to their lodgings.

ALVA. The flap of a military saddle. Rigord, in the year 1215, says: Ibi percussus fuit in aliâ acie Michael de Harmes à quadam Flandrensi lancea per scutum, loricam, et femur, et consutus fuit alveæ sellæ et equo, et ità tàm ipse quàm equus corruerunt in terram.

ALUNCALDI. The body-guards of the soldan were thus called.

Amanganare. To eject stones, wood, or any thing else, from the machines called mangana. The Chronicle of Parma, A.D. 1309, has Bononienses vero venerunt in auxilium Ferrariæ, et castrametati sunt ab alio latere Padi, et amanganabant Venetianos existentes cum suo exercitu in Pado cum navibus.

Ammentare. To throw a javelin, from amentum, the thong, by which they were darted. An Ode of Gilo Paris, on the expedition to Jerusalem, has—

Cumque super murum turrim Dux fortis haberet, Quæ munita parum castro vicinius hæret, Incumbebat ei sævissima turba, resumtis Viribus, ammentant Arabes de culmine montis.

Ancile. In the Glossarium Aniciense it is explained to be a square shield, but other authorities regard it as a buckler. Ovid says:

Idque ancile vocat quod ab omni parte recisum, Quemque notes oculis, angulus omnis abest.

For the ancilia of the antients, see Montfaucon's Antiq. expl. par figures.

Anelacius. The anelacio, or anelace. Matt. Paris says: Lorica erat indutus, gestans anelacium ad lumbare.

Angones. Spears made by the French. They are thus described by Agathia, lib. 1. "The angones are short weapons, the greater part of which is covered with iron, so that scarce any thing appears of the wood but indications; in the upper part of the iron they are formed as hooks on both sides which bend downwards." Pachymer also notices these weapons, lib. XII, c. 30. Ιταλικοῖς τόξοις καθοπλισμένοι, ἀυτοὶ δὲ μετὰ ωελτῶν, καὶ παλτῶν ἐπιχωρίων δοράτων, ἄ δή τό ωαλαιὸν ἄγγονες ἐκαλῦντο, τον πόλεμον ἀνεθὰρρῶν.

Anse des Pieces. A French term for the handles of cannons. These serve to pass cords through for moving them, and are generally made like dolphins, &c. Brass cannons only have them, and they are two in number.

- Answer. The knight or gentleman who kept the lists at a tournament or joust was called the tenant, and he was bound to encounter or answer such comers as came within the conditions of the sport, which conditions were always proclaimed by the heralds some days before the tournament took place. In the Paston Letters, Vol. II, p. 4, occurs:

  "My Lord the Bastard took upon hym to answere xxiv knyts and gentylmen."
- Antebrachia. Armour for the lower arms, called, by the French, avant-bras; and by the English corruptedly vambraces.
- Antegarda. In French avant-garde, in English van-guard. In the Gesta Lud. VII, king of France, it is said: Mos erat in exercitu quod unus de magnis baronibus faciebat quotidiè antegardam, et alius retrogardam, cum sufficiente numero militum. Thos. Walsingham says: The ulterior guard was that quam wardam vocant. It was the duty of the seneschal to appoint the van and rear guards.
- Antella, Antella, Antella. The pectoral of a horse, generally called the poitral, as the croupieres or buttock-pieces were termed postela and postilena. Thus Isidore, in his Greek and Latin Glossary, says Antelena, διαφησίης, δ ἐσίν ἱμὰς ἣππων ωτερὶ τὸ σῆνθος. It occurs in the Golden Bull of Charles IV, Emperor of Germany, c. 27.
- Antema. The upper part of the car in which the Italian armies placed their standards. Orlando of Padua thus speaks: De factis in Marchia Tarvisina, lib. IV, c. 9. Tunc accessit unus de popularibus Paduæ, nomine Jacobinus Texta ad cendatum pendens de sublimi antema carrocii, et capiens ipsum cendatum seu vexillum ambabus manibus Domini Imperatoris, et ait: Hoc tibi Domine potentissime, tuum Commune Paduæ repræsentat.
- Antemurale. An exterior entrenchment surrounding the walls of a castle or city, sometimes termed præmurale; at present the outworks.
- Antepectus. The parapet of castle-walls, called by the French avantpiech; and by the Spaniards antepecho. A statute, dated 1357, has: "et facere avantpiech cum merletis."
- Antesignanus. The guard who precedes the standard.
- Antestature. An intrenchment of palisades or sacks of earth thrown up in order to dispute the remainder of a piece of ground.
- Antevallatum. The exterior ditch of a castle or city. Thus, in the ordinance of the king of France, 1358: Et quòd possint construere et reparare muros dictæ villæ, barbacanas, pontes, plateas vacuas et alias fortalicias, et vallata, et antevallata ejusdem.
- Antia. The iron on a shield which forms the handle.
- Antiparies. A wall raised to oppose another. Matt. West. A.D. 1304, says: Immensa quidem tormenta ictu unius lapidis, duos antiparietes de arce, in vertice rupis fundatos, quasi sagitta per filum advolans, perforarunt.
- Antipodium. The anterior part of saddles on which the riders rested their hands. Albertinus Mussatus, lib. xii, de Gest. Ital. says: Ut in equis in curia Domini considentes, plerumque et super sellarum antipodiis dormitantes descensum Domini expectarent. In common language they were called appogiars.

APALANCARE. Italian, palancare; to fortify with palisades. It is so used in the Chronicle of Parma, A.D. 1295.

Arbalestarius. The captain of the cross-bowmen.

Arbalestena. Loop-holes in castle-walls for those having arbalests to shoot their quarrels through, while at the same time they are protected by their narrow form.

Arbalete a Jalet. A cross-bow, to shoot stones.

Arbalista. The arcubalista, or cross-bow.

Arbalisteria. Loop-holes for cross-bowmen. A charter, dated 1239, has: Domum nostram de Cheeigneio asseguravimus domino comiti Montisfortis tali modo: quod non possumus habere in eodem archeriam, nec arbalisteriam, neque cernelium, neque scutum.

ARCARII. Archers. In the Chron. of Bertrand du Guesclin English archers are thus commended: Et sans les bons archiers du bon pays Anglois. They were also called arcatores, archatores, and arcerii. This formidable class of infantry seems to have been known, but neglected, by the Saxons. The Danes, a seafaring people, made more use of them; and the Normans are said to be indebted to them for their victory at Hastings. The archers in the time of Henry VI, were engaged to serve for a stated time, and some were, by their indenture, to be mounted. Their pay was sixpence a day.

ARCHABUSIUM. The harquebuss.

Archegaye, Archigaie. A short kind of lance or sword, of Arabic origin. In a letter, dated 1358: Dictus exponens Robertum quemdam gladium, vocatum archigaie, in manibus suis tenentem percepit. In another, dated 1376: Idem, miles verbis certis injuriosis præcedentibus, dictum Bertrandum quâdam lanceâ, secundum ydioma patriæ archegaye nuncupata, percussit in femore, taliter quòd, præfatus Bertrandus circa xv dies ultimum diem suum clausisse dicitur. In 1455, we meet with Ung baston ferré appellé arsegaye.

Archeria. Loop-holes in the castle-walls for the archers to shoot through. They differed from the arbalisteria in being merely perpendicular without any transverse aperture. Le Roman du Renard, MS. has—

Les archieres sont a quarniax Par où il traient les quarriax A domager la gent le Roi.

They were called by the Greeks τοξική φωλαγωγός, or bow-lights. They were sometimes used for viewing the positions of the enemy, for William of Tyre says: Cil de la ville regardoient par archieres, et par les hourdeis la contenance de l'ost. So in the Gesta Lud. VII<sup>mi</sup>. Reg. Franc. In limitibus strictis murorum ambitu interclusis, erant Turci, qui per fenestriculas longas et strictas, quas archerias vocant, nostros lanceis et sagittis infestabant. The word also implies the service of archery which tenants owed to the lord of a castle.

Archetens. From arci-tenens, a mounted archer. Thus, in the rolls of the duchy of Normandy:

Usque ad valorem duorum militum sagittariorum per annum, per homagium inveniendo
quatuor homines ad equitandum, cum octo archetentibus ad equitandum.

ARCHIMETATOR. The principal person to mark out an encampment, and to find quarters for soldiers, like the modern quartermaster.

Arcistes. An archer. Aldhelm Abbot of Malmsbury says: Utpote belliger in meditullio campi arcistes, nervosis tenso lacertorum volis arcu spiculisque ex pharetra exemptis.

Arcobalista. From arcus and βαλλεῖν, a bow-caster, or cross-bow, either as a machine or to use in the hand. The last kind were called by the Greeks χειροβαλλίξηςα.

ARCTIO. The arçon de la selle, or bow of the saddle. The later Greeks called them κούρβια.

ARCUARE. To draw a bow.

Arcubalistarius. Both the user and fabricator of cross-bows were so called. The Chartulary Sancti Vincentii Cenoman: has, Sicut viderunt testes subscripti, Herbertus ipse arcubalistarius, &c.

Arcubalistus. A cross-bow. Rymer, Vol. IV, p. 367, has: Centum arcubalistos ad pedem, et viginti arcubalistos ad troll.

ARCUBIE. Those who keep watch in the citadel or keep.

ARCUBIUS. A soldier qui cubat in arce, or guards the keep.

ARCUS DE AUBOUR. From the Roman de Garin it seems to have been applied to the cross-bow, thus:

#### Arc d'aubour porte, et sajetes d'acier.

Arganella. A military engine fitted with tubes for projecting missiles and the Greek fire, called also arganette. Cotgrave, in the year 1197, has: Venerunt super collem Grisellum cum balistris grossis de molinellis et arganellis, rocchetas in castro trahentes in tanta copia quod aer videbatur accensus. Froissart calls it aquereau. Ordonnerent à porter canons en avant; et à traire en aquereaux et à feu Grégois.

ARIETATIO. The shock given by the battering-ram.

Arma Plena. The full complement of arms. What this was is pointed out by the Old Costumier of Normandy: Se aucun est attaint de teles querelles contre chevalier, il leur doit amender par plaines armes, et ce est par le cheval et par le hauberc, par l'escu et par l'espée et par le heaume. Se cil à qui le mesfet fut fet, n'est pas chevalier, ne il n'a point de fieu de hauberc, mes il deffent son fieu par plaines armes, l'amende l'y doit estre fete par un roncin, par un gambiex, par un chapel, et par une lance, et par ces choses doit-il fere satisfaction de l'amende.

Arma Tormentalia. The arms used at tournaments. The epitaph of Roger Mortimer, in the Monast. Ang. Vol. II, p. 229, has tormentum for torneamentum thus:

## Militum scivit, semper tormenta subivit.

Arma Gentilitia. The paintings on shields and surcoats. The custom of putting some mark on the shield is of the highest antiquity, and such distinctions were like the banners which marked the twelve tribes of Israel. Virgil says:

..... Et pictis Arcades armis.

And lib. x-

Astur equo fidens et versicoloribus armis.

This adoption of a mark was merely for the sake of distinction, but hereditary armorial bearings are not of an earlier date than Henry the Second's time. When arms came to be borne by a whole family, cognizances were contrived for individual distinction, and were adopted at the option of the party.

Arma amputere. The loss of a shield in battle was the greatest possible disgrace. Hence the Spartan matrons exhorted their sons either to come back with their shields or on them. In the middle ages such persons were obliged to perform some new feat before they were permitted again to sit down to table with the knights. "For," says Salanova apud Hieronymum Blancam, "the custom is, that no one but a knight can sit down at table with a knight; for if any presumed, the duty of the heralds was to tear their cloaks." William Heda gives the best account of this ceremony, in the year 1395. Comiti Ostrevandiæ Willelmo mensæ Regis Francorum assidenti cum aliis principibus, fecialem quem heraldum vocant, lacerasse mantile sibi antepositum, objicientem indignum fore, quod aliquis interesset mensæ regiæ carens insignis armorum, innuentem insignia ipsius Willelmi, apud Frisios Orientales amissa.

Arms reversed, a sign of degradation. Thos. Walsingham, p. 192, says:
Inter proba vero quæ duci intulerat, arma ejus in foro sunt publicè renversata. The
Chronicle of Bertrand du Guesclin has:

Oy, dist l'escuier, regardés la douleur, Les armes de Bertrand, où tant de vigueur, Ont penduë laidement, ainsi come trahiteur, Et traisnée aussi au long d'un quarrefort, Et les ont enversée, en monstrant par frenour Que Bertrand de Glaiequin a cuer de boisoeur.

Of Hugh Spencer we are told, by Henry de Knighton, "et primo vestierunt cum uno vestimento cum armis suis reversatis." See also Selden's Titles of Honor, p. 789.

Armacudium. A species of offensive weapon. It is mentioned in Rymer, Vol. XV, p. 360. Vi et armis, videlicet gladiis, armacudiis, lanceis, arcubus et sagittis, loricis, deploidibus, galeis ferreis, tormentis, sive vibrellis vulgariter vocatis canons. Again at p. 544.

Armada. A Spanish term for a large fleet of ships of war.

Armadilla. A Spanish term for a small squadron.

Armare. To confer arms, to make a person a knight, to put on the military girdle. Ordericus Vitalis says: Ibi Guillelmus Clito Roberti Ducis Normannorum filius armatus est.

Armarius. An armorer. The maker of armour was so called, as well as those attached to the camps, whose duty it was to mend such arms as became out of order.

Armata. An army. A charter of Roger king of Sicily has: facere teneatur armatam per mare, vel per terram.

Armator. One who had the care of the arms in an armory. The Leges Palatinæ of James II

king of Majorca say: Ne videlicet corrodantur rubigine, vel alio eventu forinseco consumantur; ordinamus ad armorum nostrorum custodiam, unum deputari hominem idoneum et fidelem, qui armator ab officii convenientià nuncupetur. In later times there were serjeants and masters of the royal armories.

Armatorium. An armory, or place where arms are kept.

Arms themselves, what the Greeks term πανοπλία, "armour." Also the exercise of arms. In the Liberties of Briançon, A.D. 1343, is: Medietas cum balistis, et alia medietas cum lanceis pennonis munitus sufficienter, et omnes de dicto numero cum propointis, gorgeriis, chirotecis ferreis seu platis, alberjonatis malliæ competentibus, ense, cultello, et aliis necessariis. It is also an appellation given to the soldiers who were light armed; but Aquinus seems, without reason, to confine it to the tyrones or recruits.

Armerii. Fabricators of arms.

Armeurarius. An armorer.

Armicola. One who follows the profession of arms; a knight.

Armigeri. Shield-bearers, the shield being particularly denominated arms by the Latins. In the middle ages, those who bore the shields of the knights were thus called, as well as scutigeri, escuyeres, and esquires, because the armour being so very heavy they could not well bear this additional weight except in action. Thus, William Guiart says:

Trois escuiers qui portent lor escus, Et en lor poins les rois espies molus, Devant eux moinent les auferans quernus.

From which, it appears, that it was their duty to lead the war-horses for the knights by the right hand to the field, while the knight rode on a palfrey. The same poet says:

Ces chevaliers a lor ostez venir, Ces blans haubers endosser et vestir Les escuiers ces bons chevaux tenir.

The Roman de Merlin or Robert de Bourron thus speaks: "Et li valés saut avant sur son ronchin, et maine le destrier en destre, et Baudemagus monte seur son palefroi tous armées, fors de son escu, et de son glaive, qui li valés li porte; the valet here implying the esquire, though in general these offices were performed by two persons:

Armilausa, Armigaisia, Armilaus vestis tantum humeris clausa et antè et retrò divisa, vel vestis tantum humeros tegens, sicut scapulare monachorum. Paulinus, in his 7th Epistle, has: Sibi ergo ille habeat armilausam suam, et suas caligas, et suas buccas.

Armillum, Armilla, Armellum. Bracelets, which were worn by most nations that had their arms bare. The Greeks, Romans, Britons, Danes, Irish, and Saxons, all considered these as military ornaments. See Dudo de Act. Norman, lib. 1, p. 64, 65, William of Malmsbury, and many other authors.

ARMITES. The troops who were in the rear ranks, ὁπλίται οἱ ἐν ἐσχὰτη τάξει.

Armes a L'epreuve. Such armour as was pistol proof.

Arming Points. Short ends of strong twine with points like laces: they were fixed principally under the armpits and bendings of the arms and knees, to fasten the gussets of mail which defended those parts of the body, otherwise exposed.

Armyng-Doublet. A doublet used in war. Sir John Paston sent for a deacon's vestment of white damask to convert into one, white being the field of the Paston arms. "Item I praye you to sende me a newe vestment off whyght damaske ffor a dekyn, whyche is among myn other geer; I will make an armyng doublet of it." Paston Letters, Vol. II, p. 140.

Arnense. What the French termed harnois, and the English harness, i. e. the armour of a warrior. A computation, in the year 1333, in Dauphiny, has: Item pro paribus duobus de arnense de mallâ unc. III. taren. vi. Item pro arnense uno de mallâ de aczario, &c.

Arnesia. Arnesia armorum, provision of arms. This occurs in a charter in the year 1423.

Arnesium, the same as Arnense. In an account, dated 1334: Julii pro una pelle viridi missa ad dominum per Cotarellum ad faciendum corrigias in arnesio suo. Hence the word signified preparations for war. Cum magno arnese equorum, et somariorum, in the Chronicle of Parma, A.D. 1301. Arnesium saumerii, harness for a sumpter horse. It also implies a military tunic. The word is used in a letter of King John I of France, in 1351, thus: baculum pictum floribus lilii et arnesium suum. It occurs in a letter of the year 1340: arnesium ferramentum, weapons of iron.

Arnexium, Arnixium. Baggage. Ogerius Panis, in his Annals of Genoa, in the year 1213, has: Exercitum totum fugaverunt, tendas quoque papiniones et arnisium habuerunt.

Arnosium. Harness. Arnosium, seu armaturam quas habet, occurs in the year 1345.

Arnots, or Arnauts. Turkish light cavalry, whose only weapon was a scymitar very much curved.

ARQUEBUSE A CROC. An arquebuss; supported on a rest by a hook of iron fastened to the barrel. From the size of its calibre it was used to fire through the loop-holes.

ARQUITES. Young archers, recruits in archery.

Arraire. To draw up in battle-array. It is used in a letter of Edward III, in 1338, in Rymer's Foedera, Vol. V, p. 7: Centum homines Wallenses...eligatis, trietis, et arraietis, vel eligi, triari et arrairari faciatis...ipsosque sic electos, triatos, arraiatos, ac benè munitos liberari faciatis dilectis et fidelibus, &c. A mandate of Henry IV, in 1406, uses it; and a charter of Richard I, in William Thorn's Annals, has, Gentes sufficienter munitas et arraiatas.

Arraiatio. Disposition, arrangement, or warlike apparatus. The letter of Edward III, in 1338, for choosing lanciers, has: Pro defectu electionis et arrarationis hujusmodi, passagium nostrum quomodo libet nullatenus differatur.

Arraizus. The serjeant de bataille. The word occurs in a letter of Richard II, in 1386.

Arrancata. A military expedition or inroad, from the Spanish arrancar.

#### AR-AS

Arsena. An arsenal, or depository for military stores. That of the Greek empire at Constantinople was called ἀρσηνάλης.

ARTELARIA, ARTELLARIA. Warlike machines. Artillery. It first occurs in Rymer's Fædera, Vol. VIII, p. 28; and next in Vol. VII, p. 166.

ARTIFICIUM. Warlike machines.

ARTILIS ITINERIS. An ambush. So the Roman de la Rose:

Elle est hardie et artilleuse Et trop en ire studieuse.

ARTILLARIA. Machines of war. A letter, dated 1358, says: Les diz complaignans getterent pierres, garroz et aretillerie contre yceulx nos ennemis.

Artio. The arçon, or bow of a knight's saddle. That part which rose up in front was called by the Italians appogiar.

ARTIVUS. A particular kind of sword used by the Greeks.

Asellus. A warlike machine. Henry Rosla, in Heslinsberga, says:

Non hic unigena fabricator machina: nomen Hæc librilla tenet, quasi saxea pondera librans: Obtinet illa suis, sed hirundinis hæc: stat aselli Illa vocata nota, &c.

ASPALDARE. From the Italian spaldo, the Spanish espaldar, the French épaulement, to put armour on the shoulders. In the Charta Papiensis, an. 1179, is: Ad præparandum ipsos duos locus, videlicet ad fossidandum et aspaldandum, et faciendum baltreschas, where it is used for a shoulder of a fortification.

Aspar. The gripe or part where lances are held.

ASPERGOTUM, AUSPERGOTUM. A hauberk-coat, or coat of mail.

Assalire. To assail; used in the year 1205.

Assaltare. To assault; used in 1241.

Assasini, Arsacides. An Arabic sect, instituted by Aladin, about the middle of the thirteenth century, and inhabiting the mountains of Phœnicia. Their chief was called the Old Man of the Mountains. They were so completely subject to his orders as to undergo the greatest hardships in accomplishing his commands. Their principal object was to murder whoever their sheik singled out for that purpose. Matt. Paris speaks of them in the year 1257, as does also Walsingham. Joinville says: "Father Yves reported to the king (St. Louis), that when the prince of the Bedouins took the field he was preceded by a man carrying his battle-axe, the handle of which served as a case for a number of sharp knives: the bearer crying out, "Turn back! fly from before him who carries the deaths of kings in his hands!"

Assoldare. To enrol soldiers.

Assumata. A military expedition. It occurs in a deed of Alphonso III King of Portugal, A.D. 1289.

ASTILUDERE. For hastiludere, to joust.

Ategar. A Saxon weapon, so called by R. Hoveden, but by Floren. Wigorn. sub an. 1040, hategar, thus: In manu sinistrâ clypeum cum umbonibus aureis et clavis deauratis, in dexterâ lanceam auream, quæ linguâ Anglorum hategar nuncupatur. It is compounded of accon, to send; and zap, a weapon: it therefore signified a javelin.

Atemptorium. A military enterprise.

ATILT. In the attitude for thrusting with a lance.

ATIRAMENTUM. Military attire or equipage.

AVANTGARDA. The van-guard or first portion of an army.

Avantbarium. That is, before the barriers; a species of fortification that surrounds the walls of a town. In 1494 we meet with: vallatum, sive fossatum cum barbacanâ sive avantbariis civitatis, so that it seems to have been to a city what the barbacan was to a castle.

AUBERGARIUS. A maker of hauberks.

AUKETON, the same as AKETON. This garment was generally white, whence plus blanc d'un auketon; but Matt. de Couci, in his Charles VII of France, says: the soldiers portoient auctons rouges, recoupez dessous sans croix.

Auriflamma. The sacred standard of the French.

Avoid. From the French vuider; a term used by the heralds after the cry of à l'ostel, expressive of the orders to clear the tilt-yard.

BACCALARII. A contraction of bas chevalier, or inferior knight, a class generally termed poor knights; a denomination still existing in the poor knights of Windsor, to distinguish them from the knights banneret, who were also termed rich knights. These bas chevaliers have corruptedly been termed bachelors, and a further confusion taken place by calling them knights bachelors. Thus Philip Mouskes, in his MS. History of France, says:

A un chevalier baceler, Ki par pauvréte vot aller Droit en Pulle à Robert Wiscart.

The history of the priory of Wigmore, in the Monast. Ang. has: Cingulum militiæ accepit, unà cum Edmundo de Arundel, et aliis trecentis baccalariis.

BACCELLERIA. The order itself of bachelors. Thus the Roman de Garin has:

La flor de France et la bachelerie.

And the Chron. of Bertrand du Guesclin:

Et puis manda sa gent et sa bachelerie.

Bachelor, or bachelier, has also been supposed to be derived from bas echelle, the lowest step in a ladder.

Bacignetus, Bacilletum, Bacinetum, and Basinetum. A bascinet, or basinet, i. e. a scullcap in the form of a basin. They at first did not cover any part of the face, but afterwards were supplied with visors. Hence, in the History of Dauphiny, we have: Item duos bacignetos cum viseriis 11 sol. vi den. gr. In the same work and same volume occurs about fifty pages before, pro emendo uno bacilleto pro domino teren. xii. In Charles the First's time they were exactly the shape of the head.

BADALATIUS, BADALUCCUS. A skirmish.

Badarellus, Badelare. From the French badelaire, baudelaire, and bazelaire. A short sword resembling, if not the same as, the basilard. A letter, dated 1382, has: cum armis viz. ensibus, badarellis et magnis cultellis. So, in 1348, Guillaume de Cravant chevalier avoit fery le dit feu Guillaume sur la teste d'un coutel, appellé badelare. Cavelier tira un grant panart, ou badelaire. It was also called balafardis and balesardus.

Badge. The distinctive mark by which the military followers of the feudal leaders or commanders were known in the camp or field of battle: these answered the purpose of our modern uniforms, and may be traced back to the highest antiquity among the Greeks and Romans, who bore them on their shields. In the feudal governments, where the royal authority was subdivided by great and powerful barons, the badge of the king was confined to his own retainers, and the free corporations of towns and cities. In this manner the red cross of England was also the badge of the Londoners from the time of King Edward I. It is doubtful whether any decisive badges were adopted by the military of semibarbarous Europe before the crusades, when a common badge was adopted for all the Christian nations. This, in the first crusade, was a red cross of silk or cloth affixed to the shoulder. In the third, the French alone preserved that colour, while green was adopted by the Flemings, and white by the English. When Bertrand du Guesclin collected the disbanded troops, who, as banditti, infested France, and led them into Spain, they had a white cotton cross sewn on their left shoulders, and were called the white company, as we are thus told:

De la compagnie blanc, dont je fu compaignon, Il n'y avoit en l'ost chevalier ne garçon Qui ne portast la croix blanc comme coton Pourtant la blanc compaigne les apeloit-on.

Mr. Gibbon observes, with some hesitation, that, in England, the red appears the favourite, and, as it were, the national colour of our military ensigns and uniforms: yet when we reflect that Simon de Montfort, in his contest with Henry III, had adopted the English badge of the white cross to distinguish his adherents from those of his sovereign, and that this popular leader perished as a rebel, it is no wonder that the kings of England should ever after have preferred a cross of a different colour; and the earliest instance I have met with of the red cross upon the surcoat of the English soldiers is in an illuminated historical roll of parchment, of the History of France, ending with

Charles VI, formerly belonging to the Empress Josephine, and lately in the hands of an amateur at Brussells. Although I have not found a cotemporary instance in history or in illuminations, circumstances tend to prove, that the personal tenants of the crown and of free cities bore the red cross in the wars of the three Edwards, and until the distinction of the roses came into fashion, when the old badge was naturally dropped, because both parties were alike entitled to it, and new ones, indicative of the two branches of the royal family, were substituted in Henry the Seventh's reign. When that contest was over, the red cross came into general use; and under Henry VIII the whole English army wore it, from which period it has continued in our national standards and ensigns. The great tenants of the crown had, however, from an early period, their private badges or cognizances. The earls of Warwick gave their followers the silver ragged staff, or the bear and ragged staff. The house of Lancaster bore the red rose, that of York the white, the Percys the crescent, the Veres the mullet of five points. That the Yorkists bore the rose appears from the following passage in the Paston Letters: "My lord of Clarence is gone to his brother late Kyng in so moche that his men have the gorget on their breasts and the rose on it." Vol. II, p. 62. Yet, at St. Alban's, Edward the Fourth's men (possibly his own) had a sun upon their breasts. In later times badges were made of metal, and fastened on the sleeves. Three of these, bearing the arms and quarterings of Sir Thomas Cotton, of Connington, of the time of James I, are in the armory of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq. The fashion is still retained by our firemen and watermen.

BAGORDARE. To hold a ludicrous joust. It is a word used by the Italians for a burlesque tournament. In these the combatants were attended by fools instead of heralds and esquires.

Bainberga, Bemberga. Greaves. It comes from the German beinberg, i. e. protection for the legs. Leo, in his Tactics, speaks of ποδόψελλα σιδηςά. The Lex Ripuar, c. 36, s. 11: Bainbergas bonas pro vi sol tribuat. The will of Everard Duke of Frejus: Bruniam unam, helmum 1, et manicam 1, ad ipsum opus, bembergas 2, mortariolum argenteum unum. In another place: Bruniam unam cum halsbergâ et manicam unam, bemivergas duas.

BALCANIFER, or BALDAKINIFER. The standard-bearer of the Templars was so called.

Baldanum. A name given to a standard, called also balsanum and baldoanum, whence baldakinum.

Baldrellus. A baudrier, baudrie, or baldrick, which was a belt so named generally, but not always, when worn over the shoulder. In a charter of Hubert, a knight of Samur in the reign of Robert, is Fuit etiam loricus in pretio valde bonus, et unus caballus. Filii vero ejus duos baldrellos habuerunt. The balthei of the Franks is thus described, by the Emperor Leo, in his Tactics, c. 18, s. 85: ὁπλίζονλαι δὲ σκουταρίοις, καὶ κονταρίοις, καὶ σπαθίοις κοντωθέροις, α καὶ ἐπὶ ἄμων αὐτῶν διὰ λωρίων ἀναβασθάξεσιν, ἐνίοτε δε τινες αὐτῶν καὶ διαζώννυνλαι αὐτά. The Roman de Garin says:

En piéz se leve li loherauz Garin, : Et ot vestu un bliaut de samiz, Un baudré ot à grant bandes d'or fin, A chieres pierres sont attachés et mis, En sa mein tint un baston de jardin.

In the Parisian Arrets, 9th May, 1321, is, Item unam baudream de corio operatam de serico pretii 40 sol.

BALDRINGUS. The military girdle was so termed, as well as baldric.

Balea. A sling, and also a machine to throw stones; hence, the antient inhabitants of Majorca, Minorca, and Ivica, had their appellation Baleares. A MS. History of the Obsid<sup>m</sup> Acconis has: Portantes ibidem lapides cujuslibet quantitatis, baleas et quarellos lanceas et falcastra, &c. They were called balistæ vertigales and vertiginales. The word is a derivative from the Greek βάλλεω.

BALEATOR. A slinger.

Baleare Instrumentum, or Balearica Machina. The petrary; a machine for casting great stones. Thus, Guibert says: È contrà urbani baleare celeriter ædificant instrumentum, quo jactis ingentibus saxis nitebantur debilitare castellum. The balearica tormenta are thus spoken of in the Gestis Tancredi: Reverberant balearica tormenta similibus, misilia jacula eminùs; cominùs vomeres marmora demittunt.

Balia, Balista, Ballista, Balestrum. All these words are derived from the Greek βάλλεω, and are expressive of the machines, or manual weapons, for casting stones or darts. The Monachus Vallis Sarnensis, in his History of the Albigenses, has: Ecce sagitta per balistam ab adversario emissa servientem illum percussit. Raimundus Montanerius, in the Chronicle of Arragon, speaks of the great ballista à torno, as it was called, thus:

E sen casa nau feyts metre par teror, Tres ballesters de torn, è quius vol mal simplor

The ballistæ à pectoribus were the hand cross-bows. Jacques de Vitri says: Inventi sunt in Damiatâ tribuculi quatuor cum petrariis et mangonellis plurimis, ballistæ cum cornu fortissimæ, magnalium balistarum et arcuum magnus numerus. In the Arrets of the parliament of Paris the different species of balistæ are enumerated. We meet with Balistæ ad unum pedem, balistæ de cornu ad duos pedes. Balistæ ligneæ ad duos pedes. Balista à sine nuce quæ duos projicit quarellos; and Erant duæ ballistæ de tour, et quinque duobus pedibus. Angelus Portenarius, in Felicitate Patav. describes the various kinds for throwing stones. The History of Pisan, in 1171, has: In medio autem turris erat lx cubitorum fortis, pugnatores lxxx in eâ cum xx balistris.

Balearius. A cross-bowman. Thus Lucas Tudensis, in the year 1058, has: A quodam insigni baleario inter scapulas sagittà ictus est. To distinguish the offensive weapons which threw stones or cast arrows, the former was called balearis arcus, and the latter balearis funda.

- Balistarii, Balistarii, Balistrarii, Balestarii, and Balesterii. Those who fought with or managed the balistæ.
- Balistrariæ. Apertures in the wall to shoot quarrels through from the cross-bows. They were cruciform.
- Balitrisca, Baltrisca, Baltrischa, or Breteche. A wooden tower to defend or besiege towns or castles.
- Ballium. The bailey, or baily, a court-yard, though the bulwark which contained one was sometimes so called. Thus Matt. West. under the year 1265, says: Eam (civitatem) cum exteriori ballio castri bellatorum suorum insultibus occupavit. The Roman de Garin has:

Il font lor bailles et lor chastiaux garnir.

Wm. Guiart has:

Li nobles sont outre les bailles.

And-

Qu'il se fiert du baille és bretesches.

In the Chronicle of Flanders we read: Et coururent plusieurs fois jusques à la baille, et la meirent en feu.

- Ballota, Ballotola. An iron or leaden ball or bullet for cross-bows and ballistæ. Thus, Genera armorum prohibita, ballotæ ferreæ, nec plombeæ, &c. In the Crimin. Stat. of Saone, is: Et si fortè sagittam, telum, lanceam, ballotolam, vel lapidem infrà domum alicujus injecerit, &c.
- Balon, Balein, Balayn. Whalebone applied to the purpose of making crests for helmets, or swords and shields for peaceable tournaments. The word is derived from balæna.
- Baltheus. An ornament on which was marked the legion to which a soldier belonged. It was generally affixed to the girdle from whence depended his weapon; hence, our word belt.
- Band. A collection of any particular description of soldiers, as the trauband, true or trusty band.

BANDERIUM. A cohort of forty soldiers.

BANDERARIUS, BANDARENSIS, BANDONARIUS, and BANDEZATUS. He who carried the banner.

BANDUM, BANDERIA. A small banner. The French poets call it ban, and it is, therefore, probably of Celtic origin, signifying "exalted." Thus, an old French poet says:

Lors ralie ses gens, et refait son conrois, Le ban de Macedoine qui fut listé d'orfrois.

And again:

Le ban de Macedoine contrement bauloiant, Banieres et pignons contreval ventelant.

- Banera, Baneria, Banerium, and Bannerium. A banner. In the Gesta Ludovici 7<sup>mi</sup> king of France, c. 12, is: Illa die faciebat antegardam Gaufridus de Ranconio, qui gerebat regis baneriam, quam præcedebat, prout moris est, vexillum B. Dionysii, quod Galliæ dicitur oriflambe.
- Bannerettus. A banneret. So called from his title to carry a banner. Those only who were knighted on the field of battle were bannerets. In an antient French ceremonial, however, there was another mode, as in the following: Quand un chevalier ou écuier à la terre de quattre bacelles, le roy lui peut bailler bannière, à la premiere bataille où il se trouve; à la deuxieme il est banneret, et à la tierce il est baron. And afterwards: Quand un chevalier a longuement servi, et suivi les guerres, et qu'il a terre assez tant qu'il peut tenir cinquante gentilshommes pour accompagner sa banniere, il peut licitement lever banniere, et non autrement; car nul autre homme ne peut porter banniere en bataille, s'il n'a cinquante hommes d'armes et les archiers et les abalestriers qui y appartiennent, et s'il les a, il doit à la premiere bataille apporter un pennon de ses armes, et doit venir au connetable, ou aux mareschaux requerir qu'il soit banderet, et se il lui octroyent, doivent faire sonner les trompettes pour tesmoigner, et doit-on couper les queues de pennon, et lors le doit lever et porter avec les autres au dessous des barons. General Sir Wm. Erskine, on his return from the Continent in 1764, was made a knight banneret by King George III, in Hyde-park, in consequence of his distinguished conduct at the battle of Emsdorff. But although he was invested between the standards of the 15th Light Dragoons his rank was not acknowledged, as the ceremony did not take place on the field of battle.
- Barbicalis. A machine for throwing stones. Thus Albertus Aquensis says, lib. III, c. 41:
  Sequenti die instrumenta trium mangenarum, Franci barbicales vocant, opponunt ponti,
  quæ portam et turrim portæ ejusque mænia crebro jactu et impetu saxorum quaterent,
  et impeterent.
- Barbizellum. A machine of iron made to throw out several spikes, which at the same moment strike into a wall, and loosen the stones. It was generally used by those who approached under a cat. Thus Otto Morena, in his Hist. Rerum Laudensium, p. 53, has: Erat autem in ipso gatto, quædam trabes ferrata, quam barbizellum appellabant, quam trahentes hi qui intrà ipsum gattum erant foràs, plus 20 brachiis projicientes in murum ipsius castri mirabiliter feriebant.
- BARBUTA. A cap or covering for the head. Thus, Joan. Hocsemius says: Erant omnes armati cum barbutis in capite. And Giovan. Villani has: I tutti armati di corazze e barbute, come cavalieri. The French call knights thus armed barbües, and the English barbed.
- BARCELLUM, BERCELLUM. A barbed beam of iron used to bore holes in walls to assist the effect of the battering-ram in making a breach. Grose, in his Military Antiquities, has given engravings of this instrument.
- BARDUCIUM. Probably the same as the morning-star, except having a chain, being a ball of wood or iron armed with spikes. The word is used by Amaltheus.

- BARONES. Barons. The military nobility were so styled. They derived this title at first from their fee, next by rescript of the king, and lastly by patent. The origin in England of the first was at the Conquest; of the next, according to Spelman, in the time of King John; and of the last in that of Richard II.
- Basalardus, Basillardus. A peculiar kind of short sword. Henry of Knighton, lib. v, says of Walworth, lord mayor of London: Arrepto basillardo, transfixit Jack Straw in guttere; and soon after: cum alio basillardo penetravit latera ejus. Also a French writer, in p. 2731: Les viscontes aient pouare d'arester tous les contravenents, et les baselardes, daggers et epées. In a letter of the year 1386 it is said: Ipse Chabertus à vaginâ traxit quemdam magnum basalardum seu cutelhum, cum quo percussit dictum exponentem. It was also called base and baze. Thus, in 1385: Le dit escuier d'une base, qu'il tenoit toute nüe, en vint ferir icellui Michiel parmi le corps. In 1389: Le dit Delestre ayant une grant baze, et le dit Guillaume son cousin une autre grant baze, &c. And afterwards: En ce débat sacherent tous deux leurs bases ou baselaires l'un contre l'autre.
- Bastillus. A tower or bulwark. Thus, in Hearne's edition of Elmham in vit. Hen. V<sup>a</sup> occurs:

  Municiones quædam quas bastillos appellant, antè sua mænia intentis curis eriguntur

  constructa. Hence the Bastille at Paris.
- Bastiller. To besiege. Thus Jean Juvenal de Ursin, under the year 1409, says: Le duc Philippes de Bourgogne, et depuis le duc Jean aussi, avoient fait faire plusieurs grands engiens de bois pour bastiller Calais.

Bastisonus. A bastion or bulwark.

BATAILLIÆ. Lines thrown up enclosing a space without a castle or town, at which the battles generally commenced. They are commonly called bailles. The charter of Hugh Duke of Burgundy, A.D. 1184, has: Muro quoque permisi idem castrum claudi, cujus altitudo à ripâ interiori sit unius lanceæ, absque batailliis, et muro antepectorali, ità quod non liceat ulteriùs extendi.

Batifolium. A species of bulwark called a bastion.

Batilardus. This seems to have been the same as the basilard. Rymer has it in his Fædera, Vol. VII, p. 242: Item, quod nullus dictorum scolarium, infrà universitatem prædictam, in dies vel consuetudinariè, batilardum portet, seu aliquem alium cultellum statui clericorum indecentem.

BAUCENS, BAUCEANT, BAUCENNUS. A black and white banner used in the 13th century.

Bebra. A kind of javelin. Vegetius, lib. 1, c. 20, says: Barbari autem scutati pedites his præcipuè utuntur, quas bebras vocant, et binas etiam ac ternas in præliis portant.

Bellicrepa. A military dance in which arms were used, of Italian origin.

BERD. To beard, to confront, to face. "But the berded hym att an onsett place, and hathe dystrused hym, and hath slayne the most part of his vawarde." Paston Letters, Vol. II, p. 200.

Berdesca. A wooden tower.

BERTONESSA. A kind of bulwark.

Besogium. The besagüe. It was known under this name in the 15th century, as well as besog, vesoch, besolz, besoutz, besouch, besoiche, besoch, and besay. In a letter, 1398, it is said: L'un des varles du suppliant eust feru le dit Cayphas d'un cop de besog, jusques à grant efusion de sang, &c. This was, perhaps, the same as the besagium. It occurs in the Customs of the Abbey de la Reole in Aquitaine: Nemo cultellum, ensem, lanceam, spiculum, besagium, nequè gladium in contentione trahat.

Bessa. This was an implement like a pickaxe, or mattock, used by the pioneers, called by the French beysse ferrée. Thus, in 1478: Pierre Guynebert envoya deux compaignons bessans ou pionniers, pour faire ung fossé.

Biblia. A war-engine for attack. Alberic, in a MS. Chron. an. 1238: Adducens secum bibliam, petrariam et cætera bellica instrumenta.

Bilbo. A rapier or small sword.

BIPEDILE. A machine of the throwing kind fixed on two feet.

BISACUTA. According to the Glossarium Cambronense, it is an instrument made to cut on both sides, but it should rather be said to strike on both sides. Guillaume le Breton says:

Ascia dùm dextris, bisacuta, securis, et ensis Fulminat.

And a little after:

..... Nunc clava caput, nunc vero bipennis Excerebat, sed nec bisacuta, sudisve vel hasta Otia vel gladiis ducit.

The Italians called it besangue. Thus, Fu sopronominato besangue per so maleficio e de suoi. An old French poet, who lived in the year 1376, has:

Trop bien fesoit la besaguë, Qui est par les deux bec aguë.

Hermannus Cæsaresburg tells us, that the bizachius is a dreadful weapon with the Turks. The bizach, therefore, may be the weapon described under the word barducium.

Biscorna. A club armed with two iron horns. In the Judgments of the Parliament of Paris, an. 1271, occurs: Populares Katalaunenses contrà dominos suos insurgentes confœderationem fecerunt contrà eosdem, ferentes quosdam baculos, qui dicebantur biscornes. Again, in a let. rem. 1386: Le dit François fery l'exposant d'un baston ferré gros au bout, que on appelle bigorgne.

BLIDA. A warlike engine similar to the catapulta. Roland, in his Chronicle, has: Dum autem Eccelinus cum blidis et aliis instrumentis impugnaret Anoale fortissime. It was called by the Welsh bliv, and occurs in the Brut y Tywsogion as early as the year 1195, as follows: Ac yn y lle ymladadawd a chastell Paen yn Elvael, a blivieu a magneleu.

"And thereupon laid siege to Payne's castle, in Radnorshire, with blivs and mangonels. So likewise the bard Iolo, in a poem addressed to Edward III, says:

Curaw à bliv ddyliv ddelw, Ceryg Caer Verwig vur-welw.

"Battering with the bliv, like a torrent,
The stones against the gloomy walls of the castle of Berwick."

And Tudyr Aled, in some verses to his bow, has:

Hi a davlai o'i deuvlaen, Ergyd bliv ar goed o'i blaen.

"It would impel the shaft from it's two points Forward, with the force of a bliv."

- Boachiers. An engine of war, so called from boa, a great serpent. Sanutus, lib. III, says: Et posteà fecit approximare orificio fossarum boachiers multos, multumque sibi vicinos à turri S. Nicolai, usque ad Sbaralium Dom. Odeardi: et post le boachiers, fecit erigi plures carabagas projicientes magnos lapides. Charpentier thinks that they were only the coverings which protected those who managed the engines.
- Boclerus. A buckler. In a letter rem. 1359, is: Ipsi layci deferentes enses, magnos gladios, bocleros et venabula, in ipsos clericos irruerunt. In a letter of 1377: Une espée et un boucler pour la tuicion de son corps.
- Boglarium, Bloquerius, Bloquier, and Ploquier. A buckler. Its name is supposed to have been derived from its having been originally of goat's-hide. In German Bock-lier. There was a game called le jeux de bloquier.
- Bohordamentum, or Bohordicum. A hastilude, or joust, which was held on stated days. It took its name from the mock lances used in it, called bouhours. Thus, in a letter rem. dated 1424: Comme le jour des brandons iceulx compaignons tenant bouhours en leur mains, desquelz ilz s'esbatoient l'un contre l'autre, &c. At this time fools attended, and the emblems of folly adorned the knights.

Bolerestare. To raise ramparts of earth round any place.

Bolevardus. A bouvelard or rampart.

Bolta. A bolt or arrow for a cross-bow. Thus Rymer, in his Fædera, Vol. VI, p. 417, has: Quòd quilibet arcubus et sagittis vel pilettis aut boltis in jocis suis utatur, artemque sagittandi discat et exerceat.

Bolvetus. A bulwark.

Bombarda. A lithobolus, or engine for throwing stones or iron balls, which likewise emitted flames. A bombard, the prototype of the cannon. Thus Froissard: Ils firent ouvrer une bombarde merveilleusement grande, laquelle avoit cinquante pieds de long, et jettoit pierres grandes, grosses, et pesans merveilleusement, et quand celle bombarde decliquoit on l'oioit bien de cinq lieuës loing par jour, et de dix par nuit, et menoit si grand noise au decliquer, qu'il sembloit que tous les diables d'enfer fussent au chemin. Petrarch, before the year 1344, seems to speak of cannons: G. Habeo machinas et balistas. R. Mirum, nisi et glandes æneas quæ flammis injectis borrisono sonitu

jaciuntur. Erat hæc pestis nuper rara ut cum ingenti miraculo cerneretur; nunc ut rerum pessimarum dociles sunt animi, ità communis est, ut quodlibet genus armorum. The men who worked these machines were called bombardarii, or bombadiers, a descriptive name we still retain in the corps of artillery. Thus Rymer, Vol. XV, p. 161, has: Vibrellatores sive bombardiatores, which, in the Actis S. S. Julii, is thus explained: Ballistarii quos vulgò bombarderios vocant. Spelman commences his account of the bombard, by stating that it was invented by Bartholdus Schwartz, a monk, who was pounding sulphur in a mortar, for the purposes of medicine, when a spark was suddenly elicited which occasisoned an explosion. Achilles Glassarus, M.D. writes to Sebastian Munster, that the bombard was first used on the Danish sea in the year 1350, but that it did not acquire celebrity till 1380, till the battle of Clugi, between the Venetians and Genoese, thus mentioned by Platina, in his Life of Urban VI: Hac etiam arte barbadicus usus est; inventa tum primum à quodam Teutonico bombarda fuit, à sono et tonitru sic dicta. Nulla erat scapha Venetorum, nullus lembus, qui non duas bombardas et eò ampliùs haberet : quibus multi Genuenses, ut à re insolità, nec ad præcavendum scità, opprimebantur. Singulæ enim bombardæ uno ictu binos ternosque plerosque necabant. Soon after this it is mentioned by Chaucer, in his 3d book of Fame, speaking of the trumpet of Æolus:

Throughout every region
Went this foule trumpet's soun,
As suyfte as a pellet out of a gonne
When fier is in the powder ronne.
And such a smoke gan out wend
Out of the foule trompet's end,
Black, blo, grenish, suartish, rede,
As doth, where that men melt lede.

Walsingham mentions the capture of two French vessels by the English in 1386, having on board diversæ machinæ ad jaciendum lapides, et muros conterendum, et gunnæ plures, cum magnâ quantitate pulveris.

Bonbicinium. A basinet, used A.D. 1352.

Bordatus. This is said of a vessel raised with planks on the sides. So a charter of Philip Earl of Flanders, A.D. 1163: De nave quæ vocatur scuta, si non est bordata, unum denarium. Borto, Burdo. A lance for running at the ring. In the Acta S.S. Maii is: Et posito annulo in loco solito debeant currere seriatim cum hastâ seu bortone. And Hubertus Sipuntinus: Burdonem habebat pro lanceâ. And the Roman d'Aubery has:

Le chapel prent, l'escharpe et le doublier, Et le bordon, qui ni volt pas laissier.

Hence, the French borter, bortoner, signify to fight. The Roman d'Alexandre MS. part 2, has:

Hardis et de fin cuer pour grant fés endurer, Et plusque nus des autres ce savoit bien borter, Couvrir de son escu, de son espie jeter.

- Botton. "A botton with a tresse in the plates" is mentioned as belonging to a complete suit of tilting-armour, in the Paston MS.; but as only one is stated, it was probably the buckle and clasp which fastened the gorget to the breastplate in the time of Henry VI.
- Bracerium. Armour for the arm, called by the French brassart. In some transactions of Pope Urban V, it is said: Erat armatus de jupone, de tunicâ ferreâ, et jaque de veluto, et cum bacineto ligato et stachato, ut moris est, braceriis et gantelletis, ense et cultello cinctis.
- Brachiale, Brachialis, Braceles. Armour for the arms. In a letter, dated 1387, in the Royal library, at Paris, is: Un petit viez chapel de fer couvert de drapt, uns bracheles, un viez camail. And in another, dated 1405: Une cote de fer, ungs bracheles, &c. In the Roman de Cleomades, MS.

Espees, gisarmes, machues, Misericordes et fauchons, Et bracheles et bouclers reons.

They were also called braçonniere and bragoniere de mailles. Hence a deed, dated 1309, in the Proofs of the Hist. de Bretagne, Vol. I, contains: Bragonieres de maille de haubert, garnis de telles, &c. The MS. Roman du Chevalier Deliberé, has:

Cuissotz, braçonniere de maille.

Bragamardus, Braquemardus. A kind of sabre. It was in use as early as 1392, and continued so in 1511, at which last date occurs this order: Injunctum est quòd habeat unum bragamardum infrà xv dies. In a letter, dated 1392, is: Le dit Camus geta un grant coustel, que l'en dit bragamas, contre la teste du dit Huchon. In another letter, dated 1398: Perrot Lancel dit Ogier, avoit pendu un bazelaire ou bergaman à sa çainture, et tenoit un plansson en sa main. Another, in 1446, says: Ung grant coustel d'Alemaigne, nomme braquemart, from which we learn its German origin.

Brand. A sword, a cutting instrument.

Bricola. A machine for throwing stones, called by the French bricolle. Thus, Froissart says:

Pour ce jour ils ne monstrerent autre deffense que de bricolles, qui gestoient gros
carreaux. Blondius, speaking of the balistæ, says: Eique maximè nunc machinæ
brichollæ est appellatio. Helius Capreolus, in his Hist. Brixiensis, says: Sed conjicientibus in ipsa castra saxa è machinis, quas bricolas appellant, civibus, &c.

Brigantii, Brigands. Albertus Argentinus, in his Chronicle, an. 1351, has: Cum 4 millibus peditum armatorum, duobus millibus brigantum et ducentes equitibus armatis. John Thwrocz in Ludov. Hung. Rege, says: Briganciis et balestrariis Anglicis custodiam castri muniendo reservavit. These foot soldiers were clothed in jackets, which were quilted, and had pieces of iron within, hence called brigandines. Such jackets were worn in the time of Elizabeth and James I by the English archers. One of the latter period is in the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq.

## BR-BU

Brigandines, Brigandinons, Brigantinæ. These jackets are thus mentioned, by Octavius de Gelais, in Viridario Honoris:

Ouvriers parfaits de forger brigandines.

And again:

Avanturiers et outrageus soudars, Tant là qu'ailleurs, pour estre brigans dignes Fournis d'arnois, et riches brigandines.

And in another place:

Beaux gorgerins, dorées brigandines.

Stephanotius says: Lapides percusserunt eum ad latus dextrum, sibi frangendo brigantinas. The back and breast of this jacket were sometimes made separate, and then called a pair. Thus, in the Paston Letters, is: "And 1 peyr of bregandyrns kev! with blew vellewet and gylt nayle w' leg harnyce, value £8." A MS. in the College of Arms, L. 8, fol. 85, has: Item a peyre of brygandyrons with foldes and flanchards, and standards.

Brigendarius. A brigadier, one who commands a brigata or brigade. Rymer, Vol. XIV, p. 581, has: Concedimus dilecto servienti nostro Erasmo Kyrkenar locum et officium brigendarii nostri, ac cum brigendarium nostrum facimus et constituimus per præsentes.

BRIKETTE, BRICHETTE. The plates of armour which covered in succession the breast, in the time of Henry VI.

Brugna, Bruna, Brunia. The cuirass called broigne. The word occurs in documents of the time of Charlemagne. The Anglo-Saxons termed it byrne and byrnan. The Normans broigne. Thus the Roman de Garin:

L'escu li perce, s'a la broigne faussée.

Again:

En son dos vest une broigne treslice.

In the Roman de Gaydon, MS.

L'escu li perce, et la broigne treslit.

Le Roman de Rou:

Des haubers et des broignes mainte male faussée.

And the Roman de Roncevaux:

Là veist-on tante broigne saffrée.

Buldiellus. A baudric. In the Tabularium Burguliense is: Fuit unus loricus in pretio

## BU-CA

valde bonus, et unus caballus: filii verò ejus Alanus et Bernerius duos buldiellos habuerunt.

Burn. The broad iron ring fixed on the tilting-lance just below the gripe, to prevent the hand slipping back.

Buzo. The arrow for an arquebuze, or barrelled cross-bow. Radulphus de Stopham tenet manerium de Bryanston in Com. Dorset per serjantium inveniendi Domino regi quotiescumquè contigerit ipsum habere exercitum de Angliâ in Walliam, garcionem deferentem unum arcum sine cordâ et unum buzonem sine pennis, ad sumptus suos proprios per quadraginta dies. Plac. Coron. apud Schyreburne 8. Edw. I. Dorset. Rot. 3. Also, in the Veredict. de singulis Wapent. in Com. Nott. et Dur. William de Gresely tenet manerium de Drakelow in Com. Derby in capite, et reddit unum arcum sine cordâ et unam pharetram de tutesbit, et duodecim sagittas flectatas et unum buzonem. It was, therefore, an unfledged arrow. A wooden or leaden pipe to convey the air out of mines is called buze.

Bwlch, or Boolk. A military pass in a ridge of mountains; a breach made in a fortress.

Many defiles in Wales are still so called; and Taliesin has:

Tudvwlch Cyvwlch à oreu vwlch ar van caerau.

"Tudvoolk and Cyvoolk made a breach in the battlements of walls."

Byger, Byker. To fight, to skirmish. In the Paston Letters, Vol. I, p. 222, is: "Dyv's Squyers gathered them together a v or vi me men to byger with the lege."

Byll. A byll. German bylle, Dutch byl. Sir John Paston says: "As for my byll that is gylt, I wolde it were taken head to; ther is von in the town can glaser weel, I nowe ..... and ellys late it be weel oylyd."

Caballaria, Cavalheirium, Chevallerie. The meadow assigned for military exercise. It is termed by the Gascons Cavareria, by the Carcassonenses Cavalhairiou, and in one of the Arundelian marbles, κλῆρος ἱππικὸς. Sabellicus, in his His. Venet. lib. ix, decad 1, p. 248, concerning the isle of Crete, says: Prædia quædam in insulâ esse constat, quæ equestris militiæ nomine emeritis traduntur, insulani caballarias vocant. The Assisiæ Hierosolymitanæ MSS. c. 167, mentioning an heir who can hold his fee at the age of fifteen: say, Et se il n'est chevalier, quant il fait la preuve de son age, se il fait que sages, il dira au seignor, quant il aura son âge, prové, "Sire, donnez-moy un respit reinable de moi faire chevalier pour faire vous le service, que je vous dois de mon fié," et le seignor li doit doner le respit de 40 jours. Cap. 145: Par l'assise ou usage de cestui royaume, fié qui ne doit servir que d'une chevalerie, ne se part mie entre serors. And at cap. 147: Quant fié eschet à plusieurs seurs, qui doivent service de plusieurs chevaliers, le fié par l'assise,

ou l'usage de cestui royaume de Hierusalem doit estre parte entre elles en tel maniere, que si elles sont deus, et il y a deux chevaliers, chascune doit avoir l'une des chevaliers, et la maint née des seurs qui ont part fait la partison, et les aisnées choisissent.

CABALLERIUS, CAVALLERO, CHEVALIER. A cavalier or knight.

Cabia, Cabbia, Gabbia. A warlike machine. In a MS. treatise de Re Milit. et Mach. Bell. c. 23, mentioned by Du Cange, is: de cabiâ et lanternâ ambulatoriâ. Ista machina vocatur arbor cum cabiâ, et debet habere rotellas, et est similis acta ad defendendum et offendendum castella et alia fortillitia. Lanterna aliâs cabbia, in eâ homines præliantes stabant. C. 29: Navis cum cabbiâ super quam positæ sunt scalæ. In nautical affairs, therefore, it signifies the tops. In c. 58: Currus cum cabiis est valdè necessarius ad muros castelli sive civitatis causâ bataliandi, et in cabiis stare debent homines armati ad offendendum castellanos sive cives cum ballistis, saxis, igne, &c.

Cabulus. A petrary or ballista of the larger kind. Guillaume le Breton, lib. vII, of his Philipp. v. 182, has:

.....Sex mox ingentia saxa
Emittit cabulus.

An old French interpreter of William of Tyre, lib. vi, c. 15, thus explains: Una inter cæteras machina, &c. Une grande periere, que l'on claime chaable, si grosse, &c. Trees blown down by the wind are still called caables in France.

CADRELLI, CARREAUX. Quarrels for cross-bows.

CAER. An antient British word for the Roman castrum and Saxon chester, implying a fortress.

CAEXIA. A casque, in Spanish caxeo. A corruption of the Roman cassis.

CAGASUPTUS, CADAFALSUS. A chat-faux, or wooden shed, under which the soldiers carried on the operations of attack. In the Annal. Mutin, cited by Muratori, is: Dum dicti Mutinenses essent circà dictum castrum, fecerunt duos cagasuptos ex una parte castri, et cum tribus machinis sive trabuchis die noctuque viriliter expugnarunt per quatuor hebdomadas et ultrà.

CAIRELLI. Quarrels. In the Information for the City of Marseilles on crossing the Sea, a MS. at St. Germain, is: Secuntur arma necessaria pro galeis, Item Lx balistæ et Lx tragm. Item vr. cadrelli. Item ccc lanceæ.

CAISSIA. In French caisse, English case. The small quiver for the quarrels and bolts was so called. The Hist. of Dauphiny, Tom. II, p. 510, in a convention, anno 1345, for furnishing the galleys, among other arms there are cc lanceæ, cccc dardi, xx caissiæ viretonorum, in quarum qualibet ad minus sint p viretoni.

CALCARIA AUREA. Golden, or rather gilt spurs, which, as being appropriated to, were a mark of knighthood. In the Hist. of Charles VI, speaking of Louis II, king of Sicily, and Charles his brother, it is said: Eos accingit baltheo militari, et per dominum de Chauvigniaco, calcaribus deauratis, jussit rex Carolus insigniri. Hence they were termed

- cavaliere à spron d'oro, equites aurati. Knights of the golden spurs. This designation, however, does not seem to have succeeded that of milites till the 16th century.
- CALCARIA ARGENTEA. Silvered spurs. These were the distinguishing marks of esquires, being worn by them only. In the Register of Homages of the Nobles of Aquitaine, an. 1273, kept in the chamber of accounts at Paris, is: Et si aliquis eorum non esset miles, debet servire domino regi cum caligis albis de scarleto, et calcaribus argentatis. The Chron. Franc. ex Bib. Memniana has: Nous avons trouvé la bataille contre le plus vaillant escuier, qui oncques en son temps chaussa esperons blancs.
- Calcaria Amputari. The spurs were hacked off, as it was termed, when a knight was degraded.

  Walsingham, speaking of Andrew de Harcley, earl of Carlisle, when degraded and hung
  for high treason, says: Nempè primo degradatus est, amputatis securi ad talos suos
  calcaribus, et sic vicissim discinctus et baltheo militari. The Roman de Garin,
  MS. has:

Li espérons li soit copé parmi Prés del talon ou branc acier forbi.

In the Statutes for the knights of the Bath, is: Si vous faites chose contre l'ordre de chevalerie, que Dieu ne veuille, je cooperay vos espérons de dessus vos talons. In the Stabil. Sti. Ludov. lib. 1, c. 128, it is said of an ignoble person, who suffered himself to be presented for the military girdle, that le porroit prendre li Rois, ou li Bers, en qui chastellerie ce seroit, et trencher ses espérons seur un fumier.

- CALERIUM. Some kind of machine. Baluz. Miscel. Vol. VI, p. 365, has: Quæ in balistarum et caleriorum et machinarum et aliorum armorum, &c.
- CALONES. Small vessels to carry wood for the service of the army, from the Greek zãλον, lignum. CALOTE. A species of scullcap which officers and soldiers wore under their hats in the French cavalry, being sabre-proof. Some of these are in the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq.
- Calthrop, Caltrap, or Chevaltrap. An implement with four spikes thrown on the ground, so that one always projects upwards. It is intended to intercept the advance of cavalry by laming the horses. The spikes of one, in the possession of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq., are an inch and a half each in length.
- CAMALE, CAMALLUS. In French camail. The chain covering for the neck which was fastened to the basinet.
- Camba. A tower. In an inquisition taken in the year 1268, occurs: Usque ad locum, qui dicitur Berbegal, ubi est quædam turris, quæ vocatur la camba de Berbegal.—Vidit quod Dom. Barralis tenebat munitam cambam de Berbegal hominibus de Baucio.
- Camba, Cambale, Cambie. Ital. gambiera. Jambs or armour for the legs. In an account in 1334, inserted among the proofs of the Hist. Nem. Vol. II, is: Item pro aptandis los cambals en anels de trossa vi den. In an invent. 1240: Item tantas cambas Francigenas, quòd valuerunt, viginti duas libras, Provenienses. In a letter remiss, an. 1336, in Cart.

Reg. is: De dicto hospitio supertunicalia, enses, cambias et cirothecas ferri, secum asportando.

CAMBEROTA. The same as the last. The edict of Philip VI, king of France, an 1338, says: Item nobilis homo pedes armatus tunicâ, camberotâ et bassineto, capiet duos solidos Turonenses.

CAMBULUM. A short sword.

Camelaucum, Calamaucus, Calamaucum. The camail. It was originally made to cover the head as well as shoulders. Froissart says: Vol. II, c. 66: Et coula tout outre le camail, qui estoit de bonnes mailles, et luy entra au col. It is thus spoken of attached to the basinet, in an account of Stephen de la Fontaine, the king's silversmith, Jan. 1st, 1349: Pour six onces de soie de diverses couleurs à faire les las à mettre les camaux aus dits bacinets, &c. The Chron. du Guesclin has:

Et voit ses chevaliers bien armez de camail.

And in another place:

Bertrand tenoit l'espée, qui le fer ot trenchant, Ou camail si bouta fierement en poussant.

CAMPURI, CAMPHIO. A decreed duel, from the German kampf, battle; and the Danish vüg, manslaughter.

CAMISLE FERREE. The hauberks are so called in the Chron. Colmariense, anno 1298.

CAMPIDOCTORES. Those who taught the science of arms and armour.

Campiductor, Captains or leaders. In the Historia Episcop. Frisingensium sub an. 1381, in Metropoli Salisburgensi, is the following: Cum enim armatâ manu versus Frisingham properaret, suis quatuor campiductoribus videbatur, quod eorum hastæ arderent.

CAMPIONES. Champions. Those who in a field fight a pitched battle or duel. Saxo Grammaticus, Hist. Dan. lib. v, says: Sin autem quavis de re pugilem popularis impeteret ipsum armatus exciperet, cubitali duntaxat stipite pugnaturum. In the Capitulum of St. Louis, ad legem Salicam also, it is decreed that Campioni, qui victus fuerit, propter perjurium, quod ante pugnam commisit, dextra manus amputetur.

Campio Regis. The king of England's champion, who, on the day of coronation, challenges any one who disputes his Majesty's title to the crown. In a charter of Henry I, in Dugdale's Mon. Vol. II, p. 973, one of the subscribing witnesses is Robert de Baioux, the king's champion. On reference to the Marmion pedigree, in Dugdale's History of Warwickshire, he will be found to be Robert de Marmion, son of Robert, who received the manor of Scrivelsby from William the Conqueror, to hold by the tenure of being the king's champion, a fact commemorated in an instrument of the time of Edward III, bearing date 1349, in these words: In Orig. de anno r.r. Edwardi tertii post conquestum videlicet vicesimo tertio et Franc. decimo. Linc' Mand, est Saiero de Rocheford escaetori in com. Lincoln. quòd acceptâ securitate a Johanne Dymmok qui Margaretam de Ludelowe duxit in uxorem de rationabili relevio suo regi solvend. pro manerio de

Screvelby in com. Lincoln. quod de rege tenetur in capite per serjantiam, vid'. quod quandocunque aliquis rex Angliæ coronari debet, dominus manerii predicti qui pro tempore fuerit, vel aliquis nomine suo, si idem dominus impotens fuerit, veniet benè armatus pro guerrâ super uno bono dextrario in presentià dicti regis die coronationis suæ, et ibidem proclamari faciet quòd si aliquis dicere voluit quòd dictus rex non habeat jus ad regnum suum predictum, vel ad coronam suam predictam, promptus erit et paratus ad defendendum jus dicti regis et regni sui, et dignitatem coronæ suæ per corpus suum versus ipsum et alios quoscunque et plenam seisinam, &c. Thomas Walsingham, describing the coronation of Richard II, says: Interea preparavit se quidam miles Dominus Joannes cognomento Dimmock, qui clamabat se habere jus ad defendendum jura regis illo die, et etiamsi opus esset duello confligendum, si aliquis præsumeret affirmare regem non habere jus in regno Angliæ. Thomas Milles, in his book De Nobili. polit. vel civil. p. 109, describing the ceremony of the coronation of King Edward VI, says: Post secundum ferculorum apparatum, regius Agonista, Dimmocus cognomine, eques auratus undique armatus, equo insidens bellico, pannis aureis phalerato, paludato feciali comitatus ingressus est, qui primo gressu glomerante superbo ad regem se contulit ipsumque summà observantià adoratus est. Deindè equum concitando ovantem quater per aulam clangente tubâ ad duellum provocavit, si quis nimirum Edwardum ejus nominis vi Angliæ, Franciæ, et Hiberniæ verum, indubitatum, legitimumque regem negaret: totiesque chirothecam militarem arrham projecit humi, quam quum nemo attolleret, fecialis ipsi reddidit. This office is hereditary in the family of Dymoke, derived from an intermarriage with the heirs of the Marmions. Before the succession was settled as at present, when there might be various competitors for the throne, this challenge at a coronation, which was itself regarded as a recognition and confirmation of the title, was looked upon as legally essential. In those times when on most occasions the last appeal was to the sword, as the king was not on equality from possession of the office with his competitors, the law, as in other cases of disability, allowed a champion.

Canberia. Armour for the legs. Jambieres. In an inventory of stores in Castro civitat. Carcass. an. 1294, it is said: Unum par canberiarum sine cuisseriis.

Cantabrarii. Standard-bearers, noticed in Leg. 2 Cod. Theod. de Collegiat.

Cantabrum. A kind of standard used by the Roman Emperors, of which Minutius Felix makes mention in Octavio, and Tertullian in Apol. c. 16, and Lib. ad Nation. c. 12, but the learned are divided in opinion as from whence the Romans derived the name. Baronius, however, supposes it was borrowed from the Cantabrians, a people of Spain, who used it in their battles.

Cantellus. A cut with a weapon. In French chanteau and cantel. Robert Bourron, in his Merlin, says: Li donna si grant cop sur son escu, qu'il en abat un cantel. From hence comes the French word escantelé, which he thus also uses: Li escu sunt estrée et depechié et escantelé par dessus et par dessous. Hence also, Tenir en cantel. Thus Li rois tint l'escu en cantel, et l'espée en la main in the same author. It seems to have

been the same as cantiel, "the quarter," applied to a shield on the left thigh, and an old term in heraldry since denominated canton.

Cantilena Rollandi. A military cry. Permistus exhortatione, says Sallust, generally pronounced in procinctu pugnæ, of which kind was the barditus of the Germans, according to Tacitus, who, in his Treatise de Mor. Germ. says: there were chaunters in the army who excited the soldiers to exert themselves strenuously in battle, setting forth as examples the illustrious acts of renowned heroes. Leo, in his Tactics, says: Παρακλήτορας, οἱ διὰ λόγων διεγείροντες τὸν σῆρατὸν προς τὰς ἀγῶνας, οὖς οἱ πρὸ ἡμῶν νεώτεροι, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τακτικοὶ Ρώμαϊς [ἐκάλουν. He also speaks of these chaunters in c. 12, s. 71, 72, 120. Tyrtæus composed his songs for the same purpose. William of Malmsbury de Gestis Reg. Ang. lib. III, and from him Alberic, Matt. Paris, Matt. West<sup>τ</sup>. and others, speaking of the year 1066, of William the Bastard preparing to encounter Harold, says: Tunc Cantilenâ Rollandi inchoatâ, ut Martium viri exemplum pugnaturos accenderet, inclamatoque Dei auxilio, prælium consertum, bellatumque acritèr. Wace, in the MS. Roman de Rou, describing the battle of Hastings, says:

Taillefer qui moult bien chantoit Sus un cheval qui tost alloit, Devant eus alloit chantant De l'Allemaigne, et de Rollant, Et d'Olivier, et de Vassaux, Qui morurent en Rainscheyaux.

Hector Boethius Hist. Scot. lib. xv, speaking of John King of France, who said, Nullos modo se Rolandos aut Gavinos reperire, tells us, that a veteran, who had been valiant in his youth, replied, non defuturos Rolandos, si adsint Caroli. The antient Britons had their war-song, entitled Arymes Prydain, or the armed confederacy of Britain, which may be seen in the Cambrian Register.

Capellina, Capellina, Capellina. The chapeline, or small chapel de fer. In the Statutes of Mantua we read: Cum armis, viz scuto, cervelariâ, capellinâ ferreâ, &c. And in letters remissory, dated 1377: Armés de jacques, de cotes et de capellines de fer, et plusieurs autres armeures.

CAPELLUM. A scabbard. Thus Hen. Knyghton, p. 2321, says: Hic ensis fuit de nobilissimo auro Arabico, in cujus capello reconditus fuit clavus unus Dominicæ crucis. An old MS. poem in Bib. Coislin, has:

Et sercot d'ermine moult bel, De soie en graine et chascun d'els Avoit bon mantel d'escurels, Et chemise ridée et blanche, Et chapel de flor inde et blanche.

Capellus Ferreus. The chapelle de fer. In the Consuetud. Brageriaci, art. 28: we read, Item armaturæ, uptote enses, lanceæ, pileus ferreus, sive capellus. Brompton, p. 1108, speaks of it; and Philip de Beaumanoir, in the Consuetud. Bellovacensi MS. c. 61,

mentions a chappel de fer à visiere. Froissart, Monstrellet, Berri, and George Chastellen, make frequent mention of it; and in the Hist. Dauph. Vol. II, p. 326, col. 1, it is called capellus de ferro.

Capillare, Capellare, Capulare. To kill or slaughter. By the old French writers chapler.

Thus William Guiart says:

En tele maniere chapelerent, Qu'à force les desbaraterent.

And in another place:

Grant flot des gens aprés s'arrive, Desquiex chacun tant i chaplote, Qu'ils metent Anglois à la voie.

In a MS. entitled La Bataille de Careme, et du carnage, is :

Tant i a feru et chaplé, Qu'il li a fait moult grand dommage.

Capitaneus, Capitanius. A military leader. In Welsh cadpen, i. e. chief of battle, whence, perhaps, the word captain: William Guiart says:

Serjens, et mestres capitaines Font espartir aval les plaines.

In the Annal. Francor. an. 786, is: Prævaluerunt Franci, et cum victorià, Deo volente, reversi sunt, et capitaneos eorum (Britonum) repræsentabant Domino Regi Carolo.

Capitaneus Generalis. A captain-general, or general-in-chief of the whole army. In the Chartâ Cremonenci, an. 1244, it thus occurs: Philippe par la grace de Dieu, Roys de France, à tous ceux qui ces presentes lettres verront, Salut. Sçavoir faisons que nous confians du sens, loyauté et diligence de nostre amé et feal chevalier Guy de Neelle, Mareschal de France, icelluy avons fait et estably, faisons et establissons par ces lettres, pour la seureté du pays, capitain general et souverain de par Nots és parties de Xanctonge et és pays, et marches d'environ, et de tous les lieux voisins, auquel nous avons donné et encore donnons pouvoir, auctorité, et mandément especial de mander, assembler, et tenir à nos gages gens d'armes et de pié tant, tel nombre, et toutefois que bon li semblera, de visiter, et establir les villes, chasteaux et forteresses du pays, et des marches, et de croistre et apetisier les establiés, de changer, mettre de lieu en autre, et oster du tous chastellains, baillis, prevots, receveurs et toutes manieres d'autre officiers quiex et quelque estat qu'il soient, et autres establir de nouvel en lieux d'eux de quitter, remettre, pardonner toutes manieres de crimes et malefices aux personnes que il verra que bon soit, de rappel banis, de donner lettres d'estat à ceux qui seront en nostre service avec lui, ou autre part de son commandement, du jour qu'il partirent de leur pays jusques à un mois après leur retour des parties où il seront alés, de composer à toutes

manieres de gens, de quelque estat que il soient tenant villes, chasteaux et forteresses de nos ennemis qui vauldroient sans fraude venir à nostre obeissance, de prendre deniers sur les receveurs quelconques des dites parties pour faire les choses desusdites toutesfois que mestier en sera, en eux donner quittance sous son seel de ce qu'il prendra d'eux, et de faire toutes autres choses, qui à office de capitain general et souverain puent et doivent Lesquelles choses dessusdites, ainsi faites par nostre dit capitain, nous aurons fermes et agreables, et icelles et cescuns confermerons par nos lettres sellées en las de soie de cire verte, se mestier est. Donnons en mandement par la teneur de ces presentes à tous nos officiers et subjets de quelque estat que il soient, que audit mareschal comme à capitain establi de par nous, obeissent diligemment, et prestent et donnent conseil, confort, et aide, toutefois que mestier en aura, et à nos amés et feaux gens de nos comptes à Paris que tout ce que nostre dit capitain aura pris ou reçeu des dits receveurs, ou d'aucuns d'iceux pour la cause dessusdite, il allouent en leurs comptes, et rebatent de leurs receptes sans contredits, nonobstant que ces presentes soient passées par les gens de nostre secret conseil. En tesmoin de laquelle chose nous avons fait mettre à ces lettres nostre grant seel. Donné ou Bois de Vincennes le 9 jour d'Aoust l'an de grace 1349.

CAPOTANEUS. A captain of the populace. Rolandin. Patavin. lib. 11, Ann. Genuens. c. 18, says: Habuerunt tunc Mediolanenses alii et populus et commune de consilio saniori, pro suo capotaneo Martinum de Turre de civitate eâdem, virum probum et sapientem, strenuum, tractabilem, &c.

Capulatura, Capulatio. These are derivatives from capulare, and consequently signify wounds. Thus in the Formulæ solenn. c. 119, we read: Violenter super ipsum evaginato gladio venit, undè livores vel capulaturæ atque colaphi manifestè apparent. Berry, in his History of Charles VII, p. 232, says: Et dura le chappelis par l'espace d'une forte heure, from which it also appears to signify an encounter. In the Tractatus de Torneamentis Tabulæ Rotundæ in MS. occurs: Et lors eussiez peuvoir grans fais d'armes, et grant chappelis d'une coste et d'autre. William Guiart, speaking of the auriflamme, says:

Es chapleis des mescreans Devant lui porter la fesoit.

Under the year 1264:

Le chaple commence aux espées.

The Roman de Garin has:

La veissiez un riche chapleis.

The Roman de Vacce:

Au chaple des espées les feront enverser.

The MS. Chron. of Bertrand Guesclin:

Tous ceus qu'à Cocherel furent au chaplement.

CAPULATUS. Girded on. It is derived from capulum gladii.

- Carabaga. A missile machine of war. Sanutus, lib. III, p. 12, c. 21, has: Fecit erigi plures carabagas projicientes magnos lapides et frequenter, ita ut prosternerent muros cum turribus. John Iperius, in his Chronicle, an. 1291; apud Marten, Tom. II, Anecd. col. 770, says: Et fecit orificio fossatorum approximare branchios multos et vicinos invicem, et post eos carabagas, qui jaciebant lapides magnos.
- CARACALLA. A military garment introduced by Antonine from Gaul, whence its name. It seems to have had a hood, for in the 128th Epist. of St. Hieronym. is: Et efficitur palliolum miræ pulchritudinis perstringens fulgore oculos, in modum caracallarum, sed absque cucullis.
- Carcaissum. A quiver, called by the French carcois or carquois, and by the Italians carcasso.

  In a charter, dated 1242, occurs: Unam balistam de fusto, cum uno croco, et carcaisso, et cairellis. The modern Greeks call it γαρκάσιου.
- CARCAMUSA. The carcamousse, a machine of attack, somewhat similar to the ram, like the French, mouton, marmouton, and truye. It seems to have acquired its name from the sounds it produced. Thus Abbo, in Obsid. Paris. Lut. lib. 11, has:

Arietes, vulgò carcamusas resonatos Dimisere duos.

- Carcayssis. A case for quarrels which was worn at the right hip. In the stores found in Castro Carcass. an 1294, are enumerated 1111<sup>xx</sup> x1x baliste unius pedis, v1<sup>xx</sup> x11 croci, L carcaysses, xv1<sup>M</sup> v1<sup>c</sup> carelli.
- Carellus. A quarrel or arrow for cross-bows, the head of which was either four-sided, or had four projections. It was called by the French carreau. The Hist. Bretagne, Tom. II, p. 565, has: Qui quidem armiger percussus fuit tractu cujusdam baliste; adeò quod sagitta seu carellus, vocatus Enguegne Gallicè, intravit guttur ipsius. In an account of the year 1333 to 1336, in the Hist. Dauphin. Tom. II, p. 281, is: Item, solvit pro emptione ferri ad faciendum carellos, Michaeli xiii flor. xii den. Vienn. And at p. 292: Pro cccc carellis tam de uno pede, quam de duobus, garnitus fletonibus, et empennatis, et pro cc garrotis emflethonatis folio cupri..... pro munitione castri Bellæ-cumbæ. And a little further on: Pro centum carellis garrotorum ad tor factis apud Alavardum, datis sex denariis pro quolibet carrello 15 sol. And again, in an account of Aymond de St. Pierre, knight, in which carelli ad projiciendum ignem are mentioned, occurs: carelli garati, and in an account of the year 1336, in the same volume, p. 326, col. 2, is: Item de carellis qui dicuntur garati xii, carellos qui computantur in dictis quindecim solidis. Where they are called carelli garrotorum must be understood the iron head of the garrot or arrow.

CAROBALISTA. A machine of attack. In the MS. Treatise De Re Mil. et Mach. Bell. c. 50, occurs: Carobalista ambulatoria trahitur ab equis sivè bobus faleratis, sivè corio bubalino copertis, intùs in eâ stantes balistarii, et ducitur ista machina circiter muros castelli; et est dicta machina contexta tegillis et coperta corio prædicto.

CARRIOLUM. The same as carrocium.

- Carrocerum, Carrocium, Carrocius, Καρούχιον. The standard fixed in a carriage. Mat. Paris, under the year 1236, says: Cum standardo suo, quod carrucam, vel carrochium appellant, perrexerunt. And the Emperor Frederick, in his letter, ad Comitem Suession. Tom. V: Spicilegii Acheriani, p. 569, de carrocio Mediolanensi, says: Cum vexillo S. Ambrosii, quod miro artificio egregiæ molis et altitudinis ferebant in carrocio, quem juga boum non pauca trahebant. Also, in another letter respecting the same standard, apud Freherum, Tom. I, p. 237, is: Venit populus cum carrocio quod apud nos stendart dicitur. Not only the Italians but other nations made use of this kind of standard. Guillaume le Breton, in the 11th book of his Phillip. describes it, as does the Chronicle of Flanders, c. 15. It was, however, a different kind of carrocium which the Emperor Frederick II is said, by Sigonius, to have used, A.D. 1236, for he tells us, that Frederick super elephantem castellum instar carrocii constituerat, signis in angulis ac vexillo exercitûs in medio posito decoratum, elephantis magistro et Saracenis ad defensionem castelli positis.
- Carrorus. The quarrel of a cross-bow. In a letter remissory, dated 1388, it is said: Les diz arbalestriers aians leur arbalestes, baudres, cartas (probably carros), et viretons.
- Cassettus. A chemise de maille. The Stat. of Mantua, lib. 1, c. 3, has: Habeat (potestas) etiam xx berrouarios, quorum medietas sit armata coratiis vel panceriis seu cassettis ferreis, &c. And again, c. 112: Arma verò ad defensionem sint, et intelligantur panceria, guarnacia, cassettus, &c. Again, the Stat. Mutin. an. 1328, apud Muratori, has: Quilibet miles teneatur et debeat habere in quâlibet cavalcatâ et exercitu panceriam sivè cassettum, &c.
- CATANEI. A contraction of capitanei. Romualdus Salernit. in Chron. MS. has: Comitissa de Berthenora cum Guillelmo de Markisella nobili Ferrariensi Catanio, cum magnâ multitudine militum, et peditum ad succursum ejusdem civitatis veniebat.
- CATANEUS, CHATAIGNE. An abbreviation of capitaneus. The Roman de Gaydon in MS. has:

Dont maint duc et mainte comte, .... et maint prince chataigne Furent occis, &c.

- CATAPANUS, CATEPANUS, CATIPANUS. In French Catepon. These seem to be the same as capitaneus, or captain. The words are frequently used by Guillelm Apub. lib. 1, de Gest. Norm. and others.
- Catus, Catus, Gatus, Gatus. A machine of war called a cat. Vegetius, lib. IV, c. 15, says:

  Vineas dixerunt veteres, quas nunc militari barbaricoque usu cattos vocant, from whence
  we learn how early the name was applied by the Gothic nations. Brito, in his Voca-

bulary, has: Vinea dicitur quædam machina bellica, quæ Gallicè dicitur Chat. Mamotrectus on Ezechiel, p. 35, says: Vineas machinas bellicas, quibus itur ad murum suffodiendum, quas Bononienses vocant cattos. Cats, therefore, were the coverings under which soldiers might lie, resembling cats watching their prey. Procopius de Bell. Gothic. lib. 11, c. 19, says: Τινάς δε επέλευσεν εν τῷ ὁμαλῷ τὴν ἀπὸ τῶν ῥάθδων ἐπάγειν σθοάν. οὕτω γὰρ καλείν την μηχανήν νενομίκασι ταυτήν. The cat was used not only for sapping the walls but for crossing the fosse. Thus Muratori has: Prætereà Imperator gatum maximum, cujus par nec similis unquam visus fuit, usque suprà fossatum ipsius castri unà cum alio minori gato ducere fecit, fossatumque ipsius castri ex terrà impleri præcepit. Gatum igitur vià sic peractà sibi per medium fossatum ducere eum Teutonici cœperunt. Again: Gatus quippè viam per medium fossatum faciens jam anteà propè murum ipsius castri præcesserat; in ipso enim gato quædam trabs ferrata, quam Bercellum appellabant, constabat, quam ipsi, qui infrà ipsum gatum fuerant foras plus de viginti brachiis projicientes in murum ipsius castri mirabiliter feriebant, ac tandem tantum jam ferierant quod de ipso muro plus de viginti brachiis in terrà projecerant. This account makes the cat resemble the pluteus, which Vegetius, lib. 1, thus explains: Plutei dicuntur qui ad similitudinem apsidis contexuntur è vimine, et ciliciis vel coriis proteguntur, ternisque rotulis, quarum una in medio, duæ in capitibus apponuntur. In quacumque volueris admoventur more carpenti, quos obsidentes applicant muris, eorumque munitione protecti, sagittis sivè fundis, vel missilibus defensores omnes de propugnaculis civitatis Cornelius Zanfliet, in his Chronicle, says: Interim rem in desperato ponentes Leodini, quoddam instrumentum ligneum, ex trabibus immensæ magnitudinis construentes quod cattum nuncupabant, substratis artificiosè rotis ligneis ad diruendos muros Trajecti et oppidi Wick minare cœperunt. It differed from the manganum and trebuchet, but was used at the same time, for Pietro Gerardi, lib. vii, p. 78, de Ezelino tyranno, says: Et posto al ordine gran quantita de vettovagliæ sopra carri, arma, gatti, mangani, trabucchi, ponti, &c.

CAVALCATOR. A cavalier or knight.

CAVALCATURA. Cavalry.

CAVALCATUS. A military expedition. In a charter of the king of England, dated 1353, in Rymer, Vol. V, p. 773, is: Inhibentes ne cavalcatus aliquos super gentes ipsius Caroli, &c.

CAVALLERIA. An Arragonese tax for the support of a knight. It was fourfold. Cavallerias de honor it was called according to some, by others cavallerias acostumbradas dar como de honor, and cavallerias acostumbradas dar como de mesnada was also a name by which it was known. This word further signifies the equestrian art.

CAVALLERIUS. A knight.

CAVEA. A warlike machine used in attacking cities. In the Annals of Placentia we read: Intereà miranda quadam mechanica composuisse scalas, balistras, catapultas, testudines, caveas tres ac decem, sed, in his similibus machinamentis nihil urbi nocuisse.

Cazafusta. It seems to be the same as the catapulta, being derived from cazare, a Latinization of chasser, to expel or drive; and fustis, a club, hence also called fustibalum, unless it be Italian, and then imply a wooden house, the same as cagasuptus. Rollandinus, however, in his Hist. lib. viii, says: Nihilominus nisi sunt defendentes, inimicos repellere, eosque fugare, et figere nunc lanceis nunc sagittis, fundis petras rotantibus, et sonantibus cazafustis. In the Stat. Vercel. lib. iv, p. 71, is: Item quòd nullus major decem annis trahat per civitatem cum fronziis vel cazafusto vel giavelotum vel pennam archatam propè civitatem vel in glareâ, &c. And the Stat. Astens. coll. ii, c. 35, p. 30, decree: Si quis major annis quindecim in civitate vel in burgis ad sturmum, vel alio loco extrà sturmum malo animo de arcu, vel balistâ, vel cum frundâ vel cazzafusto projecerit, &c.

Cembellum. A kind of hastilude. In the Council at Lillebonne, anno 1080, it was decreed:

Nulli licuit inimicum quærendo vexillum, vel loricam portare, vel cornu sonare, nequè
cembellum mittere postquam insidiæ remanerent. The Chronicle of Bertrand du
Guesclin has:

Se bataille n'avez et estour et cembel, Encontre le castal le chevalier isnel.

Hence the word enkembeler signifies to contend in a hastilude. In a MS. of the Miracles of the blessed Virgin Mary occurs:

Par le valet qui tant est biax, Vient deables de ces chembiax La bone dame enkembeler, Et giler s'ame et tremeler.

Cerbotana, Cerebotana. A machine of the casting kind, called by the Spaniards cerbatana, the Italians cerbottana, and the French sarbatane, or serbacane. In the MS. Treatise De Re Milit. et Machin. Bell. c. 12, it is said: Civitates, rochæ sivè castella acquiruntur per bombardas et cerbotanas, per ignem et incendaria projecta à cerbotanis. Ista frangunt bombardas et cerbotanas, humiditas sivè aqua intùs bombarda, &c. C. 14: Cerbotana ambulatoria. Again, c. 46: Bombarda cerbotana ad longè pillulas suas expluit, quia virtus unita est fortior dispersà. Steph. in his MS. de Infestura, of the War between Pope Sixtus IV and King Ferdinand, an. 1482, says: Tres bombardæ grossæ cum infinitis cerebotanis, et cum aliis artiliariis et instrumentis, de quibus erant onerati innumerabiles carri.

Cervella, Cervelleria, Cervellerium. A covering for the upper part of the head. In the Charter of King Robert, 1324, is: Totidem gorgialium, et cervellarum ccl comptarum per eum, ad opus dictæ nostræ curiæ in Massiliå, statim ex parte nostræ curiæ assignare curetis. The Stat. Ferrar. an. 1279, has: Quòd quilibet custos deputatus ad aliquam custodiam alicujus castri, debeat toto tempore custodiæ habere, bacinellum sivè bonam cervelleriam, spatam, &c. The Stat. Astæ speak of cervelleriæ de ferro. The

invention of this is thus stated in the Chron. Nonantulanum. MS. sub. Fred. II, Imp. Per hæc tempora Michaël Scotus astrologus Frederici Imperatoris familiaris agnoscitur, qui invenit usum armaturæ capitis quæ dicitur cervellerium. Hic cum vidisset se moriturum ictû lapilli biuncis caput læsum, ex laminâ ferreâ sibi fieri fecit capitis infulam, quam gestabat. Cum autem esset in ecclesiâ, et eucharistiâ levaretur in altari, amovit à capite infulam ferream ob reverentiam Christi; tum lapillus biunx in verticem ejus decidit quo cutem læsit parumper. Ille, dubitans lapillum fecit pensari, quæ invento biunci, certus mortis, rebus suis disposuit moriturus.

- Chadabula. The same as cabulus. Guillaume le Breton de Gest. Philip. Aug. an. 1202, has: Tribus lapidibus magna petraria, quæ chadabula vocabatur, emissis.
- CHAMFRENUM. A word of mixed origin, from χάμος or champ and frænum. It is the covering for the horse's nose and cheeks. In the Tabularium Vindocinense is: Dedimus Ivoni unum chamfrenum et Roberto unas caligas vermiculas.
- Charfalium, Chaaffallum. A part of fortification. In a charter, dated 1269, among the proofs of the History of Lyons, is: Item pontes, fossata, barræ, muri, catenæ, portæ, charfalia, et consimiles fortalitiarum novitates à civibus introductæ, ad expensas ipsorum civium amoveantur. In another Charter, dated 1270, also among the same proofs: Item apud S. Vicentium in Chaaffallo, quod erat in Deserta, et in alio propinquo remanserunt massæ murales ad mensuram unius tesæ vel circà. Item de muro chaaffalli, quod fuit constructum apud fontem Ruerii, &c. In a charter at Paris, dated 1384, is: Pluseurs maisons, chaffaut, cave et les appartenances de ce, &c.
- Chavarina. A carbine. In the History of Dauphiny, Tom. II, p. 326, in an extract from an account, dated 1336, is: Item quadraginta sex inter lanceas et chavarinas et venabula iiis. iid. gr.
- Chaufaudus. A tower of wood; by the French called chauffault. In a Charter, dated 1327, is: Pennuncellos regios super duo portalia, et chaufaudos dicti castri in signum salvægardiæ appositos amovit exindè et projecit in terram, et dictos chaufaudos et quoddam molendinum de pertineniis dicti castri per se, et gentes suas diruit. Froissart, Vol. I, c. 121, says: Ceux du chastel decliquerent quatre martinets qu'ils avoient faits nouvellement, pour remedier contre les dits chauffaux. Ces quatre martinets gettoient si grosses pierres et si souvent sur ces chauffaux, qu'ils furent bientost froissez.
- Chelidoniacus Gladius. A broad-bladed sword, with a double and bifurcated point, formed after the manner of a swallow's tail. See Isid. lib. xviii, Orig. c. 6. It is derived from the Greek χελιδών, a swallow, therefore the swallow-tailed sword. Upon this plan also some of the heads of arrows for cross-bows were made.
- Chemise de Chartres. A kind of armour mentioned among the habiliments proper for knights who should engage in single combat.
- Cheuptanus. From the obsolete French word chevetaine, a captain. It occurs in the Charta Fred. Imp. an. 1178, Nec. Dux, marchio, vel comes, nec vicecomes, nec consules nec cheuptani, nec aliquis magna vel parva audeat, &c.

- Chiffa. A kind of fortification. In French guérite. In an agreement, dated 1493, is:

  Dicebat quòd suprà portas bassæ curiæ de Juifs ab antiquo esse solebat quædam chiffa
  pro defensione portalis, et pro conservatione, et habitatione illorum, qui in dicto portali
  faciebant gaytum; quæ quidem chiffa vetustate et nimiâ antiquitate in ruinam collapsa est.
- Chivachirs. From the Anglo-Norman chevaucheurs, horsemen. Nich. Upton de Militari Officio, lib. 1, c. 10, explains it: Qui portant arma dominorum suorum in humero sinistro, et non alibì, qui etiam creantur ex cursoribus, ut per remotionem pixidis armorum dominorum suorum à cingulo, et appositionem in humero sinistro cum fidelitatis juramento domino suo speciali præstando.
- Christiferus. The bearer of the standard, in which was displayed the figure of Christ on the cross.
- CINCTORIUM. The dagger, so called from the same reason as the Roman parazonium, because it was suspended from or put into the girdle.
- CINGULO MILITARI DECORARE. To create a knight, from the practice of investing him with the military girdle. In the Epistle of the Emperor Frederick II to the King of France, respecting the Count of Provençe, is: Et benignè in omnibus tanquàm filium pertractantes, cingulo decoravimus militari, de omni honore ac terra sua investientes ipsum per vexilla. The Roman de Jordain MS. has:

Se mes chers peres nous ceinsist or le branc, Et la colée vous donnast maintenant.

# L'Ordene de Chevalerie MS. has:

Aprez en son estant le liéve,
Si le vous chaint d'une chainture
Blanche, et de petite faiture.
Sire, par chette chainture
Est entendu que vo car nete,
Vo rains, vo cors entierement
Devez tenir tout fermement,
Ainsi com en virginité.
Vos cors tenir en netteté,
Luxure despirer et blasmer,
Car chevaliers doit mout amer
Son cors à nettement tenir,
Car Diex het mout itel ordure.
Li roy respont bien est droiture.

CINGULUM MILITARE AUFERRE. To degrade a knight. Suger, in his Life of Louis VI, c. 21, speaking of Thomas de Marla, says: Cono Prænestinus Episcopus ...... anathemate scilicèt generali detruncans cingulum militarem ei licet absenti decingit; ab omni honore tanquam sceleratum et infamatum, Christiani nominis inimicum, omnium judicio deponit. There is a grant of a military girdle to Edward the Black Prince from the King of Spain, in the new edition of the Fœdera.

- Cinta, Cintum. The exterior surrounding wall of a castle, which the French call enceinte. Rolandus Patavinus de Factis in Marchia Tarvisiana, lib. v, c. 18, says: Erectis etiam trabucchis quam pluribus, frangebant die noctuque castrum et castri palatium, quasi destruxerunt ex toto. Villam etiam et cintam castri die xv exeunte Junio comburerunt. And in lib. xii, c. 14. Die ix exeunte Augusto, consenserunt et dederunt extrinsecis impugnantibus castri munitionem extremam, quæ cortina vulgariter dicitur, sivè cinta.
- CIPPUS, CEPIEL. The keep of the castle, or rather the prison it contained. Philip Mouskes, in his Hist. Fran. MS. says:

Les deus enfans sans nul ator, Mist en prisson en une tour, En un cepiel cascun d'un pié.

- CIRCA, CHERCHIA. The watch or guard. An old charter, apud Perardum in Burgundicis, p. 180, has: Terram quoque Dineti, quam calumniabatur, wirpivit, et circum castelli, quam vi extorquebat, similiter relaxavit. In a charter of Agnes Countess of Nivernois, an. 1191, occurs: Omnes illos, ab exercitu et chevalchiâ et excubatione, scilicet à custodiâ villæ de nocte, quæ cerchia dicitur, quittavimus et franchivimus. It seems to be derived from the same root as the English "search."
- CLAMUCIUM. A hauberk of mail. Jeoffry Malaterre, lib. 11, c. 35, says: Comes Arcadium de Palerna... splendenti clamucio, quo pro loricà utimur, armatum...interfecit.
- CLAVESIGNATI. The Papal troops were so called, i. e. such of them as had the keys on their standards and clothes.
- CLIBANARII. The cataphracti equites, or knights, who, with their horses, were clad in mail. Papias says: Clibanaris, quasi tunica ferri; and a Latin Glossary, in the French king's library, gives a similar definition. The Glossæ Basilican has: Κλιβανάριοι, ὁλοσίδηροι, κλίβανα γὰρ οἱ Ρώμαῖοι τὰ σίδηρα καλύμματα καλῶσι, ἀντι τᾶ καλαμῶνα (others καλαμῶνα). Nazarius, in his Panegyric of Constantine, explains it thus: Operimento ferri equi atque homines pariter obsepti: clibanariis in exercitu nomen est. Superne omnibus tectis equorum pectoribus, demissa lorica et crurum tenùs pendens, sine impedimento gressus, à noxâ vulneris vendicabat. Ammian. lib. xvi: Sparsique cataphracti equites, quos clibanarios dictitant Persæ, thoracum muniti tegminibus, et limbis ferreis cincti, &c. Alexander Severus, in his speech to the senate, after his victory over the Persians, says: Centum et viginti quinque millia equitum fudimus: cataphractarios, quos illi (Persæ) clibanarios vocant, decem millia in bello interemimus: eorum armis nostros armavimus. From the two last quotations the word seems to be of Persian origin, and Salmasius is therefore wrong in deriving it from the Greek.
- CLIBANUS, CLIBANUM. A short hauberk, which the later Greeks called κλίζανον, because it covered the breast. An anonymous author, De Re Bellicâ post Notitiam Imperii de Thoraconacto, says: Ut hoc induta primum lorica vel clibanus, aut his similia.

CLIBANUS. A tower. Abbo de Bellis Paris, lib. 1, says:

Clibanus ob humile quantum speculæ sinuatus Sæva per ora duit quamvis ignobile nomen.

CLIENS. An esquire. The monk Florentius de Expugnat. Acconensi says: Sunt triginta milites et horum clientes. Guillaume le Breton, lib. vi, of his Phil. has:

Ter denosque equites et septuaginta clientes.

Also many other authors have the same. In the visitation of a castle, anno 1347, in the History of Dauphiny, it is said: Castellanus interrogatus fuit quam familiam ipse tenebat, dixit quod unum Scutiferum, unum Clientem, unam Gaytam, et unum Bayetam. And in the same history it is put for an ordinary soldier or man at arms, where Humbert the dauphin, in 1283, promises to aid Archiepiscopum et Capitulum Vienn. contra omnes homines, suis propriis sumptibus et expensis, cum centum hominibus armatis in equis, et cum tercentis balistariis, et septingentis clientibus cum lanceis. In the letter of Pope Alexander III, it appears employed to signify any common soldier. Thus: Nec ulli liceat præter armatos milites et clientes quælibet arma ferre, nisi milites enses solummodò, et clientes singulos baculos, qui pacis, sicuti ceteri, debent securitate gaudere.

CLUNICULUM. A sword. Ugutius says: Spatha, splendona, quod pendeat à clune, vel quod dependat.

CLYPEUS SEPULCRIS MILITUM APPENSUS. The shield of illustrious persons were hung over their monuments. Hence the inscription of Geof<sup>y</sup> de Joinville: Et pour ce qu'il trespassa en la terre (sainte) sans hoirs de son cors, pour ce que renommée ne perisse, en apourta Jean cils de Joinville son escu, aprés ce qu'il demeura au service dou S. Roy Louys outremer l'espace de sept ans. Li dit sires de Joinville mist son escu à S. Lorent, afinque on priast pour li. The custom is borrowed from remote antiquity. Virgil 6 Æneid, says:

At prius Eneas ingenti mole sepulchrum Imposuit suaque arma viro, &c.

Coco, Cocona. A machine of war in the form of an egg, from the Italian cocco. In the MS. Treatise De Re Mil. et Mach. Bel. c. 12, is: Coconæ ligni duri et tenacis debent esse. Coconæ in canna intùs nimis percussum ultra debitum. And in c. 42: Incendorium intus tangens coconem, &c.

Cocura, Cocurra. A quiver. See Leo's Tactics.

Cognizances, called by the later Greeks δώγμωλα. Vegetius, lib. 1, c. 18, de Milit. says: Diversis coloribus diversa in scutis signa pingebant, ut ipsi nominant δώγμωλα, sicut etiam nunc moris est fieri. The Roman de Rou has:

N'i a riche homme ne baron Qui n'ait cés lui son gonfanon, Ou gonfagnon, ou autre enseigne, Ou sa mesnie se restraingne, Connoissances, ou entresains, De plusieurs guises escus pains.

The Roman d'Aubery MS. has:

Sa connoissance fu d'un pail mult cler.

William Guiart, describing the standard of the Emperor Otho, at the battle of Bovines, says:

Cils dragons soutint la banniere Des connoissances l'emperiere.

Also relating the death of Manfred in his account of St. Louis:

En la chace est Manfred tué, Més onc nus homs ne pot à dire Pour certin qui le pot ocire : Car le jour de celes nuisances Porta estranges connoissances.

And afterwards, speaking of Henry Consentinus, who put on the armour of King Charles, at the battle in which Conrad was overcome:

El premerain pour le conduire Est li preus Henris de Cosances, Cel jour porta les connoissances Du roi, par quoi plustot peri.

Cognizances are at least coeval in point of origin with armorial bearings, if not of prior date. In the twelfth century Henry II adopted certain distinctive figures, which had a descriptive reference to his name, and by which he might be recognised: these were the planta genistæ, or broom-sprig, and a genet passing between two broom trees. The first of these is visible on the helmet of Richard I, and also on each side of his throne on his great seal. For many succeeding centuries they appear in England to have been confined to royal use, but after the reign of Richard II we find them adopted by several of the nobility. They do not seem to have been substituted for armorial devices in the field, excepting upon banners, and that only during the civil wars between the houses of York and Lancaster, but were chiefly as ornaments on the caparison of horses. Thomas Mowbray Duke of Norfolk appeared against Henry Duke of Hereford, in the celebrated joust at Coventry, upon a horse covered with trappings of velvet, embroidered with lions and mulberry trees, intended to typify his name.

Соноректа. Armour. In the Stat. Arelat. MS. is: Consules Arelatis non possint accomodare cohopertas, nec balistas, nec alia arma communis, nisi tempore guerræ.

Coifeta. The head covering, coiffe, or rather coifette de fer. In a letter rem. dated 1355, is:

Cum de quibusdam laurica (so spelt) casside, vel coifeta vulgariter, ense, clipeo et

chirothecis ferreis, aut ferratis se munissent. Another, in 1354: De uno ense cum duabus manibus super caput ipsius percusserunt per talem modum, quòd nisi fuisset quædam coiffeta ferrea, quam portabat super caput, ipsum occidissent. In the Poem of Gerard Nivernois it is said:

Girard tira l'espee hors du fourel, Si assene à celui sur la coiffe d'acier, Un cop si grant, &c.

The Roman de Perceval says:

Et lor la coiffe li assiet Le hiaume qui mout bien siet.

Coleria. A collar. In the Munition. Castror. Dom. Reg. are: IIII helmes dupplices, xxvi capellos ferri, et x colerias. In an account, dated 1337, occurs: Deux cent dix hommes bien armez de plates, de bacinez, de collers, autrement gorgieres de fer.

Collare, Collarium. Armour for the neck. In Rymer's Fædera occurs: Pro lxi colariis datis diversis militibus et armigeris. Unum colarum de auro.

Colubrina. A Culverine. In the municipal laws of Mechlin, tit. 11, art. 20, it is said: Nemini fas est intrà mœnia bombardas manuarias aut colubrinas secum ferre, nisi, &c. Ariosto, in his Rol. Furioso, lib. 1x, says:

E qual bombarda, e qual nomina scoppio, Qual simplice cannon, qual cannon doppio. Qual sagra, qual falcon, qual colubrina Sento nomar, come al suo auctor più aggrada.

Confanonerius. A standard-bearer.

Confanonum, Confanonum. A standard or gonfanon.

CONNESTABLIE. The military force belonging to the constable. Thus the Roman de Garin MS. has:

Quinze mille furent en la connestablie, A cleres armes, as destriers dé Nubie.

So William Guiart, under the year 1304, has:

Assemble ses connestablies.

And again:

O eus une connestablie De soudoyers de Piguardie.

Constabularius Castri. The officer of cavalry to whom the custody of a fortress or town was submitted.

COOPERTORIUM, COOPERTOREUM FERREUM. Body-armour. In the will of Bartholw de Lega, is:

- Item G. nepoti suo loricam et coopertoria ferrea et caligas ferreas. In the will of Hengerome de Budlecs, is: Item coopertorea sua ferrea et unam loricam.
- Coopertorius. The maker of housings for horses. In the Stat. of Avignon is: Sellerii et coopertorii teneantur fideliter facere officium suum, et non apponantur in bardis, bardonibus, sellis et coopertoriis nisi borium, et cotonum.
- COPHA. The same as cophia. In the Stat. Massil. occurs: Qui arma picta faciunt sivè facient in Massiliâ, vel cophas vel galeas, &c.
- COPHIA. The coif of mail. In the Vitâ S. Guillelmi is: Ut et galeatus posset ad bellum procedere, ad modum sui capitis ferreum tegumen fieri jussit, quod vulgò cophia dicitur, quam postquam Domini miles in capite sumpsit, eam ulterius non removit. "And in order that he might proceed to battle helmeted, he ordered an iron covering for his head to be made to fit it, which is commonly called a coif, which, after a knight has had placed on his head by his lord, he cannot remove."
- CORALE, CORALIA. Thigh-pieces. In the Stat. Mant. occurs: Arma verò ad defensionem sint et intelligantur panceria, guarnacia, cassettus, coralia, gamberiæ, &c.
- Coricula. Armour probably for the thighs. Thus in the Munit. Cast. D. Reg. are: Loricæ xviii, coriculæ xi, galeæ xv, &c.
- CORNAL, CORONEL, CHRONEL. The head of a jousting-lance, so called from its resemblance to a little crown. Twelve were allowed to a tilter in the time of Henry VI.
- Corsetus ferreus. The shirt of mail, so called in an inventory of stores in the Castram. Civit. Carcass. an. 1294.
- Cossiala. Italian coscia. French cuisse. The Stat. Montis Reg. has: Si quis aliquem cum gladio irato animo, percusserit et sanguinem exire fecerit, si quidem in brachio, vel tibià vel cossià, pede, &c. The thighs were termed cossia, from the French; these were, therefore, the thigh-pieces. Thus the MS. Tract De Re Mil. et Machin. Bellic. c. 142, has: Post equites armatos torace, cossialis, gamberiis, &c.
- Costalarius. A small cutting-weapon, called by the French coutelas, and by the English cutlass. In the Concil. Hispan. it is said: Arma portant diversorum generum et signanter costalarios et gladios. Statuimus quod de cætero non portent de die neque de nocte costelarios neque coltellos. In the Stat. Eccles. Cadurcensis occur: Balistas et arcus, lanceas, falsones, costalarios, seu alia arma non deferant. Du Cange supposes, that coterel is of the same signification, an old French poet saying:

Si le convient armer,
Pour la tiere garder;
Coterel et haunet,
Et maçue et guibet,
Arc et lance enfumée,
Qu'il n'ait soin de mélee.
Qu'avec lui ait couchiée
L'espee enrouillée,
Puis ait son viel escu.

Coustepointarius. A manufacturer of coustepoints, which greatly resembled, if not altogether the same as, the pourpoint.

- COYRATIA. A cuirass. In the constitutions of Frederick King of Sicily is: Videntes igitur ab experto quosdam fideles nostros morem novum et alienigenum usurpantes, pancerias seu coyratias de maleis vel arma privatim vel occultè deferre, &c.
- Crenum, Crenus. The crenelle or turret. In an account of Milan castle is: Item tenentur (habitatores) claudere ipsum locum palo et creno congruo, videlicet lissas, et barbacanas et barreyras de guerrâ vicinâ.
- CROCHIA. A watching. In the charter of Agnes Countess of Nivernois, an. 1191, is: Ab omni exercitu et chevalchiâ et excubatione, quæ vulgò crochia dicitur, quittavimus.
- Cuirena, Cuirenia. A thorax of buffalo's hide, without sleeves, whence the name. In French cuirie, or commonly colletin.
- Cuissellus, Cuisserius, Cuisserius. Iron coverings for the thighs. In the will of Odo de Rossillon, an. 1298, occurs: Meos cuisellos, meos chantones, meum cultellum, &c.
- CULTELLARII. Soldiers armed with cultelli, such as the sicarii mentioned by Josephus and others. The Statutes of Raymond Count of Toulouse, in 1152, say: Si quis aliquem hominem malum, quem cultellarium dicimus, cum cultellis euntem nocte causâ furandi occiderit, nullum damnum patiatur propter hoc. Froissart, Vol. I, c. 19, calls them coustilliers. Monstrellet, Vol. III, p. 29, does the same. See also Berri's History of Charles VII, and Ravestanco in Tacticis, p. 81. These were called by the English coustrils and custrils.
- Cultellus, Cutellus. The military knife which served occasionally for a dagger. Rigord, in the year 1214, says: Habebant cultellos longos, graciles, triacumines, quolibet acumine indifferenter secantes, à cuspide usque ad manubrium, quibus, utebantur pro gladiis. The French call them coustilles. The Chron. of Bertrand du Guesclin, says:

Et s'avoient coustilles, qui bien furent tranchans.

And again:

Chacun lance deus cos, ains qui fussent finez, Puis traient les coustilles par vive poesté.

- In a letter rem. dated 1351, is: De quodem magno cutello, Gallicé dicto coutille, prædictum Galterum in tibià percussit Theobaldus. Another, dated 1375, has: Garni et premuni...d'une grant coutille ou misericorde.
- Curacia, Curatia, Curassa, Carassina, Curazia. A cuirass. In a charter, dated 1335, is:

  Armaturas etiam in dictis galeis infráscriptas habebunt, scilicet in quâlibet ipsarum—

  curacias cxxx. In the Chron. Mutin, 1325, is: Depopulatis etiam ibidem tentoriis,
  balistis, loricis, clypeis, curatiis, &c. In a MS. Formula is: Munitus armorum generibus,
  utpotè gladio, curatiâ, ense, bloquerio, &c. In a criminal process, in the year 1488:

  Armati cum curassis, salatis, ensibus, &c.
- Curellus. A kind of lorica. In the Stat. Massil. is: Generaliter decernimus observandum à modo, quod omnes mercatores portantes in aliquâ nave Massiliæ valens C. lib. regal. vel amplius, habeant et portent loricam vel ausbergotum in quodcumque viagium ibunt per

pelagus et similiter: omnes portantes valens cc lib. vel amplius portent garnisonem, et pro servitiali suo ausbergotum vel curellum.

- Curetta. A cuirass. In an account, dated 1333, occurs: Item, pro curettis tribus, barbuta una, et cerbelleria una, unc. III. taren xvIII.
- Currus. A carriage on which was erected a stage to attack fortified places. The MS. Treat. De Re Mil. et Mach. Bell. c. 58, says: Currus cum cabiis, &c. et debet esse contextus dictus currus tegillis sivè tabulis duplicatis ex parte anteriori currûs, ac etiam inter dictas perticas ponantur fuscinæ lignaminum, aut sachi lana sive aridio pleni, aut feno, aut fimo, ne bombarda offendant currum nec homines præliantes in curru stantes.
- Curtana. Curtain. The sword of King Edward the Confessor, which was carried before the kings of England, at their coronation, by the Earl of Chester, the edge and point blunted as an emblem of mercy. Such a sword is still shewn at the Tower of London, and is now carried between that of Justice temporal and Justice spiritual. Matthew Paris, speaking of the preparations made for the nuptials of Henry III, in 1236, says: Comite Cestriæ gladium S. Edwardi, qui curtein dicitur, ante regem bajulante, in signum, quod comes est palatinus, et regem si oberret, habeat de jure potestatem cohibendi. That this office belonged to the Duke of Lancaster we learn from the coronation procession of King Richard II: Johannes rex Castiliæ et Legionis, Dux Lancastriæ coràm dicto D. Rege, et consilio suo comparens clamavit, ut comes Leicestriæ officium senescalciæ Anglicæ, et ut Dux Lancastriæ ad gerendum principalem gladium D. regis vocatum curtana, et ut comes Lincolnensis ad scindendum et secandum corâm ipso D. rege sedente ad mensam dicto die coronationis, &c. See Cooke on Littleton, s. 35. Rymer, in the Coronation of Edward II, anno 1308, has: Gladium qui vocatur curtens portavit comes Lancastriæ. The French poet Morelle, on the Triumph of Henry le Grand, says:

Ces lames de Damas, ces coutelas chantez, Ce branc que nos guerriers portoient à leurs costez, Sous les titres pompeux bruient dedans l'histoire, Mais Joyeuse, Corto, Flamberge, Dordonnois, Rompié, Durandal èt Courtin le Danois Cedent à son taillant, et bien plus à sa gloire.

Swords had often names given to them: thus Saxo, lib. II, speaking of that belonging to the king of Denmark, says: Biarco utebatur præstantis acuminis, inusitatæque longitudinis gladio, quem Lovi vocabat; "Biarco made use of a sword of exquisite sharpness and of an unusual length, which was called Love." Again, in lib. IV, he mentions: Erat regi inusitati acuminis gladius, Skrep dictus, qui quodlibet obstaculi genus uno ferientis ictu medium penetrando diffinderet. "The king possessed a sword of unusual sharpness, called Skrep, which, whatever might be the nature of the obstacle, it would cleave in two by one blow struck in the middle." And further on, lib. VII, he says: Haldenus avitos à matre gladios recepit, quorum alter Liusingus, alter Hwyntingus ob collimati acuminis nitorem vocabulum habuit. "Haldene received from his mother two swords which

had belonged to his ancestors, one of which was called Liusing, and the other Hwynting, on account of the splendour of their shining converging points." So among the Britons, the sword of Arthur was named Caliburn; and among the Franks, that of Oliver termed Durandal. But even so late as the time of Henry the Eighth names were thus bestowed in Germany, for one, in the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq. has on its cross-bar the following verse:

Ein neuver Harlig heist Grobian, Den will yetz fir ein yeder man.

"A new favourite, named Ruffian, And he is ready for every man."

Cyclas. A garment closed round the body. It appears to have been that which succeeded the surcoat, and preceded the guipon. John the monk of Mairmontier, in lib. 1, Hist. Gaufredi Ducis Norman. describing the military ceremonies observed by the Duke, says: Gaufredum bysso retorta ad carnem indutum, et Cyclade auro textâ supervestitum. "Geoffry, &c. having put on a surcoat woven like a cyclas with gold." An anonymous writer on the Ceremonies of the Knights of the Bath, tells us, that the candidates were clad in the cyclas. It was also called ciglaton and sigleton, the same author acquainting us that Il sera amendé, c'est assavoir avec un converton d'or appellé sigleton. "It shall be amended, that is to say, with a coverture of gold called sigleton;" and afterwards he terms it singleton. It does not appear, however, to have become a military garment till the reign of Edward II.

DAG. A kind of pistol. The name is peculiar to Great Britain.

Dagga, Daggardum, Daga, Dagarium, Diga, and Dagha. A dagger. The Spaniards call it daga, the French dague, the Welsh dagr. From the Chronicle of Cornelius Zantfliet it would appear to be of a cutting nature. Habens sicam vel daggam ad latus, but it was characteristically a stabbing weapon. Thus in Walsingham we read: Extracto cultello daggardo ejus cerebrum perforavit. Henry of Knighton, under the reign of Edward III, has: Habentes cultellos quos daggerios vulgariter dicunt. In a work, called The Justice of the Peace, p. 730, it is said: Longum daggarum suum extraxit, et in præfatum N. insultum fecit. Also Octavianus de St. Gelais, in Viridario Honoris, has:

Harnois compleits de fine armurerie, Trez, arbalestres, dague de Praguerie.

In the Hist. Transl. S. Appolinaris the dagger is thus explained: Diga sivè magnus cultellus. Their size was limited by the second Council of Pisa. Nec dagas seu cul-

tellos ferant ultrà longitudinem palmi unius, præter Palefranarios cum Dominos comitabantur.

Darda, Dardus. A dart. In a Memoriale potestatum Regiensium, dated 1284, preserved by Muratori, we read: Quod audiens iste insanus, statim cum cultro suo, sivè cum dardâ percussit episcopum, et perforavit corpus ejus. Abbo, lib. 1, De Bellis Parisiacis, has:

At turris nocturna gemit dardis terebrata.

And-

..... Dardumque ferens castella petivit Illorum.

So in lib. II:

Scuta tonant, dardique volant.

In a convention respecting the necessary arms, dated 1345, in the Hist. of Dauphiny, occurs: Platæ, cervellariæ cc, gorgeriæ cc. clxxx pavesii, cc lanceæ, cccc dardi. In a MS. by Lidgate, in the Brit. Museum, is an illumination representing a king holding a dart, and they frequently occur in the paintings of Henry the Fifth's time. From these also we discover that they were feathered and barbed. Henri de Gauchi, in a MS. version of the book De Regimine Principum, says: La terre chose est con leur doit apenre à traire sajetes, à lancer des dars, et ferir des lances. Again: Et sachiés qu'à bien jetter une lance ou un dard, on le doit bransler, et puis jetter rudement. The Genoese were considered as expert at this. Hence in the Chronicle of Bertrand du Guesclin it is said:

Et vint mille Genois, qui vont tous dars lançant.

Again:

Vinrent li Genevois desus Giennes seans, Qui lancerent de dars ainsi que payens.

Octavian de S. Gelais, in Viridario Honoris, has:

Bec de faulcons, dar des Portingaloises.

This name appears also to have been given to a short stabbing sword, for in a letter rem. dated 1376, it is said: Præfatus Pillardus eumdem exponentem cum gladio invasit, quod videns dictus exponens ad sui defensionem quandam dardum, quam in manu suâ tenebat, opposuit, et finaliter dimissis per eos hinc inde gladio et dardâ, præfati exponens et Johannes Pillardus se ad invicem acceperunt. Præfatus exponens vim vi repellendo eumdem Pillardum solo ictu dictâ dagâ percussit. Exponens portans in zonâ suâ unum

bazalardum, et in manu suâ unam dardam pictam de viridi. In another letter, dated 1381, we read: Armez d'une cote de fer, d'une espée, d'une taloche, et d'une darde ou demi-glaive.

DECASTELLARE. To dismantle. Richard de S. Germain, in his Chronicle, has: Rediens ad monasterium, illud tantum decastellavit reliquis sibi castellis retentis.

**DEVICE.** A motto, emblem, or other mark, by which the nobility and gentry were distinguishable at tournaments.

Dexterari, Dextrari, Dextrales, Destrales. Called by the French destriers or dêtriers, because the pages led them by the right hand. In English they were termed chargers and war-horses. Wm. of Newbury, lib. 11, c. 11, has: Equo ejus militari, quem dextrarium vocant, ablato, &c. The Chron. Colmariense, under the year 1298, has: Habebant dextrarios, id est, equos magnos, qui inter equos communes, quasi Bucephalus Alexandri, inter alios eminebat. Brunet, in Thesauro MS. says: Il y a chevaus de plusieurs manieres, à ce que li un sont destrier grant pour le combat, li autre sont palefroy pour chevaucher à l'aise de son cors: li autres son roncis pour sommes porter, &c. In the Consuet. Cenomanensis, art. 55, occurs: Est entendue destrier, un grand cheval de guerre; coursier, un cheval de lance. Radulphus de Diceto, under the year 1198, has: Dextrarii capti sunt ducenti, quorum septies 20 cooperti fuerunt ferro. In an antient MS. poem de Vulpe is:

Dessus les destriers Arabis. A leur costez les brans forbis.

Joan. de Garlandia, in Synonymis, has:

Estque manu Mannus, dextræ dextrarius aptus.

The continuator of Nangius MS. says: Et après venoient les grans chevaux et palefrois du roy très-richement ensellez, et les valetz les menoient en dextre sur autres ronssins. They were called by the Byzantine writers Δεξιοί. Thus Leo Grammaticus in Michaële, p, 469, says: Καὶ ἀπελθών εὖξον ἀυτὸν ἐντετυλιγμένον ἐν τῷ σαγίσμαλι τοῦ δεξιῦ ἵππε, οῦ πλαυνεν.

Draconarius. The standard-bearer of the Roman army who carried the dragon. This had been a Dacian ensign, and was introduced by Trajan after their defeat by the Romans. Montfaucon, in his Antiq. Expl. has given a print of one of these from the Trajan column, which seems exactly to accord with the account of Ammianus, lib. xv, and Claudian, in Rufinum. The dragon was an emblem in the British standard from the days of Paganism till those of Henry VII. Roger Hoveden, under 1191, speaking of the expedition of Richard I against the Saracens, says: Cum rex Angliæ fixisset signum suum in medio et tradidisset Draconem suum Petro de Pratellis ad portandum contrà calumniam Roberti Trusebut, qui illum portare calumniatus est de jure prædecessorum suorum, &c. So in an account in the Chamber of Accounts at Paris, it is said, Monseigneur Robert Bertran tient son fié de notre Sire le Roy, par baronnie, et doit à

### DR-DU

nostre Sire le Roy son service; c'est à sçavoir de cinq chevaliers, et doit porter le dragon du duc de Normandie. This symbol is on some of the shields of the knights in the Bayeux tapestry. Henry of Knighton, speaking of the expedition of Henry III, in 1245, against the Welsh, says: Animans suos milites quotidiè armatus incessit, et vexillum suum regale explicans, quasi Draco, qui nemini novit parcere, exterminium generale Walliæ minabatur. And Mat. West. under 1264, has: Acies tamen regalis, quæ signo regio, quod draconem vocant, digladiale mortis judicium prætendente exstitit insignita, progreditur. The Earls of Flanders also had this standard. Thus the Chronicon Andrense says: Standardum altissimum dragonem desuper deferentem comes secum super currum quatuor rotarum duci fecit: quod rex Francorum indignè tulit. Almost all nations used it at times. Hence the Roman de Garin has:

A une part est au roy avisé, Por le dragon que il vit venteler, Et l'oriflambe esgarda par delez.

Again:

Porta l'ensagne, là o li dracons ert.

Dragoons. Horse soldiers who formerly served either on foot or as cavalry, and were so called after the draconarii of the Romans.

Duellum. The formula for judicial combats, used in the time of Richard II, may be seen at length in Spelman's Glossary, p. 100.

Dunjo, Donjo, Dangio. A fortress on a hill, antiently called Dun, Don, or Din, in the Celtic dialects. Lambertus Ardensis, p. 148, says: Ardensem dunjonem pontibus, portis, et necessariis communivit ædificiis. Eadmer de S. Anselmi Similitudinibus, c. 76, has: In villa vero rex habet castellum quoddam, supra castellum autem unum dungeonem. The Roman de Jordain, MS. says:

Je ne voi ville, fermeté, ne donjon.

And in the Roman de Garin, MS. is:

Nes les garra donjon ne rolleis.

Ordericus Vitalis, lib. 11, p. 834, uses the word Dangio, thus Prædictus Comès, et Helvisa comitissa dangionem regis apud Ebroas funditus dejecerunt. Again in lib. x11, page 878. Robertus de Candos munio regii danjonis. And p. 851. Aliaque castra ei concessit, præter dangiones, quos propriis excubitoribus assignavit. So in the Roman de Rou:

Et li Dus fist son gonfanon Porter et lever el Danjon.

#### EF-EN

Duplectus, Duplodes, Dupploytum. According to Du Cange from the Greek Διπλοϊδες, doublets. In the Justice of Peace, p. 69, is: Vi et armis, videlicet baculis, gladiis, arcubus, sagittis, loricis, duplodibus defens: &c. The Roman d'Athis MS. has:

Ung doublet et chascun vestu D'un vert samit pourpoint menu.

In the Paston Letters, Vol. I, p. 40, is mentioned a doublet of velvet mailed, which was probably one lined with little plates of iron, or else having sleeves of chain-mail.

EFFORSARE. To fortify. In the Confirmation of the Privileges of the Church of Narbonne, in 1165, apud Acher. vol. XIII, Spicil. p. 319, it is said: Liceat jam dicto Pontio Archipræsuli et successoribus suis, omnia castra, quæ nunc habet et possidet, condirigere et efforsare.

EMOLIMENTA, EMOLUMENTA. Sharp and polished arms; called by the French esmollues. Thus Odo, on the various Fortunes of Ernest Duke of Bavaria, apud Marten. vol. III, Anecd. col. 372, says:

Deinde viros acres ducens ad bella ducentos, Et quadringentis dans emolimenta lanistis, Assiduis armis Agarenos concutit, urbes, Obruit, et villas flamma populatur et arva.

In an account, dated 1324, in the Hist. Dauph. is the following: Item, una mola ad emolanda ferramenta, gladios et alia emolumenta ferrea pro xv d. gran.

Enseniator. A mounted standard-bearer, from the Italian insegna, an ensign. The Chron. Dom. de Gravina has: Quos (knights) quum rex vidit, regratians enseniatori, illos, datis armis et equis, acquisitoribus suis liberari mandavit.

Ensiludium. A contest in sport with swords, being one of the games for acquiring a knowledge of arms. The continuator of the Chron. Esten. under the year 1364, has: Dominus Marchio fecit fieri ensiludium in palatio suo. A letter, dated 1426, has: Le suppliant se feust transporté à ung lieu pres de Bayeux, ouquel avoit grant nombre de gens assemblez pour ung jeu publique qui y estoit, c'est assavoir de l'espee à deux mains. This date is soon after the introduction of the two handed sword. Another, in 1450, says: Le suppliant et plusieurs autres estant assemblez en nostre ville de Paris en l'ostel de la Pie près S. Gervais, pour aprandre à jouer et eulx ébatre du jeu de l'espée à deux mains soub maistre Guillemet de Montroy, &c. In a letter remissory, dated 1395, is: Lambelin qui tenoit une grosse espee, et le dit suppliant un badelaire commencierent à eulz esbattre et jouer du jeu de l'escremie, et en getter l'un à l'autre. In another, dated

#### EN-ER

1390, we read: Oudinet le Fevre, pauvre varlet feure tira un badelaire qu'il avoit, et en reculant commença à escremir contre eux qui le suivoient, en escremissant, &c. The MS. Chronicle of Bertrand du Guesclin has:

Car il savoit assez d'estour et d'escremie.

In the Mirac. B. M. V. lib. 1, MS. is:

Ele set tant de l'escremie, Que de tous cex m'escremira, Et par tout me garandira.

Esmoucher signifies the same. Thus in a letter remissory, dated 1399, it is said: Icellui Bery commença à esmouchier et deffendre de son coustel, et en soy esmouchant en bleça les aucuns. Another, in 1403, has: Sacha icellui Frelon un petit coustel.....et s'en prist à esmoucher et demener contre le dit Bourdois, aussi que s'ils voulsissent jouer du boucler. Hence also esquarmuncher. In a letter remissory, dated 1380, it is said: Lequel exposant tira un coustel baselaire qu'il portoit à sa ceinture, et en feri le dit Besançon en soy esquarmunchant.

Ensis a Estoc. A stabbing sword, usually carried at the saddle-bow. In an arret of the Parliament at Paris, dated 1385, it is said: Perrin Bonnot, qui avoit une espée batue en sa main, de laquelle il avoit joué le jour dessusdit au jeu du bouclier.

Ensis Garnitus. A sword with its sheath and furniture compleat. Thus in a deed dated 1276, ex Tabul. Archiep. Auxit. it is said: Et faciat dicto domino archiepiscopo unum ensem garnitum trium solidorum Morlanorum in signum cognitionis, &c. At this period the scabbard was frequently highly ornamented with armorial bearings.

Equus ad Arma. Cheval d'armes. A charger.

Ericius. A latinization of the word herse, a military machine, for defending castles, &c. Otto de S. Blasio has: Cæsar itaque omnem reliquum apparatum quem ad expugnationem civitatis fecerat scilicet talpas, vulpeculas, ericios, cattos, (talibus enim censentur nominibus) exuri præcepit. See also Cæsar himself de Bell. Civil. lib. 111, who uses the word Ericeus, which his commentators explain as a machine bristled with weapons and therefore from the Frankish Herisse. So likewise Sallust. Lambert, in Hist. Comit. Ardens. says: Turrim, quis nesciat apud Sangatam ab eodem comite Balduino firmatam et fossatis circumcinctam et ericiis et propugnaculis munitam. Again: Reparato exterioris Ardensis munitionis valli fossato et amplificato, et sepibus et ericiis consepto. It was the name too of a marine animal, some suppose it derived ἀπὸ τῦ τρωτίν, but if so, it should be written heritius.

Philip Mouskes, calls it Erice, thus:

Et si ont bien leurs murs ourdés, Et de nouviel fais et fondés, Les Erices ont pris et raiens. Escauserius, Escuderius, Escuerius. An escuyer, or esquire. In the Chron. S. Martial Lemovic. is: Erat in Lemovico castro quidem Miles nomine Petrus, Escauserius S. Martialis. The Charter of Raimond, abbot of Moissy, in the year 1212, has the following: Albergam duobus militibus et duobis escuderiis. In a deed dated 1234, in the royal library, is: Ego Johannes de Ferreriis miles dedi, concessi et feodavi Roberto de Jumeliis, escuerio meo pro homagio suo, et servitio, quod mihi fecit, quadriginta solidos annui redditus. In the covenant between Odo Bishop of Paris, and John Abbot of St. Genov. in 1202, is the following: Extra septa canonicorum sex servitores, scilicet tres escuerii abbatis, unus serviens capicerii, &c. And in a letter dated 1432, Thomas Damport escuier de chambre du duc de Bedford.

Espaerius. A sword-cutler, from the French espée.

Esparut. A kind of broad-sword. In a letter remissory, dated 1370, it is said: Les aucuns armez de costes de fer, les autres portans et aians hachettes, espafuts, espées, boucliers et autres maniers d'armeures. Another, in 1384, says: Colart prist un espafut et feri le suppliant de rechief. Jehan de Lourme armé de haubergon et garni d'un espafu.

Espietus, Expiotus. A dart. In a letter remissory, dated 1361, is: Quem Marotum cum uno espieto percussit, ex quâ percussione mors fuisse dicitur insecuta. An arret of the Parliament at Paris, in 1338, has: Item sex lanceas, item duos espieus. In a letter remissory, dated 1376, is: Icellui Josset print en sa main un baston, appelle communément espiet, et fery le suppliant dudit espiet un grant cop sur l'espaule. According to a letter, dated 1355, however, it appears described as a kind of sword: Cum quodam ense seu gladio evaginato, nuncupato espoy de guerre, supervenit.

Espringala. An espringale, or springale; a machine for throwing darts: sometimes called espringold.

Estoquem. The estoc was so called. Hence the verbs estiquer, estocer, estochier and estoquer. In a letter, dated 1374, is: Icellui bastard et ses complices se avancerent vers la porte de la ville que il trouverent fermée, et y estiquerent de lances et de piques en faisant assaut fourmel. Icellui Jehan estiqua ou ficha de son plançon sur le rondel tant fendi.

Estrif. A kind of arrow, according to Du Cange, ejected from a balista. In the Munitions of the Royal Castles of France is the following: Pictaviæ x balistæ ad estref, et ij balistæ ad duos pedes. Losdunum, iv balistæ ad duos pedes et vj ad estrevium xx<sup>m</sup> quadrelli ad estrevium. It appears to me, however, that the word merely distinguishes the kind of cross-bow, and was in reality the stirruped arbaleste.

ETESA. A species of arms or armour. Odo, on the various Fortunes of Ernest Duke of Bavaria, says:

Ad fera bella viri veniunt, quos inter in armis Sexcenti fulgent equites clypeisque coruscant. Lunatas Morini peltas, Etesasque comati Apportant Galli, Germani quas agitata Funda jacit glandes; hi fustibus, ære minantur, Præsutis animas jaculis penetrantibus illi.

FACASTRUM, FALCAUSTRUM. The bill, or military sickle. In the Hist. Excidii Acconis, 1291, MS. we read: Portantes ibidem lanceas, falcastra, cassides et loricas. In the Justice of Peace, p. 77, it is said: Cum aliis ignotis de covina sua et associatis, vi et armis, scilicet gladiis, baculis, vagis, falcastris, arcubus et sagittis, &c. Bills seem to have been used from at least as early as the time of Henry III to that of the commencement of Henry VIIth's time, when they were superseded by halberts. A weapon still more nearly resembling a scythe, and called by the French faulx, was first resorted to for defending a breach, and preventing the enemy from scaling the walls at Mons, when besieged by Louis XIV. In a letter remissory dated 1393, is: En laquelle forge le suppliant print un baston, nommé Fauchart.

FALCATORES, FALCITENENS. Billmen; troops armed with the military sickle or bill. In the Glossæ Issid. Falcarius is explained to be gladiator falcem gerens.

Falchio, Falcio, Falco, Falco, Fauchon. A faulchion; perhaps the sword was first so called when the inner edge was sharpened, in resemblance of the hand-bill, and afterwards the name was applied generally to any sword. Nicolaus de Braia, in Ludovico viii, has:

Non arcus, non hasta gravis, non sæpe bipennis Non desunt falces, gladiis armantur acutis.

Wm. Guiart, in his MS. History of France, says:

Plommées fermement tenuës, Fauchons, juisarmes esmoluës.

Again, in St. Louis:

Fauchons et coutiaus et espées.

Again:

Aus fauchons, aus coutiaus à pointes.

Again, under the year 1295:

Hasches, espies, juisarmes, lances, Fauchons, coutiaus, ars, arbalestes Et sajettes de traire prestes. And under 1296:

Aus fauchons tranchans et aus hasches Pour fairir à une main faites, S'entrenuaissent de retraites D'estos et de tailles diverses.

The Statuta Ecclesiæ Aguensis say: Statutum fuit quod nullus canonicus, nullus clericus portare audeat cultellum armorum, falchionem pennatum, clavem ensem, aut alia arma. The Statutes of the Cistertian Order, dated 1202, decree: Ne quis Monachus vel Conversus præsumat secum arma deferre, sumere, vel habere, videlicet enses vel gladios, falciones, sicas aut cultellos acuminatos, aut cetera armorum genera. At the Synodus Nemausensis, in 1284, it was decreed: Enses non deferant nec cultellos acutos, nec lanceas seu falsones, nisi forte ex causa probabili tuitionis seu guerræ. Again, in the Stat. Eccles. Cadurcensis, in 1289, it was enacted: Balistas et arcus, lanceas, falsones, costalarios, seu alia arma non deferant. The Stat. Arelat. MS. likewise say: Non deferatur sine licentia consulum... per Arelatem pergreriam accutam, vel gazarniam, vel falsonum longum, vel alia arma, nisi cultellum, &c. So in the Stat. Synod. eccl. Sabin. in the XIVth century, Clerici cultellos acutos et incongruos non deferant, seu falzones.

Falsarius. A hand-bill; called by the French faussar. In the Chron. MS. Bertrand du Guesclin, we read:

D'espees et de faussars ot sur lui plus de cent.

Again:

Maint bacinets aussi œuvré joliement, Panons, dars et faussars qui tranchent souëfvement.

Again:

Gettent dars et faussars, moult en vont ociant.

Falsificare. To cast at, to break through; in French fausser. John the Monk of Mairemontier, lib. 1, Hist. Gauf. Duc. Norm. says: Imposita est capiti ejus cassis multo lapide pretioso relucens, quæ talis temperaturæ erat, ut nullius ensis acumine incidi, vel falsificari valeret. Robert de Bourron, in his History of Arthur and Merlin, MS. has; Li haubert sunt si fort et si tenant qu'il ne puent maille fausser. In the Roman de Kanor, dated 1294, MS. is: Ne peut le cop tenir qu'il ne soit entrés en la coiffe et li baçin faussés. The Roman de Roncevaux has:

Faussent ces broingues, où li ors est batus.

Again:

Son haubers firent fausser et desmailler.

William Guiart, under the year 1267, says:

Bacinez foudre, embarrer hyaumes, Haubers fausser et espauliers.

The Roman d'Alexandre MS. has:

L'Aubert fausse, et desront à l'acier Viennois.

Falso, Falsonus. A species of lance, if not the bill. From this is derived the French word fauchon. At the Synod. Nemausensis, in the year 1284, it was decreed de Clericis, that Enses non deferant, nec cultellos acutos nec lanceas, seu falsones, nisi forte ex causa probabili tuitionis, seu guerræ. It occurs also in the Stat. Synod. Eccles. Cadurcensis, in 1289, thus: Balistas et arcus, lanceas, falsones, costalarios seu alia arma non deferant. So in the MS. Stat. Arelat. Non deferatur sine licentià consulum per Arelatem per grerium accutam, vel gazarniam, vel falsonum longum, vel alia arma, nisi cultellum, &c.

Fano. A standard, whence the English word fane for a small flag of a ship; German fahnen. In an original charter of Otho II, anno 982, it is said: Qualiter Conradus filius Rodulfi quondam comitis in die belli, quod fuit inter nos et Saracenos, sub fanone nostro, hoc est sub imperiali vexillo, legali ritu tradendum nobis commendavit omne prædium suum quod habet in regno Lothariensi, &c.

Faveria Cassidis. The charnel, or top of the helmet; that part in which was placed the lady's favour. In the Miracles of Louis Bishop of Arles is: Fuit percussus quadam sagitta magnæ ballistæ, quæ infra viseriam cassidis intravit, et pariter sine vulneratione capitis: hoc reputans, etiam sibi miraculose accidi precibus B. Ludovici, et illico simili jactu magni viratorii super faveriam dictæ cassidis percussis cecidit retro se, qui stetit aliquo intervallo tanquam mortuus. In a convention between the royal commissioners and Ayton Dorea, in 1337, is: Et doit livrer et mettre en chascune galée vi<sup>m</sup> viretons, in lanceas, v° dars, favars, lances longues ferrees, ronciés de fer, et touz autres garnemens et armeures.

FAUTRE. Armour for the thighs. Thus William Guiart, under the year 1224, says:

Escus au col, lances sus fautres.

The Roman de Garin has:

Lance sor fautre acueillant lor chemin.

The Chronicle of Bertrand du Guesclin also says:

Chascun lance sus feutre, és estriers s'afficha.

The Roman de Perceval:

Et met la lance el faucre et point.

Again:

Escu au col, lance sor faucre.

Feltrum, Filtrum, Pheltrum, and Philtrum. Waddings of wool with which wambaises and scullcaps were sometimes made. Eckehard, jun. de Casibus S. Galli, says: Fabricantur spicula, filtris loricæ fiunt, et Wannis scuta simulantur. Guillelmus Apul. lib. 111, of his Res. Norm. says:

Proque repellendis saxorum, vel jaculorum Ictibus, objectis rubicundis undique philtris Ad pugnam veniunt.

The Roman of Guillaume au Courtnez MS. has:

Chapeau de feutres et bons haubres saffrez.

FLAMMULA. A kind of standard cut in the form of a flame, like the oriflamme of Charlemagne. FLYTE, FLYTE-SHOTE. The utmost range of a bow with a fleta or flight arrow. See Stevens's note on a passage in the first scene of Shakspear's "Much ado about Nothing."

Framea. A corruption of ferrea. John de Janua, in his Glossary, explains framea to mean glaives agus d'une part, et d'autre espée. Tacitus de Moribus Germ. says: Hastas vel ipsorum vocabulo frameas gerunt, angusto et brevi ferro, sed ita acre et ad usum habili, ut eodem telo prout ratio jussit, vel cominus vel eminus pugnent. The Germans called it fram.

Fustyan. A strong stuff of cotton worn under the armour in single combat during the reign of Henry VI. See Archeologia, Vol. XVII, p. 35.

GAGIDA. The shaft of an arrow.

Gajardus. The name of the car on which was fixed the standard. The Chronicle of Parma, under the year 1281, has: Carrocii Parmensis, quod vocabatur regolium Parmæ et Cremonensis, quod vocabatur gajardus.

Gallery. A subterraneous passage. The author of the Dictionnaire Militaire observes: "The only inventions which the moderns can boast of are those of fire-arms, mines, and furnaces. But then, on the other hand, we stand indebted to them for our lines of circumvallation and of contravallation, our approaches or trenches which are effected from a camp to its different batteries, together with the construction of those batteries, our parallel entrenchments or places of arms, the descent into or the filling up of the ditch, our covered saps in mining, and our open galleries; we owe to them in fact, the original art of throwing up works and of creating obstacles, by which we are enabled to secure ourselves, or by various other stratagems to annoy our enemies. The antients were

indeed superior to us in the means of defence. The origin of subterraneous galleries or passages in mining is totally unknown to us, a circumstance which proves their antiquity. The method which was pursued by the antients in their passages of mines resembled the one that is invariably followed by the moderns: but the latter possess a considerable advantage over the former in this sort of attack and defence, which advantage consists wholly in the invention of gunpowder. The antients, it is well known, could only undermine in one way, namely, under the terraces or cavaliers, or under the towers or covered battering machines; and in order to do any execution they were obliged, in the first place, to construct a spacious high subterraneous chamber, to carry away and raise the earth, to support the remainder by powerful props, and afterwards to fill the several chambers with dry wood and other combustible materials, which were set fire to in order to reduce them, the towers, and various machines that were placed above, into one common heap of ruins. But this attempt did not always succeed; for owing to the magnitude of the undertaking, and the time it required, the enemy might either trace the miners, cut off their communication with the main body of the place, or get into the chambers before they could be finished, or be properly prepared for inflammation. The antients constructed their galleries on a larger scale than we adopt. They were wider but less elevated; whereas those that we use require less trouble, our chamber mines being more contracted, and having an advantage of access by means of the different branches. One or two small chambers are sufficient with us to blow up the whole face of a bastion; but the antients only sapped in proportion to the extent of wall which they were determined to demolish. This was a tedious operation; for when the besieger had reached the foot of the wall it became necessary to run a gallery along the whole extent of what he proposed to demolish. Subsequent to this he had to operate upon the entire front, during which the besieged found time and opportunities to open subterraneous passages, and to discover those which the assailants were practising against them. In the latter, indeed, they seldom failed. The Romans were extremely partial to subterraneous galleries; by such means they took Fidenæ and Veiæ; and Darius, king of Persia, by the same method made himself master of Calcedon. The Gauls were also very expert in their management of subterraneous galleries. Cæsar mentions the use of them in five or six places of his Commentaries."

Gamberia, Gambria. Called by the Italians gambiera, by the French jambiere, and by the English jambs. Armour for the legs. Otto Morena, in his Hist. Rer. Laudensium, p. 60 says: Donavit autem imperator Laudensibus ultra trecentas loricas, et multas gamberias, quas de suis, hostibus habuerat. In an account, dated 1333, is: Per manus Magist. arestorum quod Dominus receperat mutuo pro gamberiis, cosseriis, guantilectis, &c. Item Barthol. Lapo mercatori pro uno paro de platis cum cosseriis et gamberiis, &c. The Regestum Peagiorum Bapalmæ has: Les gambieres ou harnas de gambes de fer.

Gambeso, Gambesum, Gambaycho. A garment stuffed with tow worn with or without a hauberk. Guillaume le Breton, Lib. II, Philipps. has:

Pectora tot coriis, tot gambesonibus armant.

Again:

Gambesumque audax forat, etc.

Blount falsely derives this word from the French gambe or jambe a leg, and says it was a long horseman's coat that covered part of the legs. In the Pla. Cor. 13, Edward I, is the following: Eustache de Ho tenuit unam carucatam terræ cum pertin. in Rewenhall in co. Essex: per serjantiam inveniendi unum hominem equitem cum uno gambesone in exercitu domini regis, cum contigerit ipsum ire in Wallia, sumptibus suis propriis per xL dies.

Gantæ, Gauntlets. In an account dated 1336, is the following item: Quatuor paria gantarum de ferro sine bracellis, &c. Item, quatuor paria de gantis cum bracellis, &c. Gauntlets, or gloves of plate, first occur in the reign of Edward II, and had the fingers separated. From the time of Henry IV to the early part of Henry VIII these were undivided, after which period, till their final disuse in the reign of William III, the fashion was to have them distinct. There were gauntlets, long-armed gauntlets, and gantelettes à coude, or elbow gauntlets.

GARITÆ, GARITTÆ. Turrets, in French guerites or garites. Guillaume le Breton, lib. 11, Phil. has:

Non nisi rarus erat qui muris staret in altis, Omnibus ad tutas fugientibus ultro garitas.

And in lib. vii.

Hi cryptas, illi curvas subiere garitas.

The Chron. Flandriæ, c. 113, says: Et fut la garite assenée vint fois l'une après l'autre. And the Chron. Bertrand du Guesclin has:

Et tenoit le monstier qui estoit bien fermez, Et de bonnes garites estoit bien garitez.

In a letter remissory, dated 1358, occurs the following: Damoiselle Jehanne de Vendosme, dame de Bertecourt, nous a fait exposer que.....pour la garde et deffense de son chastel,.....elle a fait empérer et gariter et enforcier son dit chastel.

GARNESIA, GARNISON. A garrison. Rymer's Fædera sub anno 1417, has: Assignavimus vos

ad omnes et singulas tertias nobis de quibuscumque capitaneis de garnesia nostra de Vernulle.

GARNESTURA, GARNISTURA, GARNITURE. Military apparatus.

GARNIMENTUM. The same. In the history of Dover Castle by an English monk, occurs: Et enforcea le Chastel de Douvre de fosses et de mins, et de garnesture contre les Romains, s'ils venissent.

Garniso, Carniso. The jazeran jacket, called by the Italians garzerino. It is formed of small overlapping plates of iron with a covering of velvet studded. One of the time of Richard III is in the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq. and two of that of Henry VII, with their long skirts are in the Earl of Warwick's. It is often in old inventories confounded with the brigandine. The statutes of Marseilles, p. 416, on the subject de garnisonibus in navibus portandis, has: Generaliter decernimus observandum quod omnes mercatores portantes in aliqua nave Massiliæ....... Valens duc, libr. vel amplius portent garnisonem, et pro servitiali suo ausbergotum vel curellum. Again at p. 466: Statuimus quod unusquisque judæorum (the merchants at sea) habeat semper et portet secum unam garnisonem ferream in eundo et redeundo in viagio. It may, however, rather be regarded as the Latin term for harness, as Du Cange considers that it might signify complete armour, quæ totum garniat seu ornet hominem.

GARROTUS. The garrot or quarrel for the cross-bow. It was also used to imply a lever.

GATA, GATTA, GUATA. The same as catta, a latinization of the English word cat, which was the name given to a penthouse that covered the miners who tore up the ground within, like the claws of that animal. The Chron. of Pisa says: Compositis autem ab ingeniosis Pisanorum artificibus, manganis, gattis atque ligneis castellis urbem fortiter expugnabant, et cum his machinis urbis mœnia et mœnium turres potentissimæ rumpebant. In the annals of Genoa occurs: Machinas, scilicet et castella et gattas ordinare præceperunt. The monk of Florence in his work De Expug. Acconis, uses the expression gattos et arietes fieri jussere. Andreas Dandulus under the year 1148, has: Appositis scalis et gattis diris, et variis insultibus idem capitaneus impugnare non desinit. Rafanus de Caresinis, under the year 1379, says: Et combustis ejus gattis, aliisque ædificiis vigorose fugatur. Dom. de Gravina in his Chronicle has: Fecitque fieri Palatinus ibidem multa ingenia lignea, pontes, scalas, et gattos, trabuccosque erexit ante mœnia civitatis. The Historia Cortusiorum has: Fiunt vineæ sive gatti, pontes et scalæ, machinæ et alia artificia ad oppugnandum. The Annales Cæsenates say: Ad expugnationem dictæ Rochæ cum gattis et castris lignaminum, et aliis ædificiis, diebus pluribus laboravit. In the Usatici Barcinon MS. c. 83, is: Debellare cum ingeniis quod rustici dicunt fundibula et gosa et gata. In the Constit. Marcæ Hisp. Col. anno 1225, is: Nullus portet fundibulum, guziam vel guatam aut aliquod aliud ingenium sine speciali nostra licentia et mandato.

- GAUDICHETUM. A species of armour, perhaps the gorget. It is mentioned in the will of Odo de Rossilion in the year 1298.
- Gaveloces, Gaverlotus. The gaveloc, a species of javelin, but sometimes with a double axe to its head. In a letter remissory, dated 1377, is: Lequel couvreur print une fourchefiere, et son filz un demi-glaive ou gavelot. Another, dated 1455, has: Icellui Brumin de son gavrelot fery Phelipot en la cuisse, et la perça tout oultre. Another says: Gravelot, javeline que l'on appelle en pais (Flandres) gaurlot. Matthew Paris, under the year 1256, states that: Frisones igitur, ipsum Willelmum cum jaculis, quæ vulgariter gaveloces appellant, quorum maxime notitiam habent et usum, Danisque securibus et gesis, hostiliter insequuntur. The Roman of Robert the Devil has:

Gaverlos et maches li ruent, C'est merveilles qu'il ne le tuent,

The Roman de Cleomades MS. has:

Et maint gaverlot pour lancier.

GAYNE-PAYNE. An English name for a large sword without point, from the French gagnepain. The appellation was transferred from the field of battle to the tilt-yard, having been the bread-earner of the soldier.

GAYTA, GAYTIA, in French GUET. A sentinel, or keeper of a castle or town.

GAZARNIA. A gisarm.

- Genetria. A kind of lance. In a MS. entitled Monstræ factæ apud Chassagniam in 1511, is:

  Franciscus Charbonerii dixenerius habet unam geneteriam; injunctum est, quod habeat unum bragamardum infra quindecim dies. It was probably the same as the demi-lance. Thus Guillielmi de Villanova in his Hist. Bell. Ital. says: Lequel roy (Ferrant) estoit bien accompagné tant d'hommes d'armes, que de gens de pié et d'un grant nombre de genetaires que le roy d'Espagne lui avoit envoyé.
- GERBIE. A kind of lance. In a letter remissory, dated 1398, is: Icellui Cayphas vint contre le suppliant à tout une lance ou gerbie, et le cuida ferir par la poitrine.
- Gesa, Gesum, Gessum, Gæsum. The spear of the antient Gauls. Servius says: Pilum proprie est hasta Romana, ut gessa Gallorum, sarissæ Macedonum. Some have supposed that from this word was derived the geesarme or gisarme. This term was used in Provence as late as the year 1300, for in the Inventory which was taken of the goods, furniture, &c., appertaining to the Templars, we find gessus or gesus which was understood to mean gese and under that appellation deposited in the king's archives at Aix.
- GISARMA. The gisarme. This weapon seems to have resembled the bill or the glaive but had an additional piece thin and pointed rising up from its back. Specimens of both kinds are given under Pl. xxvIII, and are in the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq. Fleta, lib. 1, c. 24, s. 12, has: Et qui minus habuerit quam 40 sol. reditus, tunc ad falces

(the bills) gisarmas, cultellos, et alia arma minuta sint jurati. In the Consuet. Brageriaci is: Guisarma, nec alia genera armorum necessaria ad tuitionem corporis..... pro ullo debito pignorentur. The Roman de Rou has:

Hasches et gisarmes tenoient.

Baldwin de Condé, a MS. has:

A cops de dards et de guisarmes.

Beaumanoir MS. c. 58, has: Portans armes, ne sajettes, ne armes, ne aspées, ne guisarmes, ne autres armes deffendues. An old MS. poem of Aubry of Burgundy has:

Sire, dit-il, por peu vos voil proier, C'une jusarme me faites sans targier.

An old paper, in the chamber of accounts at Paris observes: Il lui semble que ceulx, qui porteroient voulges, les devroient avoir moiennement longs, et qu'ils fussent tranchans, et bon estoc, et que les dits guisarmiers aient salades à visieres, gantelets et grans dagues sans espées. In the Consuet. S. Severi, tit. 18, art. 5. It is called bisarme, and it was sometimes termed visarmes. These two last names seem to point out that its appellation arose from the additional piece which thus rendered it bis-arma, or double armed.

- GLAIVE. A weapon composed of a long cutting blade at the end of a staff, so called from the Welsh word cleddy a sword, on which account they are frequently termed "Welsh glaives."
- GLAVARINA. A kind of javelin. Thus the Chron. Tarvis. observes: Et pedibus stando rectus projiciebat unam glavarinam à dicta porticu usque in curiam domus anguli plateæ.
- GLAIZE. A kind of halbert, so called by the people of Saxony. Probably a corruption of glaive.
- Godbertus, Godebertus. A military garment, literally a good protection. It occurs in the will of Odo de Rossillon, anno 1298, and in an account dated 1336 it is thus mentioned: Item duos godebertos de mayllia valoris vi s. gross. In an account of Stephen de la Fontaine, the king's silversmith, dated 1351 is: Pour une fourrure de dos de lievres de Norvoie à fourrer une godebert à maistre Jean le fol. In another account at Paris, is: Item, godebers de Lorillac, obole la piece.
- Godendac. A Flemish weapon, literally a good-day, or more probably dagger. William Guiart thus mentions it:

Car les lances, d'eus estoignies Les godendaz et les coignies Mettent à mors es herberjages Chevaliers, escuiers, et pages. And under the year 1032 he has:

Godendaz que l'on repaumoie Ferrez et fais a grant estuide.

Gonjo. Body armour, perhaps the gambeson. In a letter remissory dated 1349 is: Aycardus de Miromonte cum hominibus armatis diversorum armorum generibus, utpote platinis, gonjonibus, spaleriis, clipeis, &c.

Gontfanonarius, Gonfagonier, and by the Italians Gonfaloniere. A standard-bearer. The Roman de Rou has:

Par droit et par ancesserie Deves estre de Normandie Et vous parens gonfanongniers.

The MS. Chron. of Bertrand du Guesclin has:

Que s'il avoit un bon gonfannoier Pour sa terre garder, et son prix essaucier.

- Gorgale, Gorgiale, Gorgeta. Armour for the throat called gorget. In an account, dated 1336, is: Item, disploides de fustonyo pro xII, s. gr. Item, duodecim Gorgeriæ de mayllia vII, s. gros. Armet de Gorgent occurs in the ordination of a knight by Charles Duke of Burgundy, in the year 1473.
- Goza, Gussa, Guzia. A military machine. In the Usatici Barcinonenses MSS. c. 83, it is said: Nemo præsumat..... castrum contra Principem ædificare, nec fortitudinem tenere obsessam nec debellare cum ingeniis quod rustici dicunt fundibula et Gosa, et gata, quod magnum dedecus erit potestatibus. The charter of King James I, in the Catalan Constitutions, has: Statuimus, quod nullus portet fundibulum, guziam, vel gatam, aut aliquid ingenium contra aliquem, sine speciali nostro mandato, nec trahat cum eis, nisi de hoc habeat à nobis.....privilegium speciale. The edict of Nuno Sancius D. Rossillon, concerning the keeping of the truce in the year 1217, has: Statuimus quod nullus expugnet aliquod castrum vel aliquam munitionem cum gussa, vel pererio, vel manganello, vel cum alio genere lignorum. Du Cange imagines it might have been so called from its resemblance to a dog, goussa being the name for a dog in Spain.
- Gouffour, Gouffort. A kind of glaive. Thus in a letter, dated 1377, is: Le suppliant esmeu de ce que dist est, de un court glaive, que il tenoit, appellé gouffour, l'en feri et geta par terre, et le navra. In one of the year 1384, occurs: Gouffour ou gros baston ferré au bout. In another, dated 1395, is: Icellui Perrot mis au-devant du cop demi-glaive ou gouffort, et frappa du dit demi-glaive ou gouffourt le dit Mace. Another, in 1397, has: Le suppliant print en sa main un baton ferré appellé couf-

# GR-GU

fourt.....le dit suppliant tenoit son dit gouffront au devant duquel gouffront le dit Riviere s'en ferra.

GRAPER. Probably a corruption of griper, the covering for the gripe or handle of the lance, though Mr. Douce imagines it to be derived from agrafe, a hook, and thence it has been conjectured to be the lance rest. In the time of Henry VI twelve were allowed to a jouster, which seems more compatible with the first explanation.

GUALETUM. The diminutive of gualea, a corruption of galea, a skull-cap.

Guantilecti, Gauntlets. In an account dated 1332, is: Dominus receperat mutuo pro gamberiis, cosseriis, guantilectis et aliud arnense pro persona domini unc IV.

Guido. The guidon, a flag which terminated in a point.

Guietes. Spanish soldiers were so called in the year 1362. Thus in a letter in Rymer's Fædera, vol. 6, p. 370, it is said: Si contingat dominum Regem Castellæ et Legionis, Alfonsum filium suum, aut. ipsorum hæredes homnibus ad arma, Castillanis sagittariis, guietibus Vandaliensibus aut aliis indigere ac subsidium præfati domini nostri regis..... duxerint requirendum.

Guntfano. A gonfanon or petit-standard. The word is derived from Fano. The Roman du Renard, MS. has:

Querez qui le gonfanon porte Et qui que le doiez baillier, Vous convient-il gonfanonier.

The Roman de Garin, MS. has:

Là vessiez tantes et paveillons Bannieres droites, et vermeux gonfanons.

Again:

La veissiez meint gonfanon lever, Meinte bannière sor le fossé ester.

The Roman de Rou, MS. says:

Ni a riche home ne baron, Qui n'ait lés lui son gonfanon, Ou gonfagnon, ou autre enseigne, Où sa mesnie se destraingne.

In another place:

Li barons ourent gonfanons, Li chevaliers ourent penons. William Guiart under the year 1248, has:

Tant seulement li gonfanon, En un flum qui Nilus a non, &c.

The chronicle of Flanders, c. 67, says: Et tenoit en sa main une lance, à quoi l'oriflamme estoit attachée d'un vermeil samit, à guise de gonfanon à trois queuës. An old poet speaks of the pope having granted England to William the Conqueror, by the delivery of a gonfanon. This author lived in the year 1160.

L'Apostolle li otroya,
Un gonfanon li envoya,
Mout precieux et chier et bel,
Si comme il dit dessus la pierre,
Auroit un dez cheveux S. Pierre,
A ces enseignes li manda,
Et de par Dieu l'i otroya
Que Angleterre conquersist
Et de S. Pierre le tensist.

Leo in his Tactic. c. 5, s. 5, and Maurice with others call it Φλαμμελίσκιου. The Roman d Aubery, MS. has:

Baisse la lance ou li gonfanon pent.

Again:

A lances sont li gonfanons pendus.

The Roman de la Prise de Hierusalem, has:

Voient l'ost paienne venir et aprochier, Les riches gonfanons sus au vant baloier.

The Roman de Garin also:

Brandist la hante au gonfanon pendant.

Again:

Et prist l'espié à tot le gonfanon.

Again:

Brandist la hante, destort le gonfanon. Parmi le cors li mest le gonfanon, &c. Les lances bessent ô sont li gonfanon.

The Roman de Guesclin has:

Li Rois tint une lance à un vermeil penon.

# GU—HA

Again:

Moult si siest bien au col la lance au gonfanon.

The Roman d'Alexandre, MS. likewise says:

Hante ot grosse de fresne, et gonfanon pendant.

- Gussers. Pieces of chain-mail, cut triangular lozenge shape, which were fixed to the haust-ment or garment under the armour, by means of arming-points. They were commonly in number; two under the arms, two in the joints of the elbows, two in the eight joints of the knees, and two upon the insteps. Four made of double-chain mail are in the possession of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq.
- GYDERS. Probably a corruption of vuiders, as thirty were the provision for a breast and back plate, they were probably screws, rivets, or points.
- Gyro. A circumvallation, Muratori ex Cardinali Aragonio says: Hic fecit gironem in castro Rodicophini turribus, munitum et alto fossato. So in the Chronicle S. Bertini, it is said: Iste Papa Adrianus IV, fecit gyronem in Vadicosono ac muris et turribus munivit.
- HABILIMENTUM. Habiliments of war, the necessary apparatus, armour offensive and defensive. Thus in the Paston Letters, vol. 1, p. 58, it is said: "And counseyled hym to put away all his abyllyments of werr, and the olde sawdiers."
- HACHET DENESH. The Danish battle-axe.
- Hachia. An axe, in French hache. An instrument, dated 1430, says: Ictibus ensium et hachiarum multiplicatis et resonantibus, sic quod erat quasi unum terribile nedum videre, sed audiri. An instrument, dated 1282, in the second vol. of Rymer's Fædera, p. 207, has: Ita quod quilibet eorum (Coupiatorum) habeat unam bonam, magnam et fortem hachiam vel securim ad grossas et parvas arbores succidendas.
- Hagbutt. A harquebuss or small fire-arm, the butt of which was of a hooked form. The fashion continued in France and Spain till the close of Elizabeth's reign. I have seen four splendid specimens from the latter country, one being in the possession of the Earl of Warwick, and one from the former in the rotunda of Woolwich.
- Halebarde. The French name for the halbert. Those used by the English were about five feet long, the shaft being generally of ash. It seems to have been intended to combine the bill, glaive, and pike which had been the weapons previously used. It was not known in France before the reign of Louis XI, nor in England before that of Henry VIII. In the former country it had been borrowed from the Swiss, and its length was six French feet.

Halsberga, Halberg, Halbergium, Alsbergium, Halsberg, Haubercum, Haubert, Osbergum.

A hauberk from the Germans halsberg, i. e. protection for the neck. The Roman de Garin, MS. has:

Le blanc haubere derompre et depaner.

And again:

Parmi la coiffe le blanc hauberc saffré.

William Guiart, under the year 1214, says:

Et couvertures freteler Sur blancs haubers brunis à mailles.

In a charter, dated 1049, occurs: Accepit unum equum xxx librarum, necnon unum halberc septem librarum. In the Tabularium S. Sergii Andegav, is: Dedit autem D. Achardus Abbas Juhallo xxx solidos, Merivo autem dedit quemdam halbergium valens xL solidos. In the charter: Heccardi com. Augustodunensis occurs: Rotardo donante mea brunia cum alsbergo. In a poem in praise of Besold, in German, is:

Da sprach der l'ampariere. Ich bin noch ungewehrt, Geh und bring mir doch here, Mein halsperg und mein schwerdt.

The mandate respecting arms, in the additions to Matt. Paris, has: Ad cattalla 60 mercarum, unum haubercum, capellum ferreum, gladium et cultellum. It is called haubergus in a charter, dated 1294. In the Chronicle Besuense, p. 578, is: Acceptis pro pretio duobus militantium instrumentis quæ vulgo dicuntur helmum, et osbergum. William Guiart says:

Haubers desmaillent, lances fraingnent.

The Roman de Garin, has:

Il ot vestu un hauberc dobletin, Chaude est la maille, ne pot l'acier soffrir.

Which seems to refer to the double chain-mail. Of the double chain-mail I have met with but one example, and that of the time of Edward I. It occurs on the monumental effigy of a knight in the north aisle of the chancel in York Cathedral. The hauberk, coiffe and chausses are all formed of rings interlinked in pairs. The Chronicle of B. du Guesclin, has:

Vestir et endosser maint bon haubert doublier.

Which seems also to refer to it. The Roman d'Athis in MS. likewise says:

Haubers doubliers, haubers notis.

And the Roman of the Trojan War, MS. has:

Vestent les haubers dobletins, A caignent les brancs acerins.

In the Roman de Partonopex, MS. is:

Lances levées les galos, Heaumes és chief, haubers és cox.

Henri de Gauchi in his French version of Ægidius de Regimine Principum, has: Ceux qui sont esprouvés en bataille, disent que li haubers doivent estre large, parce que les mailles sont plus empressées. The Chron. Fland. c. 79, has the following expression: Trois cens hommes couvers de haubergerie et de flanchieres.

HALSBERGOL, HABERGELLUM, HUBBERGUEL, ALBERGELLUM, HAUBERGEOLUM, AUSBERGOTUM, AL-BERJOS, HAUBERGETTUM, HABERGETUM, HAUBERGON, HAUBERJONUS, HABERGEON, HALS-PERGA. An haubergeon, or coat of mail, which at first comprehended the breeches that were attached to it, and subsequently the jacket only. The Consuet. Furneses declare: Quicunque loricam, id est, hubberguel, vel pileum ferreum tulit, si convictus fuerit, perdet ea et amendabit comiti tres libras. Roger Hoveden, in his reign of Henry II, states that, Omnis homo habens in catallo 40 vel. 20 libra Andeg. monetæ ad minus haberet albergellum et capellum ferreum, lanceam et gladium. Again: Quicumque liber laicus habuerit in catalla ad valentiam 10 marcarum habeat albergellum et capelet ferri. Ceteri autem omnes haberent wambasiam et habergellum. The Teloneum S. Audomari in Tab. S. Bertini, has: Lorica, 4 denar. lorica minor, quæ vulgo halsbergol dicitur, 2 den. In a charter of Louis Philip, dated 1269, is: Induti haubergeolo et capello ferreo poterimus illa videre. In the stat. of Marseilles, 1274, de garzonibus in navibus portandis, it is enacted: Decernimus quod omnes mercatores portantes in aliquâ nave Massiliæ valens 100 libras regales, vel amplius, haberant et portent ad minus loricam vel ausbergotum. The Roman du Renard, has:

Ne fust le haubercot vestu.

In a deed, dated 1255, is: Præterea inveni in dictis bonis 5 alberjos et unum alberc et tres balistas et unam contrepointe. In the letter of Guy de Dampetre to Phil. Aug. in 1113, occurs: Duas loricas, II haubergons, IV capella ferri. William Guiart, under the year 1304, has:

Armez de cotes à leurs taille, Et de bons auberjons à mailles. Guilleville also says:

Adonc attaint un haubregon, D'une belle et plaisante fachon.

Handseax. The antient Anglo-Saxon dagger. In the will of Byrhtric is the following bequest: Primum naturali Dom. suo Regi armillam auream quæ habet 80 mancas auri, et unum handseax tantumdem auri habentem. It was with this weapon that the antient British chiefs were murdered by the command of Hengist. The Welsh writers call it "a long knife or cultellus," but it resembled the modern Albanian dagger, which is curved with the edge inside and the pommel hollowed out to receive the thumb.

HARNASCHA, HARNESIUM, HERNESIUM, HARNASIUM, ARNESIUM. In old English harneys, in German and Dutch harnas and harnash, in French harnois, and in Italian arnese, armour. The word seems to be of Celtic origin, from hëarn, iron.

HARNESIATUS, HARNESSED, i. e. equipped with armour and arms.

Haro. A cry used by the heralds. Thus William Guiart speaks of it at the battle of Bovines:

Là vois de nul n'i est oié; Fors ces heraux, qui harou crient Et par le champ se crucefient, Harou, dient-il, quel mortaille, Quelle occision, quelle bataille, &c.

Again in his history of France, he says:

Ainsi fu Normandie prise,
Et tous les pors de cele marche
C'un roi paien de Danemarche
Ot par guerre soudainement
Trois cens et seize ans droitement,
Ains la saison ramentuë,
A Charles le Simple tolluë,
Cis Rois iert Rous, pour ce crioient
Normans, qui en son tans fuioient
Droit vers Chartres comme garous,
De toutes pars, Ha Rous, Ha Rous,
Con tu nous mainnes malement?
Par quoi accoustumement,
Celes gens quant aucun mal sentent,
En criant Harou se dementant.

Describing in another place the entry of Philippe Auguste into Normandy, he says:

Fames dont les voies sont plaines, Criant Harou à grant alaines.

Dr. Hickes thinks it comes from what he calls the Cimbric, hior, Gothic hairus, a sword, and therefore uttered as a threat to the wicked.

## HA-HE

- HARPE. A species of drawbridge, which obtained its name from its resemblance to that instrument. This bridge, which consisted of a wooden frame, and hung in a perpencular direction against the turrets, that were used in former times to carry on the siege of a place, had, like the harp, a variety of ropes attached to it, and was let down upon the wall of a town by means of pullies. The instant it fell, the soldiers left the turret and rushed across the temporary platform upon the rampart.
- HARQUEBUS. A short but heavy fire-arm which preceded the musket, and carried a ball of about three ounces. The stock of it greatly resembled that of a cross-bow. In the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq. is one with a match and wheel lock united.
- Hasta. The lance. This was peculiar to the Franks, by which we are to understand European crusaders, who were, according to Fulcher Carnot: "Probissimos bellatores, et mirabiles de lanceis percussores," and thus described by Albert Aqu.: Hastæ fraxineæ in manibus eorum ferro acutissimo præfixæ sunt, quasi grandes perticæ. Guil. le Breton in his Philippics says:

Mox hastas hastata manus configit in illum, Quorum cuspis erat longa, et sabulæ instar acuta, Et nonnulla velut verubus dentata recurvis, Cuspidis in medio uncos emittit acutos.

The Roman de la Guerre de Troye, in MS. has the following:

Li Dux d'Athenes à tant premier Que la haste grosse de pomier Li fist parmi l'escu passer.

It was sometimes the custom to punish serfs, when found with lances in their hands, by breaking them on their backs. Thus in the Capitul. lib. v, c. 247. it is said: Et ut servi lanceas non portent. Qui inventus fuerit post bannum, hasta frangatur in dorso ejus.

HASTAIRES. French troops armed with spears.

Hastiludium. A general name for all exercises with a lance, including jousts, tilts and tournaments.

HAVOCK. The cry of the marshall when he permitted the troops to plunder.

HAUSSE-COL. The gorget of plate was so called by the French.

HAUSTMENT. In French ajustement, a close dress for the body with sleeves, to wear under the armour, made of stuff. It succeeded the gambeson and hauqueton.

Hebita. A cuirass, according to some antient glossaries.

Helmus, Hermus, helmo by the Italians, heaume by the French, helme and helmet by the English. Heaume à vissiere, a vizored helmet, and heaume à broces, a jousting-helmet made to fasten on the body armour. The word is derived from a northern root, hialma in Norsk and Swedish, helm in German and Dutch. It was at first a mere skull-cap to which the nasal was afterwards added, and in process of time the

desire to protect the face increasing, on its assuming a cylindrical form the ventaile was added. After this a skull-cap only was worn on ordinary occasions, over which the helmet, again of the conical shape but reaching as low as the chin, with a perforation for the sight, was imposed when in time of battle. It was fastened by points to prevent its turning round, and lasted with some modifications from the time of Henry III to that of Richard II inclusive. From Henry VI to Henry VIII the justing-helmes were more of the usual form of helmets but did not open. These are figured in the triumph of Maximilian, and called old-fashioned helmets, and there is one of them in the possession of my friend General Murray. Moveable vizors to helmets were introduced as early as the close of Henry IIIrd's reign, and these remained fashionable in various shapes till armour was entirely laid aside. The substance of helmets was steel, but for tilting sometimes of leather only, stuffed inside. Crests, mantlings and cointisses began to be adopted about the reign of Henry III; feathers in the time of Henry V, and scrolls in that of Henry VII. The poem de Garin has:

Puis lance l'Iaume, qui fut fait à Senlis.

Again:

L'auberc vestu, lacié l'Iaume gemé.

The Roman d'Athis, MS. has:

D'Eaumes gemés blans et fourbis.

A manuscript poem has:

Parmi son elme agu, qui fu à or portrais, Feri Clarjus l'Indois qui d'amour faisoit gais Pour la tres-grant beauté la belle Fezenais, Trestut en abati bericles et balais.

Another poet calls it herme:

Mil chevaliers à haubercs et à hermes.

Again:

L'en le desarme de l'auberc et de l'herme.

King's helmets were generally ornamented with a golden diadem, and sometimes those of the nobles, whence the expression above, gemé. Thus in the Roman d'Athis, MS. occur:

O les espees se requierent, Es heaumes poins grans cops fierent, Trenchent les cercles ormier, Et par dessus trenchent l'acier.

Again:

Sur le heaume fiert le Roy
Du cop le mist en grand effroy,
L'acier en faulse, brise et ront,
Et le cercle d'or tout en confont.

In the Annales Genuens. is: In qua ultra ccclin guarniamenta ferri, ultra juppones, hermos, clypeos et alia arma, multa ceperunt.

The Anglo-Saxons called it hælme, the Italians sometimes elmo, and the French sometimes haume and aiume. William of Tyre, speaking of a Spanish knight, says: Il portait une chaîne de fer sus son aiume. In the Munit. of the royal castles of France are reckoned iiij helmes duplices, xxvj capellos ferri. Froissart Vol. I. c. 29, says: Ils eurent convenant de defier le roy de France, et d'aller avec le roy d'Angleterre quand il lui plairoit, et que chacun le serviroit à un certain nombre de gens-d'armes, à heaumes et timbres couronnées.

The aventaile when first invented did not entirely secure the face from injury as was expected, for at the battle of Bovines a German on foot attempted to thrust a barbed spear under that of the helmet of Phillippe Auguste King of France. He missed his aim, but the hook below the blade caught the strap of the helmet and the king was dragged from his horse. Nor was the wearer quite safe, when by making an aperture for vision, the aventaile was fitted on more closely. Thus the Count de Perche was killed by a spear thrust through the occularium into his brain.

Hendegarius. A machine of war. In the statutes of Ferrara, of the year 1279, occurs: Quòd quotiescumque mutabuntur capitanei et custodos castorum,.....potestas teneatur mittere ad prædicta loca unum bonum notarium,.....qui scribat statum cujuslibet loci, scribendo solaria, assides,.....scalas, hendegarios, funes, balistas, &c.

Hendeure, Enhantée. A hand-weapon or dagger, or rather it seems to express the hilt or gripe of the sword. Robert Bourron in his poem of Merlin MS. says: En copa il l'espée le roi tant outre parmi par devant le heut, si que li brans l'encheia à terre, et hendure se remest le roi en sa main. Thus the Roman d'Alexandre in MS. has:

Mes l'espée li brize, si est en deux volée Parmi la hendeure ou denier fu quassée.

The Chronicle of S. Dion, has: Li dux dona une moult riche espée, dont li pomiaus et l'enhendeure estoit de fin or. William Gemeticemis, p. 267, expresses this same sentance thus: Uni ensem ex auro quatuor librarum in capulo fulgidum dedit. A letter rem. dated 1427, has: Une coignée enchantée en guise d'une hache.

#### не-но

HERETOCHIUS. A military leader among the Anglo-Saxons, the heretoga.

HIPPOBALISTÆ. Mounted slingers. Bonfinius Rer. Hungar. says: Ex Ungaris hippobalistæ quidam audacissimi, concitatis equis, arduum montis clivum conscendunt, è sagittariis quosdam obstruncant, &c.

HIRUNDO. A military machine. Henry Ross in Herlingsberba has:

Non hic unigena fabricatur machina: nomen Hæc librilla, quasi saxea pondera librans: Obtinet ille suis; sed hirundinis hæc, stat aselli Illa vocata nota, &c.

It was also the rondelle or roundel, the flat vamplate, which was put on the lance to secure and protect the hand. Jean de Saintré, c. 51, says: Deux lances à poulces pareilles, ferrées et armées chascune de son arondelle pour couvrir la main devant. Two specimens of these are in the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq.

Hobellarii, Hoberarii, Hoberlers, Hoblers, or Hobilers. The light armed English cavalry were so called. They rode on small horses called hobbies, and wore short jackets termed hobbiles, having a light head-piece, and leathern boots. Their offensive weapons were javelins, maces and swords.

Homines ad Arma. Men at arms. The heavy cavalry were so called.

Hordaccium, Hordecium. A military machine. Guil. le Breton de Gestis Phil. Aug. has:

Et machinis bellicis cœpit lapidibus emissis damnificare propugnacula et hordecia.

In le Roman du Renard is:

Ainsi s'est Renars atournez, Mult fut bien d'eue avironnez, Et hourdeiz et bon et bel Par dedens les murs du chastel, Ses barbacannes fist drecier, Pour mieux son chastel enforcier.

The Roman de Rou also has:

Donc courut un home au terrein, A un hourdel tendi sa'main, Plein poing prist de la couverture, &c.

William Guiart under the reign of Philip Aug. says:

I met au hais du hourdeis Le feu à poi de crieis.

Octavian de S. Gelais, in le Vergier d'honneur, speaking of Saint Veronica, has :

Par trois fois fut evidemment monstrée A tout le peuple en moult grant reverence, Par un eves que sur un hourt à l'entrée De S. Pierre, &c.

# HO-HU

- Hordeicium. Palisadoes driven into fosses to render access to the walls more difficult. Thus Philippe Auguste directs: Hordeicium reparandum inter portam de Monte Musardi et portam mercati, &c. Joinville in his campaign of St. Louis says: Il geterent le feu grégois ou hordis que il y avoient fait faire. The continuator of William of Tyre says: Or vous dirai qu'il avint la nuit, la pierre d'une perriere féri si à l'ordois d'une tornace, que li hordois chai, &c.
- Hordicium. This is sometimes put for a machine and sometimes for the battering ram.

  Thus Henry Knyghton says: Deinde fecit insultum ad castellum eodum die usque ad noctem...et tunc reddiderunt illud: habuit namque unum hordicium forte et bene provisum, cum quo ad tales insultus operatus est mirabilia in prosternando muros castrorum.
- Hourdeys. An old French term, which signified, first, hurdles with which the tops of the walls belonging to a fortified town were covered, in order to shield them against the concussion of warlike machines; and secondly, the machine called hordacium.
- Hostelments. Warlike implements. In the Paston letters, of the time of Henry VI, Vol. II, p. 26, is: "Except gonnes, crossebows, quarrels and all other hostelments."

  The word is a derivative from host which signifies "an army."
- Huk'. A party coloured dress or livery. This word was applied in the XVth century by the English to designate the particular mark of distinction adopted by commanders of armies, to answer what is now termed uniform. Thus in the indenture of James Skidmore, to serve Sir James Ormond in the army under Richard Duke of York, in the 19th of Henry VI, it is convenanted that, "the said James shall take for himself and his said archers huk' of my said lord the duk' liv' e paying for them like oth' souldiers of their degrees do." By an ordinance quoted by Père Daniel in his Milice Française, it appears to have been adopted earlier. Regular uniform occurs first in the army of the Prince of Orange afterwards William III of England.

HURDARE. To fortify with hurdles. Guillaume le Breton, lib. 1, Philip, has:

Hurdari turres et propugnacula, muros Subtus fulciri facit.

In an old paper in the registry of Normandy is: Et viderunt quod timorem habuerunt de obsidione, et attornati sunt 4 homines de communia ad unumquemque quarnellum custodiendum et hurdandum eum.

Huvata. In French huvette, a covering for the head instead of the helmet. The Stat. Senesc. Bellic. an. 1320 says: Item, quicumque portaverit arma defensiva, utpote haubergerium sive gorionum, gorgerium, huvatam (or humatam) sive capellum ferreum, &c. In a letter remissory, dated 1374, is: Jehan Gomont escuyer portoit sa huveste en sa main, &c.

JACK, JACKE, JACQUE, AND JACOBI. A kind of defensive armour for the body made of prepared leather, the real lorica of the antients. The word is probably derived from the Teutonic jack, a hunter's vest. Hence jacket, French jacquet, German jack. Octavian de S. Gelais, in Le Vergier d'honneur, has:

Jacques, plastrons, voulges, et albardes.

In the Archæ. Vol. XVII, p. 215, is the following passage: "And all the said archers specially to have good jakks of defence, salades, swerdes and sheves of xL arwes atte lest."

Jalet, or Galet. Round stones for ejecting from the cross-bow called arbalête à jalet.

Jamb, Jambus, Jambeux. Armour for the legs, covering both front and rear, while the greaves only protected the shins.

Janizari, Janissaires, Janizaries. A particular body of Turkish infantry so called from Yenghid Zari implying "young soldiers." They were first formed from the christian children taken prisoners in the time of Sultan Amurath.

JAVARINA, GIEVERINA. A javeline. The Stat. Montis-reg. has: Et si fuerit lancea, vel javarina, vel aliud telum, &c. Again: Item, pro media dozena javarinarum solvat denarios sex.

Javelina. A javeline. The Stat. Eccl. Meld. has: Neque portent enses, bracmardos, venabula, javelinas, &c.

JAZERAN. Particular kind of armour, so called from the Italian ghiazerino, being made of overlapping plates of iron rivetted on canvas covered with velvet, red, black, or blue, and ornamented externally with brass studs. In the Chron. of Bertrand du Guesclin is:

Que li duc entreroit du tout en son Comant, Lui disime sans plus sans vestir jazerant.

Again:

Bien estoient armez de nobles jazerant.

Again:

Dont chascun ot cheval couvert de jazerant.

Joh. Villaneus calls it ghiazerino.

JAZEQUENEES. Formed in the manner of a jazeran jacket.

Ignis Græcus. The Greek fire. William of Newberry, lib. IV, c. 19, thus speaks of it: Muris enim admotæ (the machines) incendebantur ab hostibus quodam ignis genere quem Græcum dicunt. Denique hoc genus arte confectum miræ esse potentiæ dicitur, nec contrario cedere elemento. The Roman de Garin has:

Le feu grezois lors fet leans jalir, Aux grans palez et à sales ferir, Vente li venez, li palez est espris, N'iert més esteint par eve-nes un dis. Again:

Lievent engins, sont perieres dreciées, A mangoniax le feu grezois lor gietent.

INGENIUM. An engine or machine of war. Thus Phil. Mouskes says:

Sour quatre ruées fist engiens Et de cloies et de merriens, As pons tourneis et castiaus Et tumeriaus et trebukes, &c.

INGENIARE URBEM. To besiege a town with engines.

Ingeniori. Engineers, persons who attended the military engines. The Chronicle of Pisa has:

Compositis autem ab ingeniosis Pisanorum artificibus manganis, gattis, atque ligneis castellis, urbem fortiter expugnabant, et cum his machinis urbis mænia et mænium turres potentissime rumpebant. Phillip Mouskes describing the reign of Louis VIII, says:

Quant li boins mestres Amauris Le sire de Engignours, Commandere des Minours Et larges en mainte maniere, Li vaillans kil portoit baniere, S'en fust alés droit as engiens Et faisoit la douler mairiens.

William Guiart under the year 1106, says:

Li engignor engins drecent.

And in the Roman de Garin is:

Li enguignierres qui ont l'engin basti.

Insigne, Insignum. A flag or ensign, called by the Italians insegne, and by the French enseigne.

Intersignum. A military cry. Exclamavit unusquisque intersignum suum, says the Gesta

Consulum Andegav, c. 13, n. 5. An old French poet has:

Les tropes, les tabours, li corcon i sonna Et les voyes des enseignes que l'on y escria, Gietent cris si orribles, c'est vis ceux qui sont là, Qui li puis et li vaux trestous en resonna.

The Roman de Rou says:

Si come poignent criant vont I tels enseignes comme ils ont. Cil de France crie, Monjoye, Con leur est bel que l'en les oye. Guillaume crie, Deu aye, C'est l'enseigne de Normandie. Again:

Normans escrient, Dex aye, L'enseigne au Duc de Normandie, Et Breton, Mallou, Mallou crient, Entour le Comte Alain s'allient.

Jocari. To just. Mat. Paris under the year 1252 says: Congregati sunt igitur in multitudine gravi et copiosa valde, (ad ludum militarem qui mensa rotunda dicitur) tam Norenses quam Australes, et secundum quod constitutum est in illo ludo Martio, illa die et crastino quidam milites Anglici strenue nimis et viriliter et delectabiliter, ita ut omnes alienigenæ ibidem præsentes admiraremur, jocabuntur. It seems to be derived from the Italian giocare.

JOCKELYS. A strong knife with two blades.

JOURNEY. From the French journée, a battle, a day of battle. "All the lordes that dyed at the jorney are beryed at St. Albanes." Paston letters, Vol. I, p. 100.

JUBEUS, GIPO. A jupon or giupon that short kind of surcoat introduced in the reign of Edward III.

Justa, Jostra, Jousta, Forjouste. A joust, jouste, joute or just, a combat between two persons with lances, generally without intending injury. William Malmsbury says: Tentavere primo regii proludium pugnæ facere, quod justam vocant, quia tali arte erant periti. In a MS. Treatise de Torneamentis, the following rules are laid down: Item, pour les nobles qui tournoient, s'ils n'ont autrefois tournoié, donnent leurs heaumes aux officiers d'armes, oresqu'ils ont autrefois jousté; car la lance ne peut affranchir l'espée, et l'espée affranchit la lance. Mais il est à noter, si un noble homme tournoie, et qu'il ait payé son heaume, il est affranchi du heaume de la jouste, mais le heaume de la jouste ne peut affranchir celui du tournoy. Philip IV of France put down these games under heavy penalties for a time by his edict dated 1312. So did the Dauphin Humbert II. In a deed of the year 1314 is: Guillelmus de Aqua dicebat et proponebat contra Humbaudum le Borne domicellum quod ipse in quibusdam stillicidiis seu joustes in vulgari sermone, falso modo, malitiose ex certa scientia occiderat et læserat ad mortem Guillelmetum de Aqua filium dicti Guillelmi; dicto Humbaudo contrarium proponente et dicente se in prædictis stillicidiis seu joustes cum dicto Guillelmeto filio dicti Guillelmi de Aqua fideliter et modo debito joustasse.....Qui Humbaudus juramento præstito de veritate dicenda dixit quod in prædictis stilicidiis, seu joustes joustaverat cum dicto Guillelmeto legitime....et quod dictus Humbaudus ante dictam joustam et tempore ipsius erat cognatus et amicus bonus et legitimus dicti Guillelmeti. In a French MS. Treatise on Tournaments it is said: Et qui de dehors forjoustera, aura au gré et au vouloir d'amours un très noble et riche diamant. Christian de Pisa in her Charles V, part 2, c. 12, says: Jehan Duc de Berry en sa juenece

hanta les armes et fut à maint fait d'armes en Guienne, fu moult bel jouster dont ou temps qu'il estoit en Angleterre avec son père le roy Jehan, y forjousta les joustes par plusieurs foiz et aussi en France. The Roman du Dit du Chevalier has:

> Enfin de saison au printemps Se traist où on alloit jouster Et faisoit de festes crier, Desquelles le plus forjoustoit, Ou si vassaument s'y portoit Qu'il en estoit boine nouvelle.

Justes a outrance. Justs to the utterance, where the combatants fought till death ensued. Justes of the peaces royal. Justes of peas or pecis. Hastiludia pacifica, joutes à plaisance. Peaceable jousts differed from real justs or tournaments in the strength of the armour worn and the materials used in the combats. The lance instead of a steel-point was surmounted by a coronel or cronel; the swords were pointless and rendered blunt, being often of balon as it was termed, which seems to have been of whalebone covered with leather, and silvered over. In Mr. Pack's lately published edition of Harrington's Nugæ Antiquæ, will be found: "The ordinances, statutes and rules made by John Lord Typtoffe, Earl of Worcester, Constable of England, anno 6, Edward IV, to be observed or kept in all manner of justes of peaces within this realme of England."

Iwbwb. The antient British military cry. It has given name to many places as Cwm Iwbwb, the Jupupania of Ptolemy.

KABBADE or CABADE. A military dress worn by the modern Greeks. According to Tzetzes it derives its name from Cabades, a Persian King. Codinus, however, asserts that the Greeks in Constantinople adopted it in imitation of the Assyrians. Others again maintain that it owes its appellation to the resemblance which it bears to a Greek letter, which probably is quite fanciful. It consists of a short garment which was worn under another. It was without any folds, but fitted close to the body, being buttoned with large buttons, and reaching down to the calves of the legs. It was fringed round the edges, and usually worn with a girdle.

Kercheff of Plesaunce. This was an embroidered cloth presented by a lady to her knight to wear for her sake. This he was bound in honour to place on his helmet, which accounts for the word cointisse, properly a scarf, being designated by that name. In latter times the knight wrapped it round his arm above the left elbow, which is the origin of crape being so worn by the military of the present day as mourning. While bearing this token the knight was bound not to decline any adventure, unless the service of religion or his king commanded him to perform another, and then he could only defer it till the service in question should be

accomplished. Thus in the Paston letters, Vol. I, p. 6, it is said: "Moreore there is y kome into Enlond a knyght out of Spayne wyth a kercheff of plesunse i wrapped about hys arme, the gwych knyght wyl renne a course wyth a sharpe spere for his sov'eyn lady sake." Visiting foreign courts for this purpose was continued as late as the time of Henry VIII: thus the great Earl of Surry in that reign, among other places, visited Tuscany and proclaimed a challenge at tilt and tournament in Florence, in honour of his fair Geraldine. Having gained in this very high reputation for himself, and great honour to his native country, the grand duke presented to him a curiously painted shield, which is still in possession of the Duke of Norfolk, and was introduced by Vandyke into his family picture of the Howards.

KERN. The Irish infantry were formerly so called. They were armed with a sword and javelin, which latter was attached to a cord, so that it might be recovered after darting forward.

KNAPSACK. A military case for individual stores, carried by infantry, so called from knapp a protuberance.

LABARUM. The standard of the Christian Emperors of Greece was so called. It consisted of a long lance at the top of which was fixed a cross-bar, from which hung a piece of scarlet cloth, sometimes ornamented with precious stones. It had on it generally the monogram of Christ. Gibbon, on the authority of Eusebius, says: "The silken veil which hung down from the beam was curiously enwrought with the images of the reigning monarch and his children. The summit of the pike supported a crown of gold, which enclosed the mysterious monogram, at once expressive of the figure of the cross, and the initial letters of the name of Christ." The word is derived from the Celtic llab, a flag.

Lambrequins. Rouleaux which attached the crests to the helmets, called in heraldry wreaths. The French writers also use the word to signify the pendant straps at the lower edge of the Roman cuirass.

Lancea, Lanscea. A lance. This word is probably of Gaulish origin, as Diodorus Siculus mentions their spears being called Λαγκία. In a treaty between Charles VI, King of France and the city of Florence, dated 1396, we read: Commune Florentiæ teneatur mittere, tenere et supplere mille lanceas, computando tres equites pro una lancea. Steph. de Infestura, where he speaks of Pope Innocent VIII, says: Fertur ad papam fuisse transmissas litteras regis Franciæ, quibus continebatur.....se missurum.....centum lanceas more antiquo, quarum unaquæque dicitur habere quinque milites vel homines.

- Lancegave. A particular dart or javelin. Some have thought the term corrupted from the French, and to have been lance aiguë or the sharp-pointed lance, but as this is by no means a distinction but common to all lances, it cannot be relied on as the certain derivation. Others have supposed it from lance-gai, or the active sprightly lance, and conceived it to be that which was thrown out from the handle. One of these latter from the arsenal of Genoa is in the collection of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq.; and besides throwing out the blade for attack ejects two short ones, which, springing out at each side, act as a guard to receive the cut of a sword, or other weapon. Upon them is inscribed: Al segno del cor, advice that seems almost superfluous when the bearer is on the defensive. In a letter remissory, dated 1389, it is said: Icellui Jehan Doulcet embeu de l'ennemi à tout une lancegaye, dague, coustel ou espée.
- Lansqueners. The German mercenaries which Charles VII of France first added to his infantry were so called. They continued in the French service till the reign of Francis I.
- Larissa. A species of lance in the middle ages, as well as the formidable spear of the antient Macedonians, called also sarissa. Bernard Thesaurarius de Aquisitione Terræ Sanctæ, c. 192, says: Et sic resumptis viribus cum defensoribus turris, gladiis, larissis, clavis et aliis instrumentis viriliter pugnaverunt.
- Legge Harneys. Armour for the legs, which was probably neither a greave nor jamb, but the large genouillieres or knee pieces, worn on the hose by the infantry in the fifteenth century, as may be seen in Plates xLIII, and LII.
- Levere, Livery. The particular uniform given by a baron or knight to his retainers in battle. "Iff ye knowe any lykly men, and ffair condyc'oned and good archers sende them to me, thowe it be IIII, and I wyll have them, and they shall have IV marks by yer, and my levere." Paston letters, Vol. II, p. 140. By this it seems that even a private knight dressed his military followers in his livery. The Duke of Norfolk commanded Sir John Paston to bring with him to Bosworth Field such tall men as he may goode archers make, and to ordain them jackets of his livery and at his cost and charge, he would content him at their meeting. This livery, it appears from the preceeding part of the letter, must have been parti-coloured, blue and tawny, or yellowish brown. See Paston letters, Vol. II, p. 234.
- LICENSE TO BUILD AND FORTIFY. In England and many parts of the continent no baron could erect a castle without the king's licence. This valuable prerogative of the crown at a time when the nobles often defied the laws, was of such importance that it was imitated in the sister kingdom. Such licences, however, were not very common in Scotland, where each nobleman assumed the liberty of fortifying his castle according to his own means and at his own pleasure; and where lesser proprietors were not only permitted, but even enjoined by law to render the dwellings

defensive against the common enemy. The policy, however, of James I, being to extend the power of the crown, by diminishing that of the nobles, he adopted the custom of England and granted the following licence to Sir William de Borthwick to erect Borthwick Castle: Jacobus Dei gratia Rex Scotorum, omnibus probis hominibus suis ad quos presentes literæ pervenerint, salutem. Sciatis quod concessimus dilecto et fideli nostro Willielmo de Borthwick de eodem militi tanquam utile et honestum licentiam nostram specialem construendi castrum in loco illo qui vulgariter diciter le Mote de Lochorwart infra vicecomitatum de Edinburgh ac ipsum castrum seu fortalicium erigere et fortificare muris fossisque circumcingere portis ereis seu ferreis, ac in sumitate ornamentis defensivis preparare. Et in eodem castro seu fortalicio constabularium, janitorem custodesque necessarios et optimos pro sua voluntate ponendi et removendi ac omnia alia quæ ad securitatem et fortificationem dicti castri necessaria fuerint faciendi. In cujus rei testimonium has literas nostras sub magno sigillo nostro fieri fecimus patentes. Apud Edinburghum, 2<sup>do</sup>. die mensis Junii, anno Domini 1430<sup>mo</sup>. et regni nostri 25<sup>to</sup>. In it somewhat curious to observe that when our nobility and rich commoners in England had relinquished the castle for the embattled manor house, the licence was still continued as indispensable. The following prayer and licence to Sir Thomas Kytson to build Hengrave Hall, in the time of Henry VIII, are curious specimens. "To the king, oure sovereigne lorde. Pleas it your highnes, of your moste habundante grace, to grant your most gracious lettres patente, under yor great seale of England, in due forme to be made after the tenour ensuying." "Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. Salutem. Sciatis quod nos, de gracia nostra speciali, voluimus et licentiam dedimus ac per presentes patentes concedimus et licentiam damus pro nobis hereds. et successor. nostris, quantum in nobis est dilecto nob. Thomæ Kytson militi quod ipse, heredes et assign. sui ad libitum suum et voluntatem suam muros et turres cum petris et sabulo et calce circa et infra manerium suum de Hengrave in com. nostro Suff. edificare, facere et constituere. Ac etiam de ubiori gra. nostra pdonamus, predicto Thomæ Kytson hereds. et assign. suis omnes et oimod; battillacoes turriu. sive alior. edificior. constructur. in et sup. predicto manerio de Hengrave in com. predicto preantea fact. constructas sive edificatas ac idem manerium omni mdi, turribus et muris ac petris et sabulo includere possit et possint, necnon turres et muros illos batellare, tannlare, karnellare et machicolare ac manerium illud sic modo inclus. et muros et turres illos battellat. vel tannelatos karnellat. et machicolat. edificat. et construct tenere et gaudere filiter, possit et possint sibi hered. et assign. suis predict. in perpem absque impeticoe pturbacœ molestacoe impedimento seu gravamine nostri hered. vel successor. nror, aut quor-cumque ballivorum escaetor. viccoronater. seu alior. officiarior. vel ministror. nror aut hered. vel successor nror eo quod expressa mencio, &c. In cujus rei, &c.

### LI-MA

LICIÆ. The lists, a certain enclosed space surrounding either a camp or a castle. An annonymous espistle, de capta Urbe Constantinopolis, dated 1204, has: Exercitum nostrum grossis palis circumcinximus, et liciis. An account, in the year 1202, contains a charge: Pro liciis circa fossatos faciendis, &c. Godefrid the Monk of St. Pantaleone, in 1219, says: Muri firmati sunt ligneis castellulis ac liciis. Jacques de Vitry in his Oriental History, dated 1219, has: Et ad jactum jaculi extra licias Saracenis equitantibus relictum exposuerunt. Also in the epistle on the capture of Damieta, is: Cum ex parte liciarum nostrarum et fossati nostri pluries impugnassent nos Saraceni. Oliver. Schol. says: Fossatum transeuntes et licias violenter rumpentes, &c. St. Louis in the letter relative to his own capture tells us: Destructis Saracenorum machinis, licias fecimus ad pontes navales. So William Guiart says:

La tendent les tentes factices, Puis environnent l'ost de lices.

The Roman de Garin has:

Devant les lices commence li hustins.

The Roman de la Guerre de Troye, MS. has:

Eissux resont cels de la cité, La lice passerent foraine, Puis s'espandent par l'araine.

The word is derived from lizza, which signifies palings.

- Lima. A kind of sword worn by the archers in the French service. In the red book of the chamber of accounts at Paris, is: Quæ omnia et singula, tam ipse Richardus Fichon, archerius noster, quam hæredes et successores sui tenebunt de nobis et successoribus nostris exinde reddendo quolibet anno ad festum Penthecostes unum arcum, duodecim sagittas ferratas, unam limam, et unum cultellum de nemore.
- Limbus. A military tunic. According to Barthius in his glossary it is the same as the wapenrok. Probably it may have been the wrapper put round the soldiers heads, as we see in the time of King John and Henry III, usually termed cargan.
- LORICA. The Roman name for the cuirass, but frequently used in the middle ages to signify the hauberk.
- MACHICOLAMENTUM. A machicolation or perforation in a fortress through which the besieged annoyed their enemies. They were generally attached to gateways, and were formed either by simple perforations in the arched roof of the gateway or by projecting parapets outside which were open at bottom.

- MACLEA. The mascle, a hollow lozenge-shaped piece of steel, several of which being stitched on cloths formed the very antient hauberks. In a letter remissory, dated 1356, it is said: Dictus nepos Stephani haubergerii de quadam pecia maclearum ferri, quam in manu tenebat, dictum servientem in vultu percussit.
- MAES. A word in the Welsh language expressive of a field of battle, so that all such places as are so named have been invariably the sites of conflict, as Maes Gwenllian near Cydwely, in Carmarthenshire, where Gwenllian, the wife of Rhys Prince of South Wales, in the time of King Stephen, fought a battle with William de Londres, was taken prisoner and beheaded.
- Malius. The maule. In a MS. Treatise de Re Milit. is: Postea cum alia securi incidatur catena, ipsa percutiente vel cum malio ferreo. Here it is of iron, but generally the substance was lead. The holy-water sprinkle differed from this in being of wood and armed with spikes. Such a one is in the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq.
- Malla. The same as malia, iron rings or mail. In an account, dated 1336, is: Item proparibus duobus de arnense de malla unc. III. taren. VI.
- MALLEARE. To strike with the maule. Sallas Malaspinæ, lib. 111, Rer. Sicul. says: Ex hôc quidem vulnere se in altum dextrarius erigens, sessorem casualiter excussit ad terram, quem illico ribaldi exutum arma innumeris ictibus mallearunt. And Guillaume le Breton in Phil. lib. 11, has:

Dum multiplici latus undique malleat ictu Hostilis rabies.

- Malleus. The mallet or maule. This weapon was assigned under the name of Miölner, by the Goths, to their God Thor. In the Gesta Philpi. III<sup>ti.</sup> King of France, in 1279, it is said: In quodum illorum tyrociniorum comes Clarimontis armorum pondere prægravatus, et malleorum ictibus super caput pluries, et fortiter percussus in amentiam decidit.
- Malveisin. Corrupted from the French mal-voisin, i. e. disagreeable neighbour, a military machine. Matthew Paris, sub an. 1216, speaks of it as for throwing stones: Propter petrarium, quæ malveisine galliæ nuncupatur, qua cum machinis aliis Franci ante castrum locata, muros acriter crebris ictibus verberabant. Guilleville, in his Pelerinage de l'Humaine lignée, speaks of it for casting arrows:

Ne nuls tels dars ni puet meffaire, Combien que on i sache traire Malveisine les sajetes, Ne espringales ses mouchetes.

Mamalirets. Troops of the Soldan of Egypt. In the Informationes Civit. Massil. de Passagio transmarino, &c. it is said: Et ita predicte galee impedient, aufferent, et turbabunt quòd nemo audebit portare vel adducere ad terras vel partes Sarracenorum et Soldani homines illos qui vocantur Mamalirets, qui efficiuntur, et sunt

meliores, et magis experti in armis quos habeat Soldanus, quoniam naturales homines ipsius Soldani seu Saraceni in se et de se parum valent in armis.

Mameluchi. Egyptian soldiers raised originally from christian slaves or their progeny. William of Tyre, lib. xxi, c. 23, has: Solent enim Turcorum Satrapæ et majores principes, quos ipsi lingua Arabica vocant Emyr, adolescentes, sive ex ancilla natos, sive emptos, sive capta in præliis mancipia studiose alere, disciplina militari instruere diligentur, adultis autem, prout cujusque exigit meritum, dare stipendia, et largas etiam possessiones conferre. In dubiis autem bellorem eventibus, proprii conservandi corporis solent his curam committere et de obtinenda victoria spem habere non modicam: hos lingua sua vocant Mameluc.

Mamillaria, Mamillieres. Circular plates with rings in their centres fixed on the breastplate, just upon the breasts, from whence were suspended chains, one affixed to the
sword hilt, and the other to the sheath, as in the monument of Blanchefront, in
Alvechurch, Worcestershire. They were introduced in the reign of Edward I, and
continued till that of Henry V. In an account of Stephen de la Fontaine, the
French King's silversmith at Paris, beginning the 1st of July, 1352, is a charge:
Pour faire et forger la garnison d'une paire de harnois tout blanc, en quoi est
entré 14 marcs 6 onces d'argent et un once d'or fin à la dorer; c'est à sçavoir
1068 clos à estoilles, 8 boucles, 8 mordans à fermer les plates d'une grant boucle
pour le dossier, 12 rivez, 2 charnieres, 2 mamellieres, et deux chaienes pour icelle
mameliere.

Man at arms. In French homme d'armes, gens d'armes, in Latin eques cataphractus.

The heavy armed cavalry of the middle ages were so called. At first they were exclusively termed milites, the infantry being entirely disregarded. Afterwards, when the cross-bow men and archers conferred estimation upon the foot soldiers, they were included within the denomination, and consisted of knights, esquires, and gentlemen of blood. Insensibly, however, as their numbers encreased, and wars extended in duration, expert riders who could purchase the requisite armour, were retained or received by their superiors, and we find in Froissart several instances of men of low degree who not only became men at arms, but knights and commanders.

In the reign of Henry the VIth their arms appear to have been "harneis complete with basnet or salade with viser, spere, axe, swerde and dagger, horsed and arrayed after their degree." See Archæol. Vol. XVII, p. 215. Their pay at this time was 1s. per diem.

Mangana, Manganum. The mangonell or mangnel, a military machine. The Chronicle of Pisa mentions: Compositis autem ab ingeniosis Pisanorum artificibus manganis, gattis atque ligneis castellis, urbem fortiter expugnabant, et cum his machinis urbis mænia et mænium turres potentissime rumpebant.

Manganare. To project from a manganum. The Chronicle of Verona, in the year 1249, says: Et ea die rocham dictæ terræ obsederunt et ibi steterunt per duos menses circa dictam rocham cum xiii manganis grossis, in ipsa rocha die noctuque manganatibus, et ipsam ceperunt. The Memoriale Potestatum Regiensium, anno 1238, has: Brixienses manganabant castra, et homines qui erant in dictis castris, &c.

Manganellus, Manganella, Manginella, Mangonale, Mangonellus, Mangunella. A manganum of the smaller kind. The Card. de Aragon. in Honorio III<sup>ti</sup>. P. P. says: Immissus ab adversa parte lapis manganelli cecidit super caput ejus et comminutus expiravit. Ugutio says: Librilla dicitur instrumentum librandi, id est, projiciendi lapides in castra, mangonus. The Roman de la Rose has:

Vous peussez bugles, mangoniaux Veoir par dessus les carniaux.

In the life of Charles Earl of Flanders occurs: Securibus exciderunt jactatoria ingenia, scilicet mangunellas quibus lapideam domum et turrim prosternerent.

Mantelletum. A shed used to protect, according to Vegetius, the soldiers from the missile weapons. In an account, dated 1334, it is thus mentioned: Pro expensis factis in quâdam domo apud Vorapium in quâ sunt repositæ machinæ et mantelli domini Dalphini: Item, pro palis seu perticis mantellorum viii sol. In the Chronicle of Peter IV, King of Aragon, is: Faea fer ginys en Valencia y en Barcelona, e mantelets e gates per combatre.

MARTELLUS. The martel de fer, a weapon which had at one end a pick and at the other a hammer, axe-blade, half moon, mace head or other fancy termination. Various kinds of these are in the possession of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq. The Chronicle of Bertrand du Guesclin has:

Olivier de Cliçon par la bataille va, Et tenoit un martel, qu'à ses deux mains porta Tout ainsi qu'un boucher abbatist, et versa.

Mascla, Masclus. The mascle of which hauberks were made. Tideric Langenius in Saxonia, says:

Tune infinitus populus ratibus redimitus, Masclis ornatis, ad quævis bella paratus, Multi barones de Græcis nobiliores Tune processerunt hue, navigioque venerunt.

Again:

Gens armatorum venit ex hoc Ungariorum, Milia masclorum rex quinquaginta suorum Secum ducebat.

Massa. A mace sometimes made entirely of iron, sometimes the head only of that metal with a handle of wood. The head was either globular, a furrowed globe, or com-

posed of several flat pieces, radiating from a centre, and placed in the same perpendicular as the handle. The length of the mace varied from one to two feet, and upwards, several such being in the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq. The French called it mace d'armes, and peloton de gens de guerre. It was generally appended to the saddle bow, and has since been superseeded by the pistol. The transition is marked by one in the possession of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq. having the handle perforated so as to form a pistol. It was used in more rude form in the army of William the Conqueror. In the laws of the palace of James II, King of Majorca, it is ordered: Pacis vero tempore ensem et massam deferre habeant, etiam et arma completa. In the Mem. Potes<sup>n</sup>. Regien, dated 1275, is: Reduxit se dictus Guido comes contra populum, qui erant sine numero, ultra quatuor millia qui erant adhuc in campo in una massa ad vexillum carrocii, where it evidently is applied to a mass of people.

- Matafunda. A machine for throwing stones. The Monk of Vallis Sarnai in his Hist. Albigen, says: Jaciebant siquidem hostes super nostros creberrimos lapides cum duobus trabuchetis, mangonello, et pluribus matafundis. An old translator of William Tyre renders the words: Tantoque instabant saxorum pugillarium jactu—Pierres leur gitoit-l'on assez à macefondes et aus mains.
- Matarus, Matara. A dart used by the Gauls. Cæs. de Bell. Gal. speaking of the Helvetii says: Nonnulli inter carros rotasque matarus ac tragulas subjciebant, nostrosque vulnerabant. Several other authors mention it, and it is curious that in the various languages of the South Seas, mata signifies to hurt or kill.
- Mattucashlash. An antient Scotch weapon, sometimes called the armpit dagger, it being carried there, ready to be used on coming to close quarters. This with a broad-sword and shield completely armed an Highlander.
- MAYNFERE. The covering for the mane on the horse's neck, as criniere was that for the ends of the hair, generally formed of chain and attached to the maynfere. They are often, however, used indiscriminately. The maynfere was made of overlapping plates, on the principle of a lobster's tail, and was fastened to the testiere by buttons, and round the animal's neck by straps covered also with plates.

MAZACA. A mace. William Guiart, under the year 1305, says:

La oist-on aus coups donner Diverses armes raisonner Et tentes espées et maces.

The Roman de Vacce, MS. has:

Grant joye font berjoes et autre gent menuë Nus les legeres fames, les vielles, les chanuës O bastons, ô avaux, ô barres, ô macuës.

# MA-MU

- MAZAFUSTUM, MAZAFRUSTUM. A machine of war, called by the Italians mazzafrusto. The MS. Tract. de Re Mil. et Mach. cited by Du Cange, has: Castella sive oppida de istis sint fulcita, fustis, mazzafustis, fundis, &c. Again: In cabiis stare debent homines armati ad offendendum castellanos sive cives cum ballistis, saxis, igne, scopetis, et mazafustis. In the History of the war at Frejus, is: Finaliter nostri ferventi animo cum balistreriis nostris, arcubus, mazzafrustis, frandegulis, &c.
- Mell. A maul, or heavy mallet generally with its head made of lead and having a long handle.
- Misericordia. The narrow bladed dagger called misericorde. It is said to have been so named because with this the knights obliged their antagonists to call for mercy, after having with their swords or lances prostrated them on the ground. Ganfredus Vosciencis in his Chronicle, lib. 1, c. 44, says: Cumque se ad muli pedes inclinaret, abstracto Burgensis gladio, qui misericordia vocatur, crudeliter militi infixit. The Charta Comm. Atrebat. dated 1211, has: Quicunque cultellum cum cuspide, vel curtam spatulam, vel misericordiam, vel aliqua arma multritoria portaverit. The Roman de la Rose has:

Pitiés qui à tous bien s'accorde, Tenoit une misericorde, Décourrant de plors et de lermes, En lieu d'espées, entre tous termes, Certes, se li acteurs ne ment, Perceroit pierres diaments.

It is also mentioned in the Roman of Guillaume au Courtnez:

Misericordes, et bons bastons planez.

- Morillon. Some part of horse furniture, in all probability the bit ornamented in the Moorish style. The word is sometimes used to imply the handle of a casket, and there is some resemblance between that and a bit.
- Moton. A piece of armour used in the time of Henry VI, Edward IV and Richard III, and appears to have been for the protection of the right armpit.
- Mound. A helmet was sometimes called by this name. Hence in the Romance of Kyng Alisaunder, written about the time of Edward II, it is said that,

"He smot Jonas upon the mound In to the sadel at on wounde."

Mucroludium. A species of sword exercise or fencing. In the Chronicon Estense it is thus mentioned under the year 1352: Dom. Aldrovandinus marchio fieri fecit in Ferraria quoddam mucroludium super platea Ferrariæ. It might, however, have referred to a just in which pointed instruments of wood were used instead of lances.

MUETA. A watch-tower, from the old French muette. In the Hist. of Dauphiny, a charter,

dated 1347, is cited, in which occurs: Faciat unam muetam bastardam cum quatuor culiis....Item, injunxerunt dicto Cellarerio, quod muetam quæ est super portale de burgo dicti burgi de Monte faciat præparari, ita quòd gayta possit jacere desuper et quod sit defensibilis cum expensis domini.

MURILEGUS. A machine resembling, if not the same as the cat. Guillaume le Breton in lib. 1, of his Phil. says:

Gratibus interea pluteis, et robore crudo, Murilegus struitur, sub quo secura lateret, Dum studet instanter fossas implere juventus.

MURUSCULUM. A machine for destroying the walls.

Musachinum. According to the Academy della Crusca it is armour for the back, for they give of it the following explanation: Musachino, parte di armatura di dosso, della quale s'è perduto l'uso. In an account dated 1334, cited in the Hist. Dauph. is: Item, pro arnense uno de mallo de aczario sine musachinis et collario cum paro de caligis unc. V. This quotation shews that it was used with the mail-armour, and that more than one belonged to each suit. It seems rather to have reference to the chignon or nape of the neck, and, as it is mentioned with the collar, probably was a protection for that part worn at the same time, and consisted of two circular bands of steel which encircled such part of the neck. However, Lacombe, on the authority above cited, explains musequin, by sorte d'armure qui couvroit le dos.

Muschetta. A projectile machine from whence probably the name of our muskets. The Hist. Cortusior. lib. 11, has: Alia tertia pars immediatè balistas suas ponderet cum muschettis, et quod telis etiam sagittet. William de Guilleville in his Pelerinage de l'Humaine lignée, says:

Ne nuls tels dars ni puet meffaire, Combien que on i sache traire, Malevoisine des sajettes, Ne espringalle ses mouchettes.

It was usual to give to machines of war names derived from animals of prey. Thus the espringale was so called from the German sprintz, and the muschetta from muscetus a kind of hawk.

Musculus. This seems to be a contraction of murusculus; a machine by which the walls of a fortress could be rapidly undermined or destroyed. In the MS. Treatise de Re Mil. et Mach. c. 65, quoted by Du Cange is: Omne ædificium sive machina batagliandi, ante se habere, debet mantellum ambulatorium, sive musculum ambulatorium, sub quibus stantes balistari sive scopetari defendentes machinam et eam ducentes retro aut ante.

Mustilers. This word occurs in an ordinance for a tournament in the time of Edward I in the following passage: Armez de mustilers et d' quisers et espaulers et de bacyn

#### MU-NU

sans plus. It seems to be a kind of bastard-armour for the body and probably composed of a quantity of wool just sheared from the sheep. In a letter of Agnes Paston, dated 1457, "a musterdewelers gown" is spoken of, and in another of J. Payn, dated 1465, occurs the following expression: "A fyn gowne of must' dewyllers." Whatever this species of dress may have been, it seems to have taken its name from the same root as mustilers. Elmham mentions a town near Harfleur which he calls Musterdevillers, Mustherdevillers, Mosterdevillers, and Moscerdevillers, probably Montiguliers, where this fabric may have been at first fabricated.

Mustricola. A machine to bind the walls of a town or fortress. It seems also to have been a rustic instrument and the same as the French called moutardelle. In a letter remissory dated 1453, is: Icellui Cotier dist à Jehan Colinet, Vous avez emporté ma moutardelle, que j'avoye mis sur ma terre, tenant à vostre fossé. La femme de feu Fremin vint illecq dire audit Cotier qu'elle avoit print ladite moutardelle ou fenerier, et qu'elle la voudroit voluntiers.

NASALE, NASILE. That part of the antient helmets which covered the nose, introduced in the 10th century, and continued to the 12th inclusive. The MS. Roman d'Aubry has:

Jus l'abati dou destrier sejorné, Par le nazal l'a errament combré.

The Roman de Roncevaux MS. has:

Jusque nazal l'a tranchié.

Norrissa. A lance used by the Norrenses. In the MS. Roman de Vacce it is said:

En sa compaigné ont cent gens De plusours armes atornez, Hache, Norroisse tint mout bele, Plus de plain pié ont d'alemele.

Nowchys. Embossed ornaments, chains, buckles, &c. for armour were so called in England in the time of Henry VI.

Nux. The nut which holds the string of a machine or cross-bow. It is generally of ivory, cylindrical with a notch in it for the quarrel to lie in, and another transverse one for the string. Guillaume le Breton thus notices it in his sixth book.

Guido nucem volvit balistæ pollice lævo, Dextra premit clavem, sonat una nervus, et ecce In regis scapula stabat fatalis harundo. Dante in his Paradise, canto 2, says:

In quanto quadrel posa, e vota, e della noce Si dischiava.

Hence the Italian Proverb, La corda en su la noce, to imply an approximate mischief.

OBELARE. To strike with an arrow.

Ocularium. The chink made in the helmet to enable the wearer to see. In French œilliere and visiere, in English vizor. Rigordus under the year 1215, says: "Occiditur cultello recepto in capite per ocularium galeæ. Guill. le Breton, in lib. 11 has:

Per galeæ medias, quibus est ocularia nomen, Per quas admittet ocularis pupula lumen.

Again:

Scrutatur thorace vias, galeæque fenestris Qua ferro queat immisso terebrare cerebrum.

Matthew Paris, under the year 1217, has: Irruit quidam de regalibus, et per ocularium galeæ caput ejus perforando, cerebrum effudit. Ammianus, lib. xxv, seems to notice something of this kind. He says: Erant autem omnes catervæ ferratæ, ita per singula membra densis laminis tectæ, ut juncturæ rigentes compagibus artuum convenirent: humanorumque vultuum simulacra ita capitibus diligenter aptata, ut in bracteatis corporibus solidis ibi tantum incidentia tela possint hærere qua, per cavernas minutas et orbibus oculorum affixas parcius visitur, vel per supremitates narium angusti spiritus emittuntur.

- Onager. A machine for throwing stones. A modern successful attempt to make one of these is recorded in Grose's Military Antiq. who has given two engravings of it. Radulph de Gestis, Frid. I, Imp. says: Et in quodam ligno sedebant, ut lapidibus, qui jaciebantur ab onagris, qui erant in Crema, obruerentur, aut eorum timore vel amore castellum redderetur. Vegetius, lib. iv, c. 2, says of it: Onager autem dirigit lapides, sed pro nervorum crassitudine et magnitudine saxorum pondera jaculatur.
- Onsett or Unsett-place. An improper place to form troops in order of battle, as considered in the time of Henry VI.
- ORDYNAUNCE, ORDNANCE. Artillery. It also signified the disposition of troops on a march, or on a field of battle.
- Oriflamme. The antient banner belonging to the Abbey of St. Denis, which the Counts du Vexin, who possessed the perpetual advowson of this church, always bore in the different

wars, or contests that formerly prevailed between the abbot and neighbouring lords. When the Vexin country fell into the hands of the French kings, they made the oriflamme the principal banner of their armies, in honour of St. Denis, whom they chose for the patron and tutelary saint of France. It consisted of a saltier wavy with rays of glory between its parts. It afterwards became the distinguishing mark of the infantry, and a powder flask of the time of Henri IV, in the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq., is thus impressed.

OSPERGUM. A hauberk.

- Pafustum. A kind of axe. In a letter rem. dated 1463, it is said: Une macque escantellée et une grant paffus à taillant, &c. Another dated I355 has: Dictus miles cum suo pagio subtus suum curferium duntaxat existente Roberts de Hanonia, qui unum pafustum ferreum gerebat, obviavit, eumdem militem de pafusto prædicto multum acriter et dure percussit. Another dated 1381, has: Icellui Jehan Paris fery et navra le dit Guillaume d'un gros paul, appellé pafanche.
- Pailler, Palearius. An antient body of French Militia. The soldiers belonging to it were so called, as some suppose, from their wearing straw twisted round their helmets for the purpose of distinction; but others, with more probability, because they were accustomed to set fire to their enemy's habitations, &c. with bundles of straw, which they carried for that purpose.
- Palectus. A weapon. In the Justice of Peace, p. 69 is: Vi et armis, videlicet, gladiis, arcubus, sagittis, palectis, lanceis, &c.
- Palferrum. An iron instrument to overturn walls. A Chronicle under the year 1404 has: Et ipsamet die Gibellini de civitate et burgis Bergomi iverunt cum stipendiariis ad dictam turrim cum palferris et aliis utensilibus, et cacaverunt ipsam turrim circum circa, &c.
- Pancerea, Panceria, Panseria and Panzeria. Italian panziera, German pancer, a covering for the paunch, i. e. a hauberk. The Acad. della Crusca says: Quella parte dell' usbergo che arma la pancia. In the Constitutions of Sicily it is thus enacted: Prohibemus ut nullus arma molita et prohibita, cultellos, et enses, lanceas, pancereas, scuta vel loricas, clavas ferreas, deferre præsumat. And the Stat. of Charles I, King of Sicily, decrees: Que nus ne porte armes ne couteaus à pointes, ne espées, ne lance, ne paniere, ne escus, ne haubers. This seems to draw a distinction between the hauberk and panziere. The Charter of Peter Zian, Doge of Venice, in 1211, also has: Similiter debet habere unusquisque miles ospergum unum aut panceriam cum capirone, et alia arma, sicut decet. John Thwrocz, in his Chronicle of Hungary, says: Habebat Sanson sub tunica panceriam et prægravamine loricæ natare non potevat.

- Panceronus. Italian panzerone, the military garment worn over the panziera. Castellus, in his Chron. Bergom. under the year 1404, says: Ipsi Guelphi dimiserunt de eorum armis plusquam scutos cccc balistas L et multas curazias et panceronos.
- PANCITONUS. A hauberk. A deed, dated 1370, contains the following: Sit caporalis armatus a capite usque ad pedes, et habeat equitatorem unum armatum pancitono, capello, &c. From the Greek Πων complete, and Χιτων tunic.
- Passum facere. From the French faire un pas, to make a pass or thrust with a lance, to guard against which the passguards or plates on the shoulders so called were introduced in the reign of Henry VII. The expression occurs in Robert of Avesbury's History of Edward III.
- Patena. Plates of iron of which hauberks were made. Ammianus, lib. xvi, calls them limbi, thus: Thoracum muniti tegminibus et limbis ferreis cincti. Guil. le Breton, lib. III, Phil. has:

Vix obstat ferro fabricata patena recocto, Qua bene munierat pectus sibi cautus ab hoste.

Again:

Tot ferri sua membra plicis, tot quisque patenis Pectora, tot coriis, tot gambesonibus armant.

- PATREL. In French poitrel. The breast-armour of a horse. It was made of prepared leather or steel, and adorned with armorial bearings, badges, or devices, or sometimes covered with the trappings. "A rynnyng patrel" is mentioned among the habiliments of a "juste of pees," in the time of Henry VI. We still denominate breast-plate the leather-strap which passes from the saddle round the horse's breast, and between his fore legs.
- Patula, Spatula. A little sword or dagger. Lambert Ardensis p. 168, says: Manus in eum injecerunt, et extractis patulis, sine misericordiis eum jugulaverunt.
- Paveserii, Pavisarii, Pavexarii, Pavesiati, Pavesiatores. Those who were armed with, or carried for the defence of others, shields called pavises. The Chronicle of Bertrand du Guesclin has: D'escus et de pavas les a bien accorder. A letter of the Seneschal of Provence, dated 1388, contains the following: Castra metati sumus cum nostris armorum gentibus, nec non et duobus trabuchis, quingentis balistariis et aliis in copioso numero peditibus pavesatis de dicta civitate Massiliæ. Froissart, c 46, says: Ils bleçoient merveilleusement les gens d'armes, s'ils n'estoient fort armez et paveschez. The convention between the royal commissioners and Ayt. Doria, the Genoese, in 1337, has this clause: Et doit ledit Ayton livrer et tenir en chascune galée, 210 hommes, bien armez de plates, de bacinez, de coliers, autrement gorgieres de fer et de pavers.

#### PA-PE

Pavesium, Pavesius, Pavesius, Pavesius, Pavesius, Pavail. A very large shield called a pavois. In the Chron. Tarvin. in Muratori's collections may be read: Accedere deberem cum paghis lxxxv balisteriorum atque pavesorum; and again Multas manu unica experientias fecit in erigendo lanceas et pavexios, &c. In an inquisition, an. 1378, ex Tabul. Cartus. B. M. de Parco, occurs: Dit que quand le feu viconte fut navré à mort, qu'il fut un de ceulx qui aida à le mettre hors du champ sur un pavail.

PAVOISINE. A small pavois. In a letter remissory, dated 1459, is: Le suppliant print une pavoisine et son espée et sailly en la rue.

PAVON. A large flag in the shape of a right-angled triangle, the right angle being lowest on the staff, and the whole four or five times the length of its breadth. In Francis de la Marque's MS. in the British Museum, written in the time of Richard II, and recording the last transactions of his reign, there is an illumination in which it is represented, and which is referred to in the following words:

En ce faisant, le roy, qui les liepars Porte en blazon, fist rens de toutes pars Faire, et tantost pavons et estandars En hauld lever.

Peciatus. From the French espeecer, "to cut off with a sword," implies smitten. The MS. Roman de la Guerre de Troyes, has:

Thoas li ot li escu specié Et li hauberc li ot desmaillé.

Again:

Patroclus sor selle ploie, Et l'arçons derriere pecoie.

Again:

Tiel colps s'entredonnent ambesdui, Si que les lances pecoierent.

Also:

Là ot des lances froisseis, Et estrange pechoieis.

Pectorale. The poitrail, a steel plate for the protection of a horse's chest, and generally extending on each side to the stirrup-leathers. Vincentius Belvac: lib. xxx, c. 85, says: Habent etiam frena phalerata, et inargentata, et inaurata, atque in pectoralibus campanulas infixas, magnum emittentes sonitum ad gloriam earum et decorem. Sometimes the ends of the pectoral were raised so high as to protect the abdomen

of the knight, and then it was termed poitrail à la haute barde. The Roman de Parise la Duchesse, in MS. has:

> Il vint à son cheval, s'il l'a fait conraer, Il a mise la selle, s'a le poirtral fermé.

It is also the pectoral, or armour for a man's chest. Thus in the Stat. Riper. c. 12, we read: De qualibet soma calybis, ferri soldi, lameriarum et pectoralium de pensibus duodecim pro introitû soldi sex. The parapet wall of a fortification was likewise so called.

Pedones. Foot soldiers called by the Italians pedoni, by the Spaniards peon, and by the French pietons. The servants of officers in India wear a belt with the master's name, and these are called peons or puns. The Norman poets called them paonniers and paons, from which latter word arose the term pawns for the common chess-men.

Peireira. A perriere, or machine for throwing stones. In the Tabular, S. Martialis Lemovic, is: Populus Lemovicensis emit decem peireiras contra Phillippum regem. And: Instructæ sunt hoc anno decem peireiræ super muros Lemovicenses. The term pierrieres has also been applied to heaps of stones which are designedly collected round fortified places to interrupt besiegers in their approaches. These heaps are covered over with earth to conceal the stratagem; and the spots on which they lie are frequently, in modern days, fortified with palisadoes, and when attempted to be carried, the shot fired at them occasion considerable mischief, by the fragments of stones that consequently fly in all directions. The Portugueze substituted for the machine a small cannon on a swivel to throw the stones, hence they termed it pedderero, corrupted by the English into pattarero, but the French retain the original word pierriere.

Pela, Pelum, called in English pile or pille, a fortress. In a deed of Henry IV, dated 1399, preserved by Rymer, that monarch says: De gratia nostra speciali et ex certâ scientia nostra, dedimus et concessimus eidem Comiti Northumbriæ insulam, castrum, pelam, et dominium de Man.... castrum, pelam, et dominium prædicta una cum regaliis. The same king, in 1403, says: Dedimus et concessimus omnimoda alia dominia, castra, pelas, fortalitia, maneria, villas, hameletta, &c. In a deed of Edward III, anno 1336, also in Rymer's Fædera, occurs: Quod custodes omnium aliorum castrorum, pelorum, et fortalitiorum, in dicta terrâ Scotiæ, et alii in eis ad fidem nostram commorantes, eadem castra, pela et fortalitia libere et absque perturbatione qualibet exiere valeant. In Trokelow's Annals of Edward II, p. 42, is: In pelo de Horton latuit.

Pellet. A bullet or cannon ball. Chaucer in his book of Fame says:

As suyfte as a pellet out of a gonne When fier is in the powder ronne.

Pelluris. A leathern helmet.

Penardus. A poignard. In an arret of the Parliament of Paris, in the year 1335, is:

Confessus fuerat palam et publice se dictum vulnus fecisse cum quodam suo pennardo, quo dicto Aymerio ostenso, inter plures enses ipsum penardum cognoverat esse
suum, et cum eo dictum vulnus intulisse.

Pendo. A penon or small flag.

Pennatius ignis. The ignited material that was ejected from machines. The Chronicle of Pisa has: Factum est ut de ingenio Pisanorum ignis pennatius de castello Christianorum per antennam porrigeretur in castellum et comburitur.

Pennatus. A kind of sword. From the Italian pennato a sickle. The Stat. Astens. c. 92, declares: Gladii vetiti sunt isti, spate, pennati, et omnes falzoni.

Pennones, Pennons, or small flags attached to the lances of warriors. The MS. Roman de Garin, has:

L'espié el poing à un panon porprin.

Again:

Prisont és poins les rois espiés forbis, Desuere sont li panon de samit.

Again:

La veissies mil panons venteler Et mil bannieres desploier et montrer.

The Chronicle of Bertrand du Guesclin, has:

A tant és les Anglois à penen de sandal.

Pensel. A diminutive of penon, being the contraction of penonsel. The pensel in the fifteenth century was a ribbon about six inches wide and a little more than a yard in length, fastened to the top of a spear.

Penuncellus, Penicellus. The penonsel. The French call this pignon, pignonciel, and pennonceau. Thomas Walsingham in describing the reign of Richard II says: Vexilla et penicellos erigentes; and, Deferens ante cum vexillum vel pencellum displicatum de armis S. Georgii. The Roman d'Athis has:

Et ont chascun recongnoisance Et pensel en son sa lance.

This kind of flag was appropriated to the knights batchelors, while the bannerets had square banners. Thus the Roman of Wace informs us:

Li barons ourent gonfanons, Li chevaliers ourent penons. Olivier de la Marche, lib. vi, c. 25, where he speaks of promoting a batchelor to the dignity of a banneret, says: Qu'il vous plaise le faire banneret, et relever banniere. Il vous presente son pennon armoié, suffisamment accompagné de vingt cinq hommes d'armes pour le moins, comme est, et doit être l'ancienne coutume. Le duc luy repondit que bien fut il venu, et que volontiers le feroit. Si baille le roy d'armes un couteau au duc, et prit le pennon en ses mains, et le bon duc sans oter le gantelet de la main senestre, fit un tour autour de sa main de la queüe du pennon, et de l'autre main coupa le dit pennon, et demeura quarré, et la banniere faite, le roy d'armes bailla la banniere au dit Messire Loys, &c. An old ceremonial, on the king's marching to battle, says: Aprés les pages viennent les trompettes, aprés les trompettes viennent les pennons des bacheliers: aprés les pennons viennent les bannieres des derrains bannerets deux à deux.

Describing the military etiquette at a funeral, it observes: La quatriéme offrande doit estre d'un cheval couvert du trespassé et sera monté dessus un gentilhomme, ou ami du trespassé, qui portera sa baniere, s'il est banneret, ou s'il est bachelier son penon. Froissart says: Là estoit Messire Hue de Despensier à pennon, et là estoit à banniere et à pennon Messire Hue le Caurelée, et à pennon sans banniere Messire Guillaume Dracton. Of Sir John de Chandos on the expedition to Navarre with 1200 men, he says: Pennons tous parez de ses armes, d'argent à un pel esguisé de gueules qui estoit chose moult belle à regarder; and in c. 24, Sous le pennon de S. Georges à la banniere de Messire Jean Chandos estoient les compagnies, ou bien estoient 1200 pennonceaux. Here the pennon and pennoncel are confounded as is the case in the Roman de Garin:

La veissies tant panoncel fermer Tante baniere sus haucier et lever.

William Guiart, under the year 1304, has;

Pannonceaux par leurs flots ventelent, Et mainte banniere isabelle.

We learn from Froissart that sometimes the esquires had a right to carry pennoncels. Et cheurent d'avanture sur le pennon d'un gentilhomme escuier, et pour lors bon homme d'armes, qui se nommoit Affrenal. Again: Grande beauté estoit à voir les banniers et les pennons de soie, de cendal, armoiées des armes des seignours ventelans au vent et reflamboier au soleil. Again: Et mit son pennon devant luy, qui estoit d'hermines à 2 hamaïdes de gueules. Alan Chartier, anno 1448, says: Derriere les pages du roy, estoit Havart escuier tranchant, monté sur un grand destrier, qui portoit un pennon de veloux azuré, à quatre fleurs de lis d'or de broderie, brodées de grosses perles. The pennoncels were also the small flags attached to the

glaives as well as lances, which the later Greeks call flammula. The Chronicle of Flanders mentions: Une bataille de ses gens à cheval qui tous portoient pennonceaux à leurs glaives. And: Portoit celui chevalier en sa main une glaive d'un pignon d'or, à un bouel de sable.

Pereria, Pererium, Petraria, Petreria. The perriere or petrary, a machine for throwing stones. Ugutio says: Tormentum, quod vulgo dicitur petraria vel mangonum. The Epistle of Baldwin, Emperor of Constantinople in 1204, has: Nihilominus tamen inter quaslibet duas turres seu petraria seu mangonellum erigitur. William of Tyre says: Machinas jaculatorias, quas mangana vel petrarias vocant. William of Apulia de Gestis Norman, has:

......Turrim fabricat quæ lignea muris Prominet, ac juxta de quaque petraria parte, Ponit, et adjuncto muros qua evertere possit Diversi generis tormento.

The Roman de Partonopex MS. has:

Si garnissiez si vos chasteax De perieres, de mangoneax.

The Mem. Potest. Regiens. anno 1218, in Muratori, has: Et illico ligna et trabes in fluvio submergi fecit, et ripam ipsius fluminis, petreriis, et manganis, et aliis machinis muravit et castris lignorum. The Charter of Nuno Sancius, for keeping the truce, in the year 1217, has: Quod nullus expugnet aliquod castrum vel aliquam munitionem cum gussâ, vel pererio, vel manganello. Joinville tells us that the Turks made use of perrieres for throwing Greek fire in the night time, and cast it from cross-bows by day, bolts being armed with it. The Saracen infantry, he adds, ejected it from instruments constructed on purpose.

Pergaminus. A weapon used in Italy. The Statuta Mantuæ decree: Arma autem ab offensione sint, et intelligantur pergaminus, basclarius, daga, &c.

Perpunctum, Purpunctum, Præpunctum. The pourpoint. In the Plac. Coron. 8, Edw. 1, Rot. 41, it is stated that Rogerus de Wanstede tenet dimid: serjantiam ibidem, per servitium inveniendi unum valectum per octo dies, sumptibus propriis, cum præpuncto, capella ferrea et lancea, custodire castrum de Portsmut tempore guerræ et arrentata est (it was let on rent) per annum ad decem solidos.

Pertixana. Italian partigiana, Spanish partesana, French pertuisane, pertuisegne and pourtuisaine, English pertuisan, and partizan, a broad bladed spear-head issuing from a crescent at the end of a long staff. The criminal Statutes of Cumana, enact: Genera armorum prohibita, lancea, gravarina, pertixana, &c. In a letter remissory, dated 1468, is: Un baston appellé javeline ou pourtisaine. Another of the year 1474 has: Son baston appellé pertuisegne Hence this weapon appears to have originated

# PE-PL

in the time of Edward IV, but it did not become general before the reign of Henry VIII. Partisans are still carried by the yeomen of the guards.

Pesens, Pusen and Pysane. It is very difficult to find the etymology or meaning of this word. It has been supposed to be a contraction of pavoisine, and imply a small pavois or shield, but in the Roman of Ly Beaus desconu occurs:

" Hyt the helm, that pysane, aventayl and gorget fell."

From which it would seem to have been a part attached to the helmet.

Phavo. This is mentioned among the habiliments of a warrior in the Statutes of the knights of the Teutonic Order. Ipse tenetur dare fratribus ad arma deputatis spallaria, wappenrok, kilinge, phavones, et cingulos, vestimenta, &c.

PILETTA. A pellet. In a letter of Edward III, dated 1363, in Rymer's Fædera, Vol. VI, p. 417, occurs: Publice facias proclamari, quod quilibet ejusdem comitatus, in corpore potens, diebus festivis cum vacaverit, arcubus et sagittis vel pilettis aut boltis in jocis suis utatur, artemque sagittandi discat et exerceat.

Pilus. A pointed club or javelin; in French pieu. In an account, dated 1202, occurs: Pro septem quadrigis quæ adduxerunt pilos et uncinos et alium harnesium apud Vernonem ix l. xii den. The Roman de Rou has:

Lors voissiez haster vilains Pilx et machues en lor mains.

Again:

Et o les arz traient archiers, Et o les pils vilains lour donnent.

Pixis, Pixis. A military machine called by the Germans, according to Freherus, biech. Thwrocz, in Joanne Huniade, c. 46, says: Ac castris bellicis machinarum, pixidum, ac aliorum tormentorum hostem ferientium, ingeniis munitis et refertis. Bibald Birkhelmer de Bell. Helvet. says: Confestimque non parvam pixidum (bombardas Itali à sono vocant) cum magistris et pulvere mittit sulphureo; and, Hi præter suorum cædem, duas etiam pixides, quas colubrinas vocant, perdiderant; from which it seems to have been the same as the culverine, a particular kind of cannon.

PLATA, PLATES, or a pair of plates, armour so called, being the back and breast pieces. Christopher Hartknock says that the makers of plate-armour were hence called platners. A deed of Hermann, master of the Prussian military order, has: Is vero qui idem allodium, vel decem mansos emerit, debet ratione ejusdem allodii cum armatura, quæ plata vulgariter dicitur, et aliis levibus armis, et uno equo, ad arma talia competente domini nostræ ad tale obsequium esse adstrictus, &c. In a deed, dated

## PL-PR

1347, it occurs thus: Et invenerunt ibidem domini commissarii antedicti oculata fide duo paria platarum, quatuor arnesia ferri. An account of the year 1336 relates: Item, Barthol. Lapo mercatori pro uno paro de platis cum cosseriis et gamberiis unc. 11, taren. XII, which clearly shews it to be the cuirass. Another, of the same year, has: Videlicet, 11 paria de platis coopertis de fustonyo. In the Chron. of Bertrand du Guesclin is:

Ils ont dedans leur chefs leur bacinetz fermez Les escus à leur cols dont il iot assez. Bonnes plates d'acier et de glaives assez.

PLUTEUS. A machine described by Vegetius, lib. iv, c. 15. Also by Abbo in the siege of Paris:

Mille struunt etiam celsis tentoria rebus Tergoribus collo demptis tergoque juvencum Bis binos tressisve viros clypeare valebant Quæ pluteos calamus vocitat cratesque Latinus.

It was for the purpose of covering the miners.

- Pole-Axe. An axe at the end of a pole, to distinguish it from that which had a short handle. It has been absurdly supposed to be a contraction of polish-axe, but that used by those people was short. Specimens of both are in my son's collection.
- Ponhale, Punhale. Probably a corruption of pugnale, a poignard. In a letter remissory, dated 1399, it is said that: Idem, exponens dictum deodatum cum quodam suo gladio vocato ponhali, percussit. And in a deed of the year 1200, Evaginato punhali gladio irruit contra dictum dominum abbatem.
- Præcipitium, Precipitium. A machine for projecting stones. The MS. Tract. de Re Mil. et Mach. Belli, c. 45, says: Et est inventa (bombarda) in vice mangani sive præcipitii projicientium lapides.
- Prædeira, Predeira. The same as petraria, a machine for throwing stones. Ottobon, in the Annales Genuens. anno 1207, says: Easque naves invadendo prederiis, balistes atque sagittis præliaverunt. Bartholomew in the same annals has, under the year 1244, Venit ad portum januæ versus burgum S. Thomæ, et traxit lapides cum prederia, posita in una ex galeis per civitatem. In Caffari's Annal. Genuens. is: Tentoria prope civitatem posuerunt, gattos et machinas, et prædeiras ibi fecerunt.

Priapus. A military machine, probably a kind of cannon.

QUADRELLUS, QUARELLUS, CAIRELLUS, QUADRILLUS, QUADRILUS, QUADRUM. A quarrel for a cross-bow, so called from the form of its pile, which was four sided and pyramidal, or had four projections. Thus Guillaume le Breton says:

Nec tamen interea cessat balista, vel arcus, Quadrellos hæc multiplicat, pluit ille sagittas.

Again:

Transmisso cadit in tempus per utrumque quadrello.

Lambertus Ardensis says: Eorum balistarii mortiferas pluunt in eos quadrilos et sagittas; where we may observe balistarii used for arcubalistarii. Abbot Suger, in his life of Louis VI of France, says: Balistarii quadro ..... est oculo privatus. William Guiart, under the year 1214, writes:

A tant tendent de tous costez Aus arbalêtes devaler, Et puis laissent quarriau saler.

Again, in his account of St. Louis:

Messire Alphonse un jour ataignent, Qui armez iert de son atour, D'un quarrel d'arbaleste à tour.

A deed of Theobald, Earl of Champagne in 1256, has: Et chascun de la commune dou Neufchastel, qui, aura vaillant vint livres, aura arbaleste en son hostel, et quarraus jusqu'à cinquante. William Guiart before cited, under the year 1304, has:

Quarriaus traient au cliqueter, Et font l'espringale geter, Li garros qui lors de là ist, Les plus vigeureus esbahist.

Below:

Et font geter leur espringales, Cà et là sonnent li clairain, Li garrot empené d'airain Lessent leur lieus de ce me vent, Plustost que tempeste ne vent.

Again:

A celes envahies males, Et mestre boat deus espringalles, Tres bien getant en est chascune, Un garrot est sailli de l'une. Again:

Li garrot le chastel tresperce.

Again:

Li engint tout seul demourerent, Qui pierres et garros getoient.

QUADRILLE. Small parties of horse, richly caparisoned, &c. that used to ride at tournaments and public festivals were so called. The quadrilles were distinguished from one another by the shape or colour of the rider's dress. The word is derived from the Italian quadriglia or squadriglia, being the diminutive of squadra, which implies a small party of troops drawn up in a square.

QUARNELLUS. The pinnacle or turret to protect soldiers called by the French carnel and carneau, and by the English charnel. The Roman de Vacce has:

As breteches monterent, et aus mur quernelé.

Again:

Entour ont bretesches levées, Bien planchiés et quernelées.

Queshews. Cuisses or thigh pieces of plate armour. The term was used in the time of Henry VI.

QUINTANA. The quintain. A mark set on a pole, at first fixed, but afterwards made to move on a pivot, to teach young persons how to tilt by running at it with a staff.

The Roman de Jordain de Blaye has the following passage:

A la quintaine et à l'escu jouster. Et courre as barres, et luitier et verser.

Math. Paris, under the year 1253, says: Juvenes Londinenses statuto pavone pro bravio, ad studium vulgariter quintana dicitur, vires proprias et equorum cursus sunt experti.

Quiver. A case to hold arrows. A quiver of Tutesbit is mentioned in an old MS., but I have not discovered of what it consisted.

- RAILLO, RALLO, RELHO, RILHO, RILLONUS. An arrow for a cross-bow. In a letter remissory, dated 1460, it is said: Le suppliant donna à icellui Bernart une raillonnaide par la teste et après ce lui coupa la gorge. In another, dated 1474, is: Supplicans cum sua balistà bandata, uno quoque rillono desuper positi, &c.
- Rapier Dance. A dance, probably derived from the Scandinavian sword dance. The performers in Yorkshire, where it is now practised, are wholly dressed in white frocks, or covered with shirts, to which, as also to their hats or paper helmets, are suspended long black ribbons. They assume the names of military heroes, from Hector and Paris down to Guy Earl of Warwick. The spokesman repeats some verses in praise of each, and they begin to flourish their rapiers. On a signal given, all the weapons are united or interlaced, but soon withdrawn again, and brandished by the perfomers, who exhibit a great variety of evolutions, being usually accompanied by slow music. At last, the rapiers are united round the neck of a person kneeling in the centre, and when they are suddenly withdrawn the victim falls to the ground. He is afterwards carried out, and a mock funeral performed.

RECREUVA. Recruits.

- Rekawice. The Polish gauntlet was so named. Thus in a letter of Casimir III, king of that country, dated 1475, is: Quilibet peditum habeat balistam, vel bombardam ac gladium, item galeam, chirotecas alias rekawice, &c.
- Rengia, Ringa. The military belt. Bracton says: Quando eos accingunt gladiis, id est, ingis gladiorum. Again: Ringæ enim dicuntur, quod renes girant et circumdant, unde dicitur: accingere gladio tuo, &c. Et ringæ cingunt renes talium, ut custodiant se ab incessu luxuriæ. The Roman de Garin, has:

# Li cient l'espée par la renge d'or fin.

An account of Stephen Fontaine, the royal silversmith, dated the 1st of July, 1352, contains the following item: Pour faire et forger le coispel d'une espée, rebrunir la croix, le pomeau, la boucle et le mordant de la renge. An instrument of the year 1386, shews of what materials these military belts were made. It is preserved among the proofs to Lobineau's Histoire de Bretagne: L'une des dites espées sera garnie de renge de cuir ou de soye garnies de boucles, et hardillons de fer et d'acier, mise et ceinte à mon costé, ou attachée icelle espée à une courroye de cuir ou de tessu de soye, &c.

Reference. From the French arriere-bras. That part of plate armour which covered the arm from the shoulder to the elbow. In the reign of Edward II only one plate at first protected the arm outside, being put on the sleeve of mail; but afterwards the rerebrace became a cylinder, consisting of two halves joined with hinges and clasps.

- Reference. Probably the projection put on the crupper, to prevent the horseman being pushed over the horses tail by the thrust of a lance, as was often the case in a tournament. In a Treatise on Peaceable Jousting, in the time of Henry VI, is mentioned: "A rerebrake with a roule of lethir well stuffid."
- RIBALDI. Peasants who were employed as light troops were so called. Thus Guillaume le Breton says:

### Ribaldi, mercatores et vulgus inerme.

- RIBAUDIKIN, RIBAUDEQUIN. A military machine used originally by the French. It was made in the form of a bow, containing twelve or fifteen feet in its curve, and was fixed upon the wall of a fortified town, for the purpose of ejecting a prodigious javelin, which sometimes killed several men at once. According to Monstrelet it was also the name of a soldier's cloak, likewise called ribauderin.
- Ronchonus, Roncheus. A halbert of the bill-kind from the Italian ronchione, and roncone. The Chronicon Estense has: Revocavit ad se xxx suos familiares armatos cum ronchonis; et ipse solus cum istis xxx pedibus viriliter percussit contra inimicos. The Chronicon Tarvisinum has: Durante bello navali per duas horas, quibus balistæ propter pluvias operari non potuerunt, sed in illarum loco succedebant spicula, lanceæ et ronchoni. The statuta civitatis Astæ, explain, gladii vetiti sunt isti, spate pennati, et omnes falzoni, apie, piole, jusarme, roncilei, plombate, borelli, &c. The agreement with A. Doria, in 1337, specifies: Lances longues ferrées, roncies de fer, et tous autres garnemens et armeures.
- ROTELLA. In Italian rotella, in French rondache, a round shield. The Acta S. Francissæ has: Ipsi vero dæmones habebant in manibus quasi unam rotellam ferream et ignitam, totam plenam clavis longissimis et acutissimis et ignitis, et cum illis rotellis illas animas mittebant in capite serpentis, &c. In the Statutes of Mantua occurs: Alia medietas armata lanciis, spatis et cultellis et pavisiis seu rotellis. So Guillielmo de Villani, on the Wars of Italy, has: Les ennemis estoient si fort couvers de pavoys et de rodelles, qui ne laissent point de venir près au pié de la muraille.
- ROUCHINUS. An upper military garment, according to Du Cange. The Codex legum Norman. has: Si vero miles non fuerit, nec habens feedum loricæ, passus injuriam; sed per plena arma feedum suum deservit, per rouchinum, gambesium, et capellum et lanceam, per ae debit ei satisfieri de emenda. Other copies have roncinum, which implies a roncin, inferior horse or hackney.
- ROYTERER, ROYSTERER. A turbulent swaggering character. This epithet is often bestowed on the cavaliers by the puritanical party in the accounts of the Civil Wars in England.
- Rustre. A ring, or rather open scale, of a number of which hauberks were formed in the twelfth century. It is also the name given by the French to a peculiar kind of lance used in tournaments.

SABATYNES, French sabots, Spanish sapatos, steel-clogs were so called that were put on the shoes instead of sollerets. They are spoken of in the time of Henry VI, and may be seen in the triumph of Maximilian I, Emperor of Germany.

Sacabuta. The sacbut, a species of lance so called. John Abbas Laudunensis in his Mirror de l'Histoire, which closes in 1380, speaks of Philip IV thus: Li Roux de Fauquemont sceut cette affaire par un espie que il avoit, adonc fit sa gent armer, et il aussi s'arma, et fit faire dales le fer de sa lance un graouet de fer pour les garçons sachier jus de leurs chevaus: et cele lance fut appellée sacheboute, dont depuis Flamens firent faire plusieux d'iceux bastons. William Guiart in Phil. Auguste. has:

A crochez et a saqueboutes, Le trebuchent entre leurs routes.

Under the year 1301, he says:

Par portes et parois routes Fichent lancent et saqueboutes, Desquels les destriers ocient.

Sagitta Barbata. A barbed arrow, corruptedly called a broad-arrow. In the poem of
La Guerre de Troyes we meet with Sagite enbarbellée, thus:

Qar farine que l'en tamise Ne chiet pas si menuement.... Com font sagites enbarbellées, Dars et engignes enpenées.

SALETT. In French salade, a light head piece sometimes worn by the cavalry, but generally by the infantry and archers. It had sometimes a visor, either fixed or moveable, and sometimes grates, but was generally a steel cap greatly resembling the morian. The name was originally German, implying a shell or saucer.

SATELLITES. Certain armed men, of whom mention is made in the history of Philippe Auguste, King of France. The word implies a guard or attendant, and is derived from the Latin satelles, which comes from the Syriac term for a companion. The satellites of Phillippe Auguste were selected from the militia of the country who fought on foot and horseback. The attendants on the knights were also thus named.

Salvaterra. A sauveterre, or kind of scymitar. Jean Chartier, in his Charles VII, p. 272, says: Sauveterres ou cimeterres, qui sont maniere d'espées à la Turque.

Saxivomum. A machine for vomiting stones, called by the Greeks Λιθοδόλος, a cannon. Elmham in his Life of Henry V, King of England, Edit. Hearne, p. 9, says: Plurima machina bellica, mirandis terrificisque saxivomis, et aliis quibuscumque opem tanto negocio præstantibus, præfato castro obsidionem applicuit.....insultu frequneti

- virorum, horrendis saxivomorum ictibus...infinitos terrores incuciens. Again in chap. 14, p. 28: Et rex interim...guerrarum habilimenta diligenter ordinet, saxivoma fabricat, lapides ab eisdem evomendos præparat.
- Scakana. A battle-axe. The Hist. pacificationis inter Rudolphum, 2, et Turcarum imperapud Ludewig has: Quamvis etiam frameis seu securibus militaribus, vulgo scakanis, pulsarentur, qui nobiscum ingrediuntur, &c.
- Scala. A division of troops, called by the antient French eschielle. In a deed, dated 1393, is: Suum exercitum in duas sealas seu partes divisit, aliam vero scalam in qua erant Britones Galicani, &c. Wace in the Roman de Rou, says:

Sa bataille ordena, ses eschielles parti.

William Guiart and many others use this word.

- Schiencheria. Armour for the back, from the Italian schiena the spine of the back. In the Stat. Vercell. is: Defensibilia autem (arma) intelligantur coracia, panceria, cervellaria.....schiencherie et his similia.
- Scirtum A weapon so called. In the Capitulare de Villis, c. 64, is: Et ad unum quodque carrum, scirtum et lanceam, cucurum, et arcum habeant. Baluzius with much reason considers it a corruption of scutum.
- Sclopus. The esclopette or hand gun. In the Mirac. S. Angeli occurs the expression explosiones scloporum.
- Sclopetarius. A harquebussier. Ludewig says: Nec cunctatus Demetrius cum Polonicis aciebus instructus, præmissis sclopetariis peditibus, obviam processit.
- Scorpio. A poisoned arrow. The Hist. Fran. Sfort, under the year 1428, has: Ubi cassidum posuisset, scorpionis cornu in caput percussus, interiit.
- Scorpionarius. A soldier armed with a scorpion. The Annals of Placentia, under the year 1483, observe: Levis armaturæ quam plurimos ac scorpionarios et pilularios à vestigio transmittit. Cum equis quadraginta decem scorpionistis equestribus, &c.
- SCRAMA. A kind of broad sword, whence the French word escrimer, to fence. In the laws of the Wisigoths it is thus mentioned: Sic quoque ut unusquisque de his, quos secum in exercitum duxerit, partem aliquam zavis vel loricis munitam: plerosque vero scutis, spaits, scramis, lanceis sagittisque instructos, habuerit.
- Scropha, Scrofa. A machine to undermine the walls of a town. Thus William of Tyre lib. III, с. 5, says: Machinas ad suffodiendum murum habiles et necessarias, quas vulgo scrophas appellant. Again in lib. xvIII, с. 19, he says: Ut scrophas materia competenti intexerent, in quibus libere delitescerent, qui ad suffodiendum aggerem introducerentur. Fulcherius Carnotensis, lib. I, с. 18, says: Machinis autem paratis, arietibus silicet et scrofis, ad assiliendum se paraverunt. Matthew Paris, anno 1226, has: Petraria, balista, scrofa, catus, &c.

Secures Danicæ. Axes antiently used by the Danes, but afterwards by other nations of

Europe. William of Malmsbury, and Roger Hoveden after him, says: Securim Danicam in humero simistro, hastile ferreum dextrâ manu gestantes. The Roman de Garin has:

Et portent glaives, et espies Poitevins, Haches Danoises pour lancier et ferir.

The Roman de Rou, MS. has:

De grans hasches Danoises i ont mainte collée.

The Chronicle of Flanders, c. 9, has: La saillit le roy avant, une hasche Danoise en son poing, et cria Guyenne au Roy d'Angleterre. The original Danish axes were bipennæ. William Guiart, under 1304, says:

De haschés tranchans à lons manches, Forgiées come besaguës, D'espées, de lances aguës.

The Chronicle of Bertrand du Guesclin has:

D'une hache à deux mains donna telle collée.

The Catholicon Armoricum calls the Danish axe, hachedenes. Sueno in legibus castrensibus de Canuto magno rege Daniæ; c. 2, says: Proclamari jussit solos illos regis clementiam experturos, arctiorisque, familiaritatis privilegio præ aliis fruituros, qui in regis honorem catervæque militaris decorem bipennibus, mucronumque capulis deauratis coruscarent. Cedit enim honori principis, si eum cœtus militaris corona, fulgentibus insignis armis undique secus comitetur. Dudo lib. 1, de Morib. Normannor, p. 65, says: Gemmis auroque politos secures ensesque exponite.

Scutarius, Scuterius. An esquire or shield bearer, the same as armiger.

Scutatores. Pavisors or bearers of large shields to protect the archers. Vegetius, lib. 11, c. 17, says: Ferentarii autem, armaturæ, scutatores, sagittarii, funditores, hoc est levis armaturæ adversarios provocabant.

Scutum de Quarteriis. Escu de cartier or quartier. This is said of a shield when it was suspended so as to hang over the left hip. Hence in the Roman de Garin occurs:

Au col li pandent un escu de cartier.

Again:

Grant cop li donne sor l'escu de cartier.

It should, however, be observed that by quartier was generally implied emblazoned quarterings. Thus in the Chronicle of Bertrand du Guesclin:

Là peussiez veoir maint escu de quartier, Et mainte lance grosse dont bon sont li acier.

The high part of a turret was also thus named. Hence in an antient deed it is said: "inter scutum et krenellum;" the shield being generally placed in the embrasure.

Sedilia. The scabbard, being, as it were, the seat of the sword.

- Segerzonum. A weapon probably the same as the zagaye or Mahommedan lance. In the Statuta Vallis Ser. is the following declaration: Arma vetita sunt hæc, videlicet lancea, rasthullum, segerzonum, &c.
- Sercotium. A surcoat, a military garment worn over the armour, from the time of King John to that of the commencement of Edward the Second's.
- Serimalia, Sermalia, Scrimalia. A machine of war. Otto Morena in his Historia Rerum Laudensium, p. 51, says: Laudenses, quos captos habebant, de carcere super sermialias et machinas ipsius castri deduxerunt. In p. 54, Multosque petrerios ibi composuit, per quos balistariis suis foras trahentibus, fere nullus ex Cremonensibus ibi ad serimalios, seu machinas ipsius castri appropiare poterat. At p. 55, Super serimalias et machinas. Again: Qui féré onmes manganos et petrerias, serimalias, seu machinas cæteraque defensionis Cremæ instrumenta suo mirabili ingenio composuerat.
- Serveleria, Servelleria. The cervelliere, from the Italian cervelliera. Armour for the neck.
- Servientes. Foot soldiers called serjeants. The Statuta Synodi Biterr. in 1375, say:

  Cum intellexerimus quod nonnulli sacerdotes, et alii in sacris ordinibus constituti....

  cultellos longos desuper publice ad modum servientium, et ribaldorum in cleri vituperium deferant.
- Servientes Equites. Mounted serjeants. Roger Hoveden in his account of Richard the First's reign, says: Willelmus cognomento Cocus (a Welshman named Gwilym Coch, or the red) serviens Richardi Regis Angliæ, in custodiendo castellum de Leuns, cepit in familia Regis Franciæ 24 servientes equites, quos Rex Franciæ miserat ad muniendum castellum de Novomercato. In an account, dated 1202, preserved by Vilhardouin, mention is made of serjans à cheval et à pié.
- Shelde. A shield was so called in the time of Henry VI. It is derived from a Northern monosyllabic root, "schul," which implies a cover or defence, in German schild. This was a defensive piece of armour of the highest antiquity. Among the Saxons it was a large concave orb generally white. The Scots and Picts bore also round shields

of a brown colour, and the Danes and Irish red. The antient Belgæ had large oblong shields, but the Western Britons flat circular ones. One of these last, found in a turbary in Cardiganshire, is in the collection of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq. It is held in the centre by the hand, for which purpose it has a conical boss, and is of brass, so thin as to have been, in all probability, originally fixed on a hide or leathern form. Originally shields were invariably of wood, basket work, or leather, those in Japan being of the second kind. The early Danes and Irish had some of gold, as for religious ceremonies had also the British Druids. The Saxons as well as Danes had both large and small shields, and they made use of them to swim upon or as sheds against rain and wind. About the time of the conquest, they were shaped like a kite, near four feet high, having been borrowed from those of the Sicilians. They gradually became smaller and more triangular, till they were less than half their former size. In the fifteenth century, they were of very fantastical shapes; but they seem to have always had a cushion in the middle of the inside, and handles to hold them besides a strap to hang on the neck. From the time when armorial distinctions came into use, the shields of gentlemen were invariably charged with the arms or device of the bearer. There are, however, instances even in the fourteenth century of gentlemen still bearing blank shields, because their progenitors had never performed any action to entitle them to a particular bearing.

The English archers carried small round shields, in the fifteenth century, scarce a span in diameter. These were called bucklers and either convex, or concave, with a boss in the centre, so that any missile weapon could not slip off the shield, but was driven towards the boss in the middle, when it naturally fell down. The shield was distinguished from the escutcheon, because it served for war, while the latter was rather for shew. They were divided into shields of war and shields of peace. Both were hung up at tournaments, and the tenants were obliged to combat with sharp or blunt spears, or weapons according as the squires of the comers touched either the one or the other. Upon the shields of war the arms of the owner were depicted, upon the shields of peace his device. The shield of war of Edward the Black Prince, for example, bore quarterly old France and England, while that of peace was sable three ostrich feathers argent penned and scrolled or.

Sicca. A small sword, the edge of which is within side the curve. They are put in the hands of the Dacians on the Trajan column, were what the Saxons called seaxes, and are still used by the Moors and Albanians. Gregory of Tours, lib. 1x, c. 19, says: Et statim extinctis luminaribus, caput Sicharii sicca dividit.

Sockets. Large pieces of plate armour, sometimes put on the side of the saddle, at tour-

- naments, through which the legs were thrust, that they might protect the thighs. They came into fashion in the time of Henry VII.
- Sowde. From the French solde, pay, or wages. Hence sowdier or soldier, a military man serving for pay.
- SPADA, SPATHA. A sword, long and sharp on both sides. Sometimes it was so contrived that by touching a spring, after being thrust into a person's body, two side pieces were suddenly jerked outwards, in which case it was called spatha pennata. Three German daggers of different dates in the sixteenth century upon this principle, are in the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq.
- Spallarium, Spallerium. Armour for the shoulders, in French espauliere. The statutes of the knights of the Teutonic Order, art. 73, say: Ipse (trepararius) tenetur dare fratribus ad arma deputatis spallaria, &c. The Chron. Sicil. has: Forma militaris apparatus est cum spalleriis de cindato, et manto de cindato. An inventory, dated 1294, contains the following item: VI spallerie ad armandum. In Assisiis Hierosol, c. 95, is: Et doivent avoir lor chauces de fer chauciés, et lor espalieres vestuës.
- Spanner. An instrument by which the wheels of wheel-lock guns and pistols were wound up. They were at first simple levers with square holes in them. Next a turnscrew was added, and lastly they were united to the powder flasks for small priming. Several varieties of each of these sorts are in the armoury of Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq.
- Sparth. A battle-axe. Brompton speaking of the Irish, says: Qui (the Norwegians) tandem numero succrescentes contra indegenas frequenter rebellarunt et usum securium, quæ Anglice sparth, dicitur, ad terram Hiberniæ comportarunt. Again: Securim, i. e. sparthe, in manu quasi pro baculo bajulant, qua sibi confidentes præoccupant. The Chronicle of England, by Thomas Otterbourne, p. 16, has: Usum securium qui Anglice sparth dicitur, ad terram Hiberni comportaverunt.
- Spatha in Fuste. A sword which has a club or staff for its scabbard. The practice of thus concealing swords was not confined to the Asiatics, though probably borrowed from them. An epigram of Ennodius thus describes one:

Utrumne incluso per fraudes ense bacillo, Mors ligni tunicis quam bene tecta lates? Subsidium portas, quod cunctis terror haberis, Pacificum est nobis, quod necat obsequium.

Saxo Grammaticus speaks of one in his Historia Danica, lib. vi: Ferrum cavatis baculis condendum.

Spear. Not only was the weapon known by that name, but also the bearer, as the troops were antiently enumerated by the different arms they carried.

SPER. A spear or lance, in the plural sperris, from the French espieu, derived from the Normannic sparre, a straight pole or shaft. Strictly speaking, the spear was the weapon of the infantry, subsequently termed a pike, and the lance that of the cavalry, but it was often used as the general appellation of both. Spears were the principal arms of the antient tribes of Northern Europe and Asia. The Sarissa of the Macedonians, and that of the Swiss of the middle ages, were regular spears. They varied among the infantry from twenty-six to eighteen feet in length. The Goths appear to have been the first who introduced this weapon among the cavalry. It was used as a thrusting and missile weapon till after the conquest. About the reign of Edward I, the butts began to be formed with a swell, with a smaller part for the hand to grasp, called the gripe. The wood most proper was then termed lance-wood, found in Spain, Italy, and Greece. In the North, as well as by the Welsh, ash was preferred. According to the taste of the owners spears were painted with the colours of their arms in spirals, or gilt, or altogether red, so a war-lance in the possession fo Llewelyn Meyrick, Esq. from Vienna, is white spotted with red eagles, the blazon of Inspruck. The South of France was reputed to produce the best tempered points or spear-heads.

When the men-at-arms dismounted to fight on foot, they often cut their spears down to six feet in length. On horseback they were from thirteen to ten feet long. The spears of the modern Cossacks and Uhlans are never less than nine feet; but they have this disadvantage that, being held in the middle, one half the length is lost: in order to overcome this in some measure, our modern lancers allow the lance to slip through their hand when making a thrust, but the friction must evidently take from the impetus.

Our ancestors by making the spear heavier at the butt end, rendered it convenient to poise when held near that part, and hence they became formidable to infantry, which is not the case with our lancers. Persons of rank usually adorned their spears with bannerols, penons, or pensils, the Germans sometimes with fox tails, the modern Turks with tufts of horse hair, or the tail of the jack or bos granicus of Tartary.

In the fifteenth century the Italians invented spears extremely clumsy, being hollow, of which P. de Commines speaks deridingly. Six lances were allowed to each knight at a tournament in the reign of Henry VI.

Spinetum. A kind of game in which jousting was introduced. In a paper on its praise, in 1360, we are told: Il se présenta aux joustes à cheval, armé et pardessus aussi accoustré de samit blanc, son cheval armé, et houssé, jusqu'en terre de mesme, entretaillé avec houppes et sonnettes dorées, morillon doré, bien empannachié, ses valets à cheval, et à pied, et ses halbardiers tous accoustrés aussi de juppones de soye verte. The Earls of Flanders used to indulge in the hastiludes de l'Espinette.

Spingarda, Spingardus, Springaldus, Springalis. The espringal, a machine of war so called. Sanutus, lib. 11, p. 4, c. 8, says: Indiget dictum navigium tam ædificiis balistrarum, silvestrarum vel spingardarum, quam etiam machinarum, et potissime ex eis, quæ, ut longius projiciant, facta sunt penitus fortiora, id est reforzata. The Chronicon Estense has: Interim præparari fecit maximam quantitatem balistarum, sclopetorum, spingardarum, &c. The Historia Obsidionis Jadrensis, lib. 1, c. 38, has: Confeceruntque plusquam 15 trabuchos in vallatione civitatis, architectant multos spingardos in gyro civitatis, ubi flebilioris apparebat virtutis. William Guiart, under the year 1304, says:

En l'estage ot une espringalle, Là ou là breteche est haucie.

Again:

Sus le pont et en la breteche Quarriaus traient au cliqueter, Et font l'espringale gieter, Li garros, qui lors de là ist, Les plus viguereus esbaist.

Again:

En chascune nef bonne et male Ra-il au moins une espringale.

The Chron. of Flanders, c. 110 has: Et avoient avec eux plusieurs charios, qui menoient trebus et espringales. Guillaume de Guilleville, monachus Carilocensis, says:

Ne nuls tels dars ni puet meffaire, Combien que on y sache traire. Malevoisine ses sajetes, Ne espringale ses mouschetes.

Froissart, in his 144th chap. says: Et fit le chastel asseoir droit sur la ville, du costé de la mer, et le fit bien pourvoir de pringalles, de bombardes, d'arcs et d'autres instrumens. A deed of Edward II, dated 1325, in Rymer's Fœdera has: Springaldos, balistas, arcus, sagittas, ingenia, et alias hujusmodi armaturas pro munitione castrorum et villarum. The genealogy of the Earls of Flanders gives us the following information: Rex autem (Philip the Fair) ex adverso tres acies statuerat, et ita prope Flandrenses venerat, quod sagittis et telis, machinis, minutos lapides projicientibus et springalibus eos mirabiliter infestabat. Et omnes machinas et springales confregerunt.

Sponto, Spunto. A weapon of the sword kind. The Stat. Mutin. of the year 1328, says:

Lanceam, scutum, et spatam sive spontonem et cultellum, &c. The word esperoit seems to have had a similar signification. Thus in a letter remissory, dated 1391,

it is said: Icellui Drouet print un grant coustel, ou esperoit que le dit Perrinet, le savetier avoit à sa sainture.

Spontoon. A weapon much like a halbert, formerly used instead of a half pike by the officers of British regiments of infantry. With its motion were certain commands understood; thus when planted, the regiment halted, when pointed forwards, it marched, and when pointed backwards, it retreated.

Spourones. From the Anglo-Saxon propa, spurs. Those of knights were gilt, those of squires plated. The will of Everard Duke of Frejus contains the following clause: Baltheum unum de auro et gemmis, spourones duos de auro et gemmis, vestitum unum de auro paratum, &c. Littleton, in Sect. 159, says: Tenure par petite serjeanty est lou home tient sa terre de notre seigneur le roy de render al roi annuelement un arke, ou un espée, ou un dagger, ou un cuttel, ou une paire de gants de ferre, ou un paire de spoures doré. They were at first of the spear kind and then the pryck, and finally, in the time of Edward II, were furnished with mullets or rowels. In the reign of Henry VI, the necks were straight and very long, and in that of Edward IV, the rowels had spikes, between two and three inches in length. In Henry the Seventh's time they became fixed to the armour. When the great boots of Charles the Second's time were introduced, the shanks of the spur were proportionably widened.

Standardm, Standardm, Standardm, Standard. A standard, the principal flag of an army. The word is of Asiatic origin, for the writers on the holy wars attribute it to the Saracens. Tudebodus, lib. v, says: Unus autem nostrorum accepit standarum ammiravisi, desuper quod erat pomum aureum, hasta vero tota cooperta argento: quod stantarum apud nos dicitur vexillum. Albert Aquensis, lib. vi, c. 50, says: Longissima hasta argento operta per totum, quod vocant standart, et quæ regis Babyloniæ exercitui, signum præferebatur, et circa quam præcipua virtus densabatur. The Roman de Garin says:

Mes les grans gens Fromond le posteif, Sor l'estendart font les nos resortir.

Again:

L'estendart verse, et li huz est levez.

Standard also implied a mark for archers to shoot at, put on the top of a long pole. Thus in the Bailiff's accounts at Shrewsbury, in the beginning of the reign of Henry VIII, is the following item: In denariis solutis certis diebus dominicis sagittarioribus de le stondert, viz. cuilibet meliori sagittariori, 2<sup>d</sup>. et secundo sagittariori, 1<sup>d</sup>. So Stowe in his Survey of London, edit. Strype, Vol. II, p. 257, says: "Before my time it had been customary at Bartholomew tide for the Lord Mayor with the sheriffs and aldermen to go into the fields at Finsbury, where the

citizens were assembled, and shot at the standard with broad and flight arrows for games." By the 33rd of Henry VIII, c. 6, no person that had attained the age of twenty-four years might shoot at any mark at less than two hundred and twenty yards distance. The marks to shoot at besides the standard were the butts, the target, hazle-wands, rose-garlands, and the popinjay.

.Standard was likewise the name for the wooden stands on which armour was hung when placed in its armoire or closet.

- Stochus. An estoc or estocade, a sword for thrusting, generally carried by knights at the saddle-bow. The Stat. Castri Redaldi say: Declaramus quod arma vetita sint infrascripta, videlicet, lancea, spata, cultellus, sive daga, et cultellessia, stochus et omne alius ferrum strictum et acutum simili stoco.
- STRATIGARI, STRADIOTS, or ESTRADIOTES. Greek troops in the pay of the Venetians, and afterwards in the service of France in the time of Charles VIII. Ph. de Commines, lib. VIII, c. 5, thus speaks of them: Estradiots sont gens comme genetaires, vestus à pied et à cheval comme Turcs, sauf la teste, où ils ne portent cette toile qu'ils appellent turban, et sont durs gens et couchent dehors tout l'an, et leurs chevaux, ils étoient tous Grecs, &c. The word comes from the Greek Στρελιωτες.
- STRELITZ. A Russian word, whose plural is strelitzy, derived from strelai, an arrow, in the same language. The antient militia, which was formerly kept in pay among the Muscovites, both in times of peace and war, was so called. The men who composed it served on foot, and were originally armed, as their name indicates, with bows and arrows. They afterwards received musquets or fire-locks, and laid aside the bow and arrow. The rest of the Russian army, which was only called together in cases of emergency, retained the bows, arrows and lances; with which each soldier armed himself according to his own particular caprice. In the remote periods of the Russian empire, the strelitzy were the only regular body of troops that formed any part of the standing army of that country. It consisted of from twenty to twentyfour thousand men, who enjoyed a multiplicity of privileges and immunities, and were quartered in one of the suburbs of Moscow, which is still called Strelizkaia Slaboda. From the latitude allowed them, and the peculiar indulgences which the soldiers enjoyed, they might well be compared to the Prætorian bands under the Roman emperors, and in some degree to the janizaries of Constantinople. They frequently mutinied like the latter, and interfered in the management of public affairs. Their last revolt, however, was fatal to them. It happened in 1698 during the absence of the Czar, Peter I, who, on his return to Russia, broke the whole corps, erased its name from the list of military establishments, and put his troops upon the same footing as those of the rest of Europe.

Subarmalis, Subarmale. This word was used sometimes to signify the garment worn under the armour, and at others to imply weapons concealed by it. Subcingulum. When one belt was worn below another it was thus called. Hence Honorius August. lib. 1, c. 82, de Sacerdote, says: Cingulo pro arcu se cingit, subcingulum pro pharetra sibi appendit.

SURCOTIUM, SURCHOTUS, SYRCOTUM. The surcoat.

Survey. It is by no means a modern practice to make a military survey of a country previous to the departure of an expedition into it. There exists in the Bodleian library, at Oxford, an official report to Henry V, by Sir Gilbert de Lannoy, knight, of a military survey of Egypt and the Holy-land made previous to a projected crusade.

SWASH-BUCKLER. Bravadoes were so called in the reigns of Elizabeth and James the First.

Sword, called an armyng sword. The same as the estoc. It received its name from being used when knights were fully armed, when it was appended to the left side of the saddle-bow. In one of the Paston letters, dated 1466, is the following passage: "I gaffe hym a ffayr armyng-sworde win this iij dayes." Two-handed swords were used in Scotland in the time of its Queen Mary, for Bannatyne, in his journal, p. 172, tells us that, on the 25th of May, 1571, "The laird of Braid went out with a two-handed sword, when the soldiers discharged their hagbutts at him."

Swyre. In Vol. II, p. 38, this word occurs, and is not explained. By the assistance of my kind friend Mr. Douce, I am enabled to state that it is the Anglo-Saxon word for the neck.

TABARDA. A tabard or tabeld, a wide garment open at the sides, with wide sleeves or flaps reaching to the elbows. It was worn over the armour and generally emblazoned. At first the tabard was very long, reaching half-way down the legs; but it was afterwards shortened, so as to go no lower than the knees. At present, tabards are only worn by the heralds.

Tackle, appurtenances of armour, though Cotgrave, Borelli and others apply it to a dart, and Col. James says the Welsh so called any weapon ejected from a bow. William Guiart, under the year 1298, has:

Mes hauberjons et cervelieres, Ganteles, tacles, et gorgieres, Qui entre les cops retentissent, Les armes de mort garantissent.

Again under the year 1301:

Tacles, hauberjons et cointises.

Again under that of 1302:

Targes fendent, tacles resonnent.

It is also mentioned among the habiliments for a just of peace in the time of Henry VI.

I conjecture that the moveable pieces which connected the shoulder-plates with the gorget, and those which came from the back-plate over the shoulders to the breast were what were thus termed.

Talavacius, Tavolacius, Talochia, Talaucha, Taulachia, Taulacho, Talebart, Talevas and Talvas. A large shield something resembling the pavois, invented in France. Odericus Vitalis, in lib. viii, speaking of Robert de Belesme says: Robertus autem, qui pro duritia jure talavacius vocabatur, &c. Rolandus Patavinus, in his Chron. Tarvis. lib. viii, c. 10, says: Circa ci pedites cum talavaciis statuit super turrim et portam. And the Roman de Vacce has:

#### As talevaz se sont et couvrir et moller.

Jean de la Gogue, in his Hist. des Princes de Deols, says: Et commanda par tous les loigis de son host, que chascune chambre heust le jour ensuivent un homme d'armes et deux talevassiers pour assaillir le chastel. Again: Envoia deux les plus esprouvez de sa compaignie pour viser le chastel, accompaigniez de talevassiers et archiers pour les garder. The Stat. Patav. lib. III, announces: In qua fuerint decem homines armati tavolaciis vel scutis, lanceis, vel lancionibus. In a Litt. official. Suesson. 1378, occurs: Viginti solidos Parisienses amoverat eidem et subripuerat cum ense ipsius et talochia. In a letter remissory, dated 1388, mention is made of un boucler ou taloche. Another, of the year I390, has: Cavelier tira un grant panart ou badelaire, et en voulut frapper le maçon. Celui cy para en partie le coup de sa taloche. In another, dated 1397, is the expression: Une taloche de fer; and in one of 1408: Arnault Dader issy hors de l'ostel portant son espée et son talebart ou taloche. We also find in a deed, of the year 1328: Cepit eidem quendam penardum et taulacho, et reddidit eidem dictum penardum, dictum taulacho habet adhuc pro expensis. In a muster-roll, dated 1339, occurs: Mostra servientum peditum cum lanceis, talauchis, telis, ensibus et gladiis, &c. And in a letter remissory, of the year 1397, is: Icellui de Fortit armé de badelaire et de taloche ou talebart, &c.

The tavollaccini, however, were the police soldiers of Italy, armed with lances and shields. Thus Bened. Varch. Stor. lib. 11, says: V'erano non solo, oltre i ramarri delle compagnie, i tavollacini, e i mazzieri della signoria, ma i famigli dei Signori Otto.

Talpa. A machine for undermining walls, under which were concealed those who performed the operation. Peter Tudebod. lib. III, says: Hoc nostri videntes, statim ordinaverunt, ut facerent maximam talpam, cum quâ potuissent perforare pontem, et fecerunt, &c. Robert, the Monk's Historia Hieros. lib. IV, has: Balistæ, falces, arietes, talpæ, tela, sudes, et fundæ. Gilles de Paris, in Viâ Hierosol. lib. v, says:

Fiunt balistæ, plumbata, phalarica, talpæ.

Godfrey of Viterbo, in his Chronicle, part 17, says:

Hine cibus arctatur, fons tollitur, inde paretur Talpa cavans arces, mangonibus injaculatur.

Anna Comnena gives the same signification to Ασπάλαμες.

- TALPARII. The miners who worked under the talpa. Thus Joannes Majoris Monasterii Monachus in his MS. Chronicle, under the year 1188, says: Habebat quippe quosdam artifices, quos fossores vel talparios vocant, qui ad modum talpæ subterranea fodientes, quaslibet murorum et turrium firmitates ferramentis validissimis perrumpebant.
- Tandels, Taudies. In Greek Tadow, implies baggage in disorder, or piled up in defence. It is used by Joinville in his Life of St. Louis.
- Tapponator. A miner. The Chronicon Petri Azarii, has: Et quamvis aliquando per contrariam cavaturam ipsis tapponatoribus male successisset, nihilominus castrum seu domignonum super rondellis posuerunt, frustra contendentibus obsessis.
- Tapponum. The covering for the miners. The last cited Chronicle says: Deinde marchio cœpit castrum machinis tormentare et tapponum pro ipso castro habendo incœpit. Ubi cum tapponasset pluribus diebus, castellanus.....valde pertimuit. Again: Aggressores, videntes prædicta non valere, cœperunt ponere in civitate tapponum valde occultum pro ipso castro obtinendo, et cavando. It is so called from tappus, a trough or funnel, whence the English word to tap.
- TARCIA, TARGA, TARGIA, TARGETA, TARGHETTA, and TARCHETZ. A round shield, called by the French targe, by the English target, by the Arabs tarka, by the Germans tarisch, and by the Bohemians tarts, all which are derived from the Celtic tarian. Some, however, have supposed it derived from the Latin terga, and have adduced the following, as a proof, from Virgil, Æn. lib. ix:

Quam nec duo taurea terga, Nec duplici squama lorica fidelis et auro Sustinuit.

But this itself was of the same Celtic origin. The targe was sometimes emblazoned. Thus in the Monasticon Anglicanum, Vol. III, p. 316, we read: Cum targis de armis Regum Angliæ et Hispaniæ. In a list of Munitiones Sommeriæ in Occitania, of the year 1270, occurs: Item, xx alberjons, item, x targe, &c. Thomas Walsingham, p. 105, says: Capti sunt scutiferi in numero excessive, de quibus dominus Rogerus de Northburghe custos targiæ Domini Regis, quæ ob eodem ibidem per Scotos est ablata, in captivitate ductus. Matthew Paris, under the year 1219, has: Hostes vero fidei omni metu dissimulato, tres ordines armatorum stationi navium christianorum opposuerunt: unam peditum, super ripam fluminis cum targiis eleganter ordinatam, &c. An account, dated 1202, has: Pro asseribus

ad targias faciendas. Those plates that cover the arm-pits appear to have been called by this name, in the same manner as rondell was equally applied to both. Thus in an inventory, dated 1379, the word targeta is so used. In the Chronicon Pet. Azarii it is said: Equites cum lanceis et targhettis. Ripalta, in his Annals of Placentia, under the year 1443, has: Magnæ exequiarum pompæ et funeralia facta fuere cum equis 24, vexillis 13, tarchetis 10, ac etiam chimeris et armis. The Dukes of Bretagne called some of their coins targes.

Targo, Targonus. A large target, called by the Italians targone, and by the French targon. In a MS. Tract. de Re Milit. et Machin. Bell. c. 115, occurs: Pedites et equites habent fascinas sive flastea lignorum pro targonibus et mantelletis. In the Chronicon Bergomensi, is: Habebant multos scutos seu targonos Gibellinos. The Roman de Garin, has:

A son col pend une targe florie.

The monumental effigy of one of the Corbet family at Malvern has in its hand a targe, which is also suspended by a belt round the neck. William Guiart says:

Coutiaus, hachettes esmoluës, Targes entieres et fenduës.

Again:

Tante targe à col pendüe. Peinte d'or, d'azur, et de sable

And, under the year, 1248:

Les arbalestes ès poins prises, Et les targes au col assises.

Again:

Les grants targes au col assises.

And, under the year, 1304:

Ont leur haie ourdie et tissue De fors targes longues et lées.

The Roman before cited speaks of their effect when used by a number of soldiers together in an assault:

Totes les lices fet as serjans coper, Les targes fet as serjans amener. Again:

Sor les fossez font les targes tenir.

Matthew Paris, an. 1240, says: Oppositis corporibus suis propriis et amplis clypeis, qui targiæ appellantur. William Guiart further says:

Li unt targent, li autre traient.

In the Roman de Garin, is:

Au chastel vont, n'y volent plus targier.

Again:

Cil de Bordele n'ont point de l'atargier.

And in another work of his:

En sa voie entre, ne se vot atargier.

These quotations seem to refer to a practice somewhat resembling the forming of the tortoise.

- Tassa, Tassus, Tasses, Taces, or Tassets. Coverings for the pockets, from the German tasche. These, at first, consisted of several overlapping bands of steel, attached to the bottom of the breast-plate: but in latter times, of two flaps each of one piece, though marked as if made in the antient mode.
- Taupins. A name which was formerly given to some of the Francs-archers in France.

  This body consisting of countrymen and rustics, they were probably so called from taupe, a mole; of which there are great quantities often to be perceived in fields; as we say clod-hoppers. Taupins likewise signifies swarthy.
- Tenallie. This word literally means shears; but was the name of an antient military evolution. In page 206, of Observations on the Military Art, we have the following account of it: "A phalanx, attacked by a lozenge or triangular wedge, bent its right and left forward by a half-quarter conversion, each wing on their common centre, and when they found themselves opposite the sides of the enemy's arrangement, they each marched on their own side, right before them; by which means they both inclosed and attacked the enemy together, at the same time, while the head was engaged and at blows with the center of the phalanx that had kept its ground. Such is the description authors have left us of the design and effects of this manœuvre. The tenaille had considerable advantage over the triangular wedge; but according to Chevalier Folard, it was not equally efficacious against the

column. The latter could alter the direction of its march, and fall upon one of the wings, whether in motion or not, or detach the section of the tail or rear to take its wings in flank, while it was occupied in making the quarter conversion. The column and tenaille were formed for acting against each other, and could only be victorious over one another by the superior abilities of their commander.

I fancy, however, the column was always exposed to less danger than the tenaille, for the latter could not pursue the column without changing its order; whereas the column must destroy, and in a manner annihilate the tenaille, in case it could once break it.

The tenaille is unquestionably an excellent manœuvre, and strictly conformable to a very wise maxim, which directs us to multiply our strength and efforts as much as possible against one point. We sometimes, indeed, make use of it in war, without being sensible of its advantages. This, however, does not hinder the manœuvre from being well performed; for the nature of ground not being level like a sheet of paper, the commander in ranging his troops, according to the advantages of the situation, does not form a perfect tenaille, such as may be drawn or sketched out, but one of an irregular kind, which produces the same effects; and this is what should be sought on all occasions."

Tent. A temporary covering of canvass, which for princes and generals was made very splendid, at first of the bell shape but subsequently of an oblong form. Several in the time of Henry the Eighth were of cloth of gold. In an account of fees and annuities paid out of the exchequer, in the time of James the First, occurs the following: "To Henry Seckford, master of the tents and toils, per annum, thirty pounds." By toils was probably meant the net work to enclose the tents.

Tentorium. A machine supposed to be the same as the Roman pluteus, but so named because there was a chord by which it was strung. Abbo, in the Siege of Paris, p. 505, has:

Mille struunt etiam celsis tentoria rebus, Tergoribus collo demptis tergoque juvencum, Bis binos tressisve viros clypeare valebant, Quæ pluteos calamus vocitat cratesque Latinus.

TEREBRA. A machine for perforating walls, which was effected by a spike at the end of a cylinder, which when adjusted to the place to be bored, was worked round by handles, the other end of the cylinder turning in an upright.

Testera. A machine. Radulphus de Gestis Frid. I, Imp. says: Et cum testeriis et prederis expugnaverunt castellum. It was by the French called tétiere.

Testudo. An oblong shield formed for making the tortoise, was so called. Nangius in his

life of St. Louis has: Centum cum testudinibus sive targis in armis lucidis, et in equis loricali tunica coopertis sequebantur.

Tesura. Hurdles placed to defend the entrance of a narrow pass. The Chronicle of Bertrand du Guesclin, MS. has:

Toutes les garnisons le verront coramment Des gens d'armes qui vont gardant maint tassement.

TINTIRECE. The sound of weapons upon armour. In the Roman de la Guerre de Troyes, MS. is:

Là veissiez lances brossier, Ja ne se fet nus conseillier; Là oissiez tiel croisserece Et sor heaumes tiel tintirece.

- Torna, Tornamentum, Torneamentum, Torniamentum. A tournament, or sometimes the word was used to express a duel according to form.
- Tornerium, Torneta, Tornio. A tournay or tournament. The Hist. Cortusiorum, lib. v, c. 7, has: Fuerunt etiam hastiludia, giostræ, torneria, et omnia solatia cogitata. The Chron. Estense, anno 1390, has: Marchio Estensis magnam et nobilem curiam fecit in civitate Ferrariæ celebrari per xv dies continuos cum tripudiis, giostris, et torneriis, et magnis præmiis pro victoribus.
- Tornus. A machine. The charter of Peter King of Majorca, dated 1232, has: Tali quidem conditione, quod ipsam (turrim) bene custodias, et teneas in ea omni tempore unum tornum paratum, et unam balistam de torno ad fidelitatem nostram et defensionem civitatis ejusdem. In the Enumeration of the Munitiones Sommeriæ in Occitania, anno 1260, is: Item, iii machine; item, ii torni ad opus balistarum; item, i mola fabrica.

In the Statutes of Arles occurs: Balista optima de torno. Among the stores in castro Carcassonæ, anno 1294, are mentioned: xxxi turni balisterii. Carolus de Aquinus, in his Military Lexicon, is of opinion that the tornum was that part of the balista where the axis turned. It seems, however, to refer to the handle.

Tortirella, Tortorella. A machine which derived its name from a part of it being twisted. Roland in his Chronicle, lib. 1, c. 12, says: Comes Paduæ Manfredinus......à lapide tortorellæ intrinsecæ cecidit mortuus. Again, lib. x. c. 1, Fovea quoque facta, constructum est ibi spaldum trabeum, longo tractu fortissimum et condensum et turres quoque ligneæ, tortirellæ sive predariæ, certis locis, ut si temerarius inimicus accesserit, redeat cum pudore et damno. The Chron. Veron. under the year 1237, has: Castrum obsiderunt cum novem manganis et pluribus tortorellis seu manganellis.

- Towlettes. The tuillettes were corruptedly so called in the time of Henry VI. They were plates to cover and guard the bends of the thighs at the lower part of the abdomen.
- Tractus. From the French trait, a shaft, or arrow for a cross-how. Thus in a præcept, dated 1428, the arbalesters are called gens de trait. In a letter remissory, of the year 1450, is: Le suppliant dist à ung sien nepveu, qu'il prinst une crennequin et du traict, afin d'eulx deffendre.
- TRAHERE. To throw a dart or javelin. Otto Morena, p. 51, has: Ac super ipsum castellum fortiter diu noctuque trahere non cessaverunt. Galbert, in his Life of Charles Earl of Flanders. c, 7, says: Non cessabunt trahere sagittis. The monk Robert, in his History of Jerusalem, lib. III, tells us that: Turcorum nempe, consuetudo est ut retro confugiant tractis sagittis. Guido de Vigevano, on the mode of fighting, T. S. c. 13, has: Et super ipso carro poterit fieri manganela quæ trahet ubique lapides et rothecas. In a letter remissory, dated 1389, occurs: Dannye se rétournant fut trait d'une flesche parmi le corps et son cheval aussi, dont il tomba à terre.
- TRAHERE AD ARMA. To run to arms. An old Chronicle, under the year 1334, has; Bononienses ad arma traxerunt contra D. Belframun Legatum Eccl. Rom. et ipsum D. Legatum in castro Bononiæ incluserunt, &c.
- Traiare. To make a muster and select therefrom. Thus in Rymer's Fædera, Vol. V, p. 308, occurs: Assignavimus vos ad ducentos homines.....de melioribus, validioribus et fortioribus eligendum et traiandum. Ibid. Vol. IV, p. 136, Vous assignoms jointement et severalment de surveer les ditz galeys.....et de les trier et arraier, et de les sauveement conveer et mesner.....jesqes à Portesmuth.....et les avant ditz galeys bien triez et arraier, &c.
- Trancheia, Tranchia. A trench. The Hist. Beccensis, MS. p. 361, has: Statuit ne cogantur ire ad operationem castellanorum, sive pontium, vel fossatorum reparandorum, vel trancheiarum. It thus occurs in a transaction, dated 1295: Castrum de Castellione cum fossatis contiguis et tranchia sive fissura.
- Transartat. A kind of banner on a cross-bar. In the Gesta Guidonis Episc. Cenoman.

  Tome III, occurs: Willus de Buris, qui jam dudum causa pœnitentiæ Ierosolymam profectus fuerat..... obtulit B. Juliano Dominicæ crucis reliquias, cum pretioso pallio et vexillo, quod transartat dicitur, in cujus hasta laminæ ductiles erant, viiii marcas argenti continentes.
- Transferius. A weapon of the lance kind. In a Statute of Ferrara, of the year 1268, is: Arma vetita in civitate Ferrariæ et districtu, intelligimus bordonem, lanzonem, transferium.....Si quis inventus fuerit portare de nocte bordonem, lanzonem, transferium, &c.
- TRAPPE, TRAPPATURA, TRAPPUREY. The caparison of a horse. In the Morteval Register, at

Salisbury Cathedral Part I fol. 231 is the following Sciend<sup>m</sup>. est qd tempē Nicolai Longespeye quondam epi Sar. anno regni regis Edwardi xxjjj fcā fuit pvidencia pr. ix hoibus armatis et ix equis cooper<sup>s</sup>. ac trappis et testiis pro xlvij £1:10s:1d. ob. Pro hoie, aketon, hauberoun vel plates, gambeson, bascinet, corset, chapel de ferfs, quysers, poleyns, gaunts de plate, targæ, launce, iambers, et pour le chival, sele trappe et tester. As Longespeye was bishop from 1291 to 1297 this estimate must refer to the time of Edward I, and consequently its date is 1294. Elmham, in his life of Henry V, King of England, c. 26 says: Equos eciam habens sequaces, ditissimis trappaturis modo regio decoratos. In c. 3, he has: Equi nobiles ditissimis trappaturis amicti. Again: c. 129, Manni nobiles ejusdem sectæ nigerrimæ trappaturis induti. Chaucer uses trappureys.

Travacha. The curtain of a Castle, or an earth-work. Otto Morena, in Hist. Rer. Laudensium, p. 53, says: Cremenses vero cognoscentes, se non posse defendere murum castri, quin destrueretur, travacham magnam ex lignis et terra insimul compositam ibi intus in ea parte, in quâ ipsum murum destrui videbant, juxta eum construxere. And at p. 54: Quandam machinam, quam fecerant super travacham, quam ipsi ex lignis et terra intus juxta murum castri composuerant. It also implies a tent. Thus in the Statuta Vercell. fol. 3 is: Habendo tentoria et travachas in exercitu ad usum suum. And in fol. 180: Ego Massarius communis juro ad sancta Dei Evangelia bona fide et sine fraude salvare, custodire et gubernare balistas, tentoria sive travachas, ferramenta, etc.

TREBUCHETUM, TRABUCHETUM, TREBUCHET, TREBUKIET, TREBUS, TREBOCK, TREPGET. A machine which discharged stones from three mouths or open boxes at once. The monk Vallis Sarnaii, c. 86. has: Jaciebant siquidem hostes super nostros creberrimos lapides cum duobus trabuchetis, mangonello et pluribus matafundis. Richard de St. Germaine in his Chronicle, says: Combusta machina, que vulgo dicitur Trebuchetum. The continuation of William of Tyre's History of the Crusade, gives some idea of the vastness of this machine in the following expression: Mistrent la main à assiegier le chastel et faire engins, et firent un grant trébuchet, qui gettoit le pesant d'un quintax. Philippe Mouskes in his Philippe Auguste, has:

D'un trebukiet fit trebukier Mult grant partied lor murs.

The Chronicle of Flanders, c. 110, has: Et avoient avec eux plusieurs chariots qui menoient trebus et espringals. An historical fragment added to the work of Albert Argentin, an, 1212, thus fixes the date of this French invention or rather its adoption into Germany: Otto Imp. ab Apulia et Italia reversus obsedit oppidum Visense, quod similiter expugnavit usque ad arcam......Ibi tunc primum cœpit haberi usus instrumenti bellici, quod vulgo tribock appellari solet. Bernard de Breydenback in

his Itin. Jerosol: thus describes it p. 268: Machinam versilem, quod tribuccum vocant, ingentia saxa in munitiones et hostium fossas torquens erigere statuunt. Henry de Knyghton under the year 1382, has: Posuerat etiam unam machinam magnam, et unum trepget, cum una magna gunna. And Raimund Montanerio in his Chronicle of Aragon, c. 165. E su arbora 4 trabuchs, qui tot jorns treien deins la ciutât.

Trebuculus, Trabuculus, Tribuculus, Tribunculus. A word of similar import from the the greek τριβόλος. Thus Mat. Paris under the year 1218 has: Neque insultu petrariarum aut trebuculorum ictibus, parum vel nihil profecerunt. Under 1219, Cum diutius usu petrariarum, et trebuculorum aliarumque machinarum muros civitatis subvertere laborasset. Jacques de Vitry in his Oriental History Lib. III. says: Quæ omnes (testudines) remanserunt integræ, præter unam, quæ crebris tribuculis Templariorum ictibus concussa fuit aliquantum. Again: Inventi sunt in Damiata tribuculi quatuor, cum petrariis et mangonellis. Mat. Paris under the year 1099, has: Petrarias, tribunculos et arietes.

TREPARE, TRIPUDIARE. To danse the triputium, a peculiar figure. The Roman de Robert le Diable has:

L'Emperere est enmy la sale U il ne trepe, ne ne bale.

In a Charter of Toulouse anno 1192, is: Ipsum pratum et gravaria erant publica causa spaciandi et trepandi. Guilleville in his Pelerinage de l'Ame, says:

Je espringue et si carole, Je treppe et queur et danse et bale, En allant à la witefale.

The Chron. Estense, under the year 1390 has: Celebrari per xv dies continuos cum tripudiis, giostris, torneriis, etc. Perhaps the tripudium somewhat resembled the Matachin dance which Sir Philip Sidney thus explains: "Whoever saw a Matachin dance to imitate fighting? this was a fight that did imitate the Matachin, for they being but three that fought, every one had two adversaries striking him who struck the third." In the life of Sir Rhys ab Thomas compiled in the time of James I. in the Camb. Regr. Vol. 1. is the following: "Nowe should these three brave champions have mett and encountered in a fight, imitating the Matachin daunce, as that daunce heretofore was invented, in imitation of such a fight, each one having two adversaries." In the book of Judith c. 15, v. 13, the circumstance of of the Jews dancing in armour is mentioned: "And they put a garland of olive upon her and her maid that was with her, and she went before all the people in the dance, leading all the women, and all the men of Israel followed in their armour with garlands and with songs in their mouths."

TREPIDARE. To tournay a word derived from the military horses of the Asiatics which according to Vegetius de Arte Veterin. lib. 1, c. 56, were called trepidarii and trottonarii. In chap. 15 of the Concilium Albiense occurs: Trepidare quoque, quod vulgariter biordare dicitur, cum scuto et lancea aliquis clericus publice non attentet. Notwithstanding the complaints of the French officers noticed in the first volume, we find that not only were tournaments known in Scotland, but that even a particular place, in Edinburgh was assigned for the purpose of holding them. Thus Bowyer, the continuator of Fordun's Scotichronicon, mentions that in the year 1398 queen Annabel, wife of Robert III, proclaimed a tournament of twelve knights on each side in honor of her eldest son David, then created Duke of Rothsay, and adds in express words:

Hujusmodi tyrocinium fuit contigue a parte aquiloni villæ de Edinburgh ubi nunc est lacus, i. o. the north lock of the city near the castle rock.

TRIALEMELLUM. A three edged dagger. Albericus in his chronicle under the year 1214, has: Ante oculos ipsius regis occiditur Stephanus de Longo Campo, in capite percussus longo, gracili, trialemello, quem falsarium nominant. Philippe Mouskes in his History of France, under Philippe Auguste says:

Un coutiel ot moult rice à pointe, D'acier iert l'alemielle jointe.

So the Roman d'Athis:

Selon le corps lez la mamelle Lui a conduite l'alemelle.

TRIARII. Soldiers, so called among the Romans, thus named from occupying the third rank in their armies. They were armed with a pike, shield, helmet and cuirass, and were sometimes called pilarii from having a javelin, they were likewise termed post signani from being posted in the rear of the principes who carried the standard of the legion.

TRIBULUM. The bolt discharged from a cross-bow. In an inquisition taken in the 27th of Edward III. N. 40, occurs: Manerium de Brineston in Com. Cestriæ, tenetur de rege in capite per servitium inveniendi unum hominem in exercitu Domini Regis in partibus Scotiæ profecturum, nudus pedibus, camisia et braccis vestitum, habentem in una manu unum arcum sine corda et altera manu unum tribulum non pennatum.

TRICINCTUM. A triple foss. Mathew Paris, speaks of such being the case in the time of Henry III, thus p. 134: Castrum triplici fossato, totidemque mœniis vestitum. Guillaume le Breton lib. 1 of his Philipp. has:

Puer impiger illo Tempore tricinctum castri, qui continet in se Jugera multa soli, signis obcinxit et armis. TRILICES LORICE. Trelessed hauberks, Dudo de morib. et act. Norman. lib. 2, says: Alii ferro auroque trilices loricas, thoracas scilicet, faciunt. Again: Trilicique lorica indutus. The Roman d'Auberi, has:

Voit par la salle ces haubers treilleis.

And:

U est un haubert, qui estoit treilleis.

TRISTEGA, TRISTEGUM. A machine used in sieges, consisting of three stages. Suger de consecr. Eccl. S. Dionys, p. 353 has: Ad tristegas et propugnacula facienda. Henry de Knyghton de Event. Angl. lib. 1, c. 2 says: Vidit unum tristegum cum imagine ad similitudinem unius sagittarii, tenentis arcum cum sagita.

TRITTERI, RITTERI, RUYTERS, RYTERS. German knights who let their services on hire to foreign powers.

TRITURA. A weapon with an iron head, probably the flail. Thus in the diary of the Hussitic war occurs: Multitudinem armatorum fugabant, trituris bene feratis, optimis armis armatos invadendes, et usque ad mortem sæpe prosternendo. Blind Harrie in his Actis and deedis of Scher Wilzam Wallace, speaks of a staff of steele thus: Book viii, l. 1196,

"Quhen it was don, Wallace can hym array
In his armour quhilk gudly was and gay
Hys schenand schoes yat burnyst was full beyne
Hys leg harnes he clappyt on sa clene
Pullane greis he braissit on full fast
A closs byrny, with mony sekyr clasp
Breyst plait, brazers yat worthi was in wer
Besyd hym furth Jop couth his basnet ber
Hys glytterand glowis grawin on ayir syd
He semyl weill in battail till abyde
Hys gud gyrdill and syne his burly brand
A staff of steyll he gryppyt in hys hand."

TROIA. A machine of war called by the French trule or troye, somewhat resembling the sow. Turpin c. 9, says: Septimo mense aptatis juxta murum petrariis et mangonellis et troiis. The chronicle of Bertrand du Guesclin, has:

C'estoit pour convoier Un engin qu'on nommoit truie en cest heritier.

Froissart, says: Ils envoyèrent querir à la Riolle un grant engin, qu'on appelle truie lequel engin étoit de telle ordonnance, que il jettoit pierre de faix, et se pouvoient bien cent hommes d'armes ordonner dedans, et en approchans assaillir la ville.

Troll, Trulus. The wheel for winding up a cross bow, or machine of war. In a letter dated 1328, printed in Rymer's Fædera, Vol. IV, p. 367, occurs: Arcus balisti

ad troll. The Stat. Mutin, an 1306, have: Eligantur unus dominus et unus notarius pro qualibet porta, qui faciat parari trabuchos, sive manganos, balistas grossas, sagittamenta, trulos, et alia necessaria.

Tudela. A corruption of tutela, a place of defence.

Turia. A species of loop-hole in the walls of a castle through which missiles were ejected an enemy.

Tufa. A tuft of hair feathers or other materials used for a flag. Vegetius lib. III, c. 5, says: Muta signa sunt, aquilæ, dracones, vexilla, flammulæ, tufæ, pinnæ. Bede in the 2nd. Book of his English history, c. 16, and from him Henry of Huntingdon, lib. II, p. 316, has: Ubique autem ante regem (Edwin) vexilla gestabantur, nec non per plateas illud genus vexilli, quod Romani tufam vocant, Angli tuf appellant, ante eum ubilibet ferri solebat.

Tug. A turkish term for tail; a sort of standard so called by the Turks. It consists of a horse's tail which is fixed to a long pole by means of a gold button. The origin of this standard is said to have been the following: The christians having given battle to the Turks, the latter were broken, and in the midst of their confusion lost their grand standard. The Turkish general being extremely agitated at this untoward circumstance cut off a horse's tail with his sabre fixed it to a lance, and holding it in his hand, rode furiously towards the fugitives exclaiming: "Here is the great standard, let those who love me follow into action," which produced the desired effect. They not only obtained the victory, but regained their former standard. Another account says, "that some prisoners, who contrived to escape, formed such a standard under which they were victorious."

Tulco. A kind of fortification. Thus in a treatise de Re. mil. et mach. bell. fol. 1, is Castella sive oppida......de istis sint fulcita......puteis, tulconibus, turribus ambulatoriis.

Tuldum. Called by the Greeks  $\tau o \tilde{\nu} \lambda \delta \omega$  and by the French toudis, tauldis and taudis, rubbish thrown up for temporary fortification. In a letter remissory dated 1479, is:

Le suppliant ne voulut souffrir que l'on print de ses tonneaulx pour fortifier et taudisser les murailles de la dite ville de Pouence.

Tumbrellum. A tumbril; antiently this seems to have been not only a waggon as at present but a machine upon it. Thus Philippe Mouskes in his Louis VIII, has:

Qu'il orent assez mangoniaus, Et trebukes et tumeriaus.

Again:

Sour quatre rues fit engiens, Et de cloies et de merrions, Et pons torneis, et castiaus, Et tumeriaus, et trebukes. Tunica. The surcoat. In an account dated 1202 is: Pro II, tunicis de Esteinfr toda armare, xxxIIII sol. Pro. vi cendalis ad capam,.....et pro. I, tunica ad armare,.... et pro duabus tunicis cendalis viridis ad armare, vIII, l. In the will of Richard de Bisunt archbishop of Rheims occurs: Item dedit et legavit magistro Johanni Vetulæ, olim ballivo suo Remensi, suam tunicam, gallice, Cote à armer, ferratam argento. The Crusaders adopted the tunic from the Asiatics and seemed ambitious of appearing in a garb which bore testimony to their feats of valour. These tunics obtained the name of Saladins among the French from the Saracenic emperor.

TUNICLE, TORNICLE, TOURNICLIA. A military covering for man or horse. The chronicle of Flanders, c. 51, speaking of the Emperor Henry of Luxembourg says: Et avoit vestu un tournicle d'or à aigle noir. The chronicle of Bertrand du Guesclin has:

Là n'y avait seigneur de haute renommée, Qui sa tunicle n'eust en son dos endossée.

The account of Etienne de La Fontaine the king's silversmith commencing 4th. February, 1351 in the chap. de harnois, has: Pour 2 aunes de velluy ou jaune pour faire une tunicle. Again: Pour 2 aunes 3 quarts de velluy au Ynde à faire la garnison d'un chamfrain et l'escarteleure de la tunicle 16 escus, etc., 2 onces 15 estellins de perles à pourfiller les fleurs de lys de la tunicle. Again: Pour 6 pieces de camocas blans à faire 2 harnois de cheval, c'est assavier colliere, crupiere, banniere, panonceaux et tunicle. Again: Pour 2 onces et demye d'or trait pour faire l'armoirie des tunicles. In the statutes of the armourers and coustepointiers of Paris occurs: Tout homme, qui fera tornicles quelles que elles soient que elles soient armoirées de surtal, et que le surtal soit aussi bon comme le champ, et que il soit curelie de poins, et pourfiller de chiefs, et cousus de soie bien nettement, et s'il y a cotton, que il y en ait autrendroit du cendal ou cas que elle ne seroit drappée et que elle seroient de poins enfermez et brochiez, si l'en a loisir de la poindre. In a letter remissory dated 1269 is: Mandamus vobis quatinus duo paria turnicliarum et duo paria cuissetorum, duas testerias ad equos el duas coriatas apportari faciatis vobiscum.

TUPINA. A kind of mock tournament. The Roman de la Rose has:

Ne veistes tel chapleis La out si fort tupyneis Conques en nul tornoiement.

Turella, Turellus. In french tourelle, a small tower. A deed of Edward I king of England has: Fundata per muros et turellas villæ Burdegal. Again: in muris et turellis prædictis. Hence a gate-way between small towers was termed turelure. Thus in the chronicle of Bertrand Duguesclin, occurs:

Et puis la turelure fut en l'eure fermée.

- In a letter dated 1327, in Rymers Fœdera Vol. IV, p. 297, is: Muros, fossata, et turellos ac munitiones ejusdem civitatis.
- Turresinus. A word of the same import. Thus James de Layto in his Annales se Estens, under the year 1404 has: Moenia cum scalis ascenderant, et custodes repulerant, duosque turresinos ceperant.
- TUTESBIT. A quiver of Tutesbit occurs in an old writing, but of what it consisted I have not been able to discover.
- Tybarud. A kind of mock fight. In an old deed occurs: Ita nemo illorum pergat ad pugnam, quæ alio nomine vulgariter vocatur tybarud.
- Tyro. One recently girt with the military belt. Thus Simon of Durham under the year 1150, speaking of Henry the son of Geoffry Plantagenet lately made a knight, says: Et rex David, et tyro Henricus Dux Normanniæ, etc.
- Tyrocinium. Recent chivalry. John the monk of Mairemontier in the 1st. book of his history of Geoffry Duke of Normandy says: Illucescente die altera, balneorum usus, uti tyrocinii suscipiendi consuetudo expostulat, paratus est. And: Dies illa tyrocinii honoris et gaudio dicata, etc. Geoffry Voss in his chronicle p. 1 c. 58, has: Regem Scotorum Henricus (the king of England), apud urbem Petragoricam in prato episcopali militiæ cingulo redimivit, qui novus miles 30 heroum liberos recentis tyrocinii consocios faciens, prosecutus est regem. Petrus de Vineis lib. III Epist. 20, says: Quia tamen militiæ cingulum, quod reverenda sancivit antiquitas, nondum serenitas nostra acceperat, die præsentis mensis augusti, cum solennitate tyrocinii, latus nostrum eligimus decorandum. It also implied the games in which recently made knights partook. Thus in a letter of Philippe Auguste king of France dated 1221, is: Pro tirociniis, torneamentis, expedicionibus, et aliis usibus eorumdem, etc. William de Nangis, in his Life of Philippe III, king of France, under the year 1279, has: Princeps Salernæ Carol. regis Siciliæ illustrissimi filius, veniens in Franciam cum magno honore à rege et baronibus est receptus, ac pro ejus amore et reverentia dedit licentiam Philippus rex in ludis tyrociniorum militas exercendi. John de Bec in Ottone III, Epis. Trajectensi, has: Eodem anno Florentius comes imperterritus multa tyrocinia per diversas provincias frequentavit, de quibus præconium laudis acquisivit.
- VALETI, VALECTI, VALETS. The sons of knights and afterwards those of the nobility before they acquired the military belt were so termed. Thus in a deed dated 1204, occurs: De militibus et vasletis de terra comitis Roberti, etc. In another quoted

by Spelman are these words: Thomas filius dicti Radulphi (militis) vasletus in custodia regis, qui similiter morabatar in servitio regis cum fratribus suis. The Roman de Rou speaking of William the bastard Duke of Normandy, says:

Guillaume fu vallet petit A Falese posé et norrit.

Again:

Et me fist avoir en ostage Deus vallez de noble lignage. L'un fis, l'autre ert nevou Gouducine, Encor les ai en ma sesine.

Again, speaking of Henry II king of England,

Cinquante-trois ans plus sa terre justisa Emprés la mort son père qui vallet le laissa.

The Roman d'Alixandre, has:

Li vales entent la promesse, Que lendemain après la messe Le veut son père adober.

So in a deed dated 1291, formerly preserved in the church at Dôl, is: Guillelmus de Rupeforti vicecomes de Donges miles, et Theobaldus de Rupeforti ejusdem vicecomitis filius, valletus: Varlet seems to have had the same signification: Thus in a letter remissory of the year 1362, occurs: Johans Dartois varlez du roy, nostre seigneur et bailli de Reims, etc.

VALVARTE. From the spanish balvarte, a boulevart or rampart.

Vambrace. From the french avant-bras, that part of plate armour which extended from the elbow to the wrist. At first half a vambrace covering only the outside of the forearm, was buckled upon the sleeve of the hauberk or fastened to hinges on the rings of the mail. Afterwards it was a complete tube with two hinges inside and a spring or clasp on the outside. A deed of Henry V, king of England in the 2nd. vol. of the Hist. Harcur; shows how early was the custom of arming one arm differently from the other, and a seal of Edward III seems to carry it back still further.

VAMPLATE. From the french avant plaque, a small circular conical shield of iron from four to six inches of radius slipped down the shaft of the lance near the gripe to guard the hand at the joust, and sometimes in battle.

VANNERIA. For banneria, a banner.

Vanwarde, Vawarde. French avant-garde. The van or advanced guard of an army. In

## VA-VE

the middle ages the van was usually the right or the left wing according as the army moved by either flank. At other times the right wing was always the van, and in France at least, the constable had a right to command it.

VANNULUM. A little flag or vane.

Velites. Roman troops, who were commonly some of the Tyros, or young soldiers of mean condition, and lightly armed. Their arms consisted of a sword and javelin and they had a circular shield three feet and a half in diameter. They generally wore a wolf's skin or some such ornament to distinguish them in action. Their javelins had a thin long blade, with a shaft which measured three cubits in length. They may be considered as the light troops of the Roman armies.

Ventaculum, Ventaile, Ventyle. The ventaile or aventail, a moveable front to a helmet which covered the face, and through which the wearer respired or drew in the air, quâ ventus hauritur. In the fifteenth century this name was frequently given to what in this work has been termed the uniber. Thus in the will of Sir William Langforde Knight, in the Halam register at Salisbury Cathedral, dated 24 August 1411 is: "I bequeyth to Robert myn eldest son a bassinet wyth a ventyle, a payre of vambrace and rerebrace, a payre of legs hernys, a hole brest-plate, a paunce of stele, a payre of gloves of plate white." So the Roman de Roncevaux describes a warrior ready for the attack in these words:

L'escu au col, la ventaille fermée.

Philippe Mouskes in his Charlemagne has:

La ventaile li ont ostée, Si li ont la teste copée.

William Guiart under the year 1214, says:

Sur hyaumes bruns, et sus haubers, S'entrelancent estos et tailles, Sus bacinez, et sus ventailles.

And the Roman de Garin:

En li deslace le vert hyaume bruni, Et la ventaile de l'auberc c'ot vesti.

This last quotation looks as if the ventaile was sometimes attached to the hauberk.

Ventosa. A kind of bulwark called by the French ventouses. The MS. treatise de Re mil. et mach. bell. c. 54, says: Possunt dictæ perticæ altius levari et interius declinari, causa portas sive propugnacula, aut bertescas sive ventosas comburendi.

VERETONUS, VERETTONUS, VIRATONUS, VIRATONUS, VERRECULUM. In italian ve-

retto and verettone the vireton, or arrow for a cross-bow made to spin in its flight, from the diagonal position of its feathers. In the Chronicon Tarvis, occurs: Vita donatus est beneficio unius piroli argentei deaurati, in quem veretonus unus balista emissus repercussit, ita ut intra viscera nequivit adire. In the Chronicon Estense is: Qui Gabriel eo die captus fuit et interfectus uno verettone à gentibus prefati domini Marchionis. In the History of Andrew Billius, occurs: Rejecta ab oculos galeæ specula, mox sagittæ, quam vulgo verretonum nominamus, verreculo per eum locum ictus cecidit. In the miracles of Pope Urban V, occurs: Fuit percussus de quodam viratono in facie super oculum, ita quod totum ferrum erat in capite longitudinis quasi medii pedis. In the Miracles of Louis Alamande archbishop of Arles, is: Simili jactu magni viratoni super faveriam dictæ cassidis percussus, etc.

VERFREDUS. The same as berfredus.

VERU, VIRA. Called by the French verou and vire, an arrow or dart. Guillaume le Breton in Lib. 11 of his Philip, has:

Mox hastas hastata manus configit in illum, Quorum cuspis erat longa, et subulæ instar acuta, Et nonnulla velut verubus dentata recurvis, Cuspidis in medio uncos emittit acutos.

In a letter remissory dated 1380, occurs: Partie d'iceulx arbalestriers eussent tracit de l'un bersail à l'autre et feussent alez après le trait de leurs vires es parties du bersail ou traiet avoient.... Ainsi que ledit Eslie eust desnoqué son arbaleste, sa vire encontra ledit de la chapelle, etc.

Vessilum. For Vexillum. In an account from the year 1333 to 1336 occurs: Pro vagina lanceæ Domini ad apportendum vessillum ante Dominum et pro uno laqueo de seta pro ipso vessillo, tarent. l. gran. xiv.

Vexillum Regale. The royal standard. This was of silk in very antient times. Thus William Guiart speaking of the siege of Acre, says:

Gens d'armes les portes approchent, En espoir qu'a leur flo si fiere Pres de l'une est ja la baniere D'azur, fut sus cendal parfaite, Et à fleurs-de-lys d'or pourtraiete, Hardis est celui qui la porte, Car il va sans qu'il se resorte, L'escu au col, la teste encline, &c.

Vexilli erectio. The fixing a standard on the walls of a fortress. William of Tyre, Ordericus Vitalis and others speak of this practice so that it is very antient.

Vete. A kind of weapon. In the Statutes pro bono publico at Abbeville, occurs: Item des coutiaux des vetes, des fauchons et toutes aultres armeures deffendues que nulz soit, hardis que les porte.

- VIBRELLA. A cannon. In a letter of Mary Queen of England dated 1554, in Rymer's Fædera is: Vi et armis, videlicit gladiis, tormentis sive vibrellis vulgariter vocatis cannons.
- VIBRELLARIUS, VIBRELLATOR. A cannonier. In a letter of Henry VII King of England, is: Cum nos quondam expeditionem contra Gallos instruere decrevimus, volentes proinde de certo numero navium ac vibrellariorum et balistariorum, etc.
- VINEA. A covering machine made of wood and woven like a crate and having its sides covered with hides to prevent the entry of missile weapons. It was so called because it resembled a vine bearing grapes. Vegetius describes it lib. iv, c. 13, and Carolus Aquinus in his military glossary.
- Virilia Arma. The belt and arms of knighthood when conferred at the proper age. Thus Rigordus says: Philippus in eodum loco Arturum militem fecit, tradens ei Britanniæ comitatum, qui jure hæreditario eum contingebat. Ante autem hanc armorum traditionem non licebat iis uti, unde arma dicuntur virilia, velut virum facientia. Henry de Huntingdon speaking of Stephen King of England, says: Henrico nepoti suo David rex Scotorum virilia tradidit arma. Eustachius vero filius regis Stephani, nam et ispe eodem anno virilia sumpserat arma, irruit in terras procerum.
- VISERIA, VISORIA, VISUS. Called by the French visière and vidaille, the vizor of the helmet or aperture for the sight of the wearer. In an account, dated 1336, occurs: Item, duos bacignetos cum viseriis II sol. vI den. gr. In the miracles of Louis archbishop of Arles, is: Fuit percussus quadam sagitta magnæ balistæ quæ infra viseriam cassidis intravit. The chronicle of Petrus Azarius, has: Volens videre castramenta partis Gibellinæ et qualiter procedebant, levata viseria barbutæ, etc. In a letter remissory dated 1455, is: Le suppliant haussa son baston, et d'icellui donna audit valete ung cop sur l'uisse ou vidaille. In the stores found at the castle of Carcass. anno 1294, are mentioned: Quatuor capelli ferri cum visoria. Fulcher Carnot in his Hist: of Palestine, has: Ut in visibus eorum et peltis.
- VISIONES, or VIRIONES The cords of silk which in the time of Edward I attached the helmet to the shoulders that it should not turn round. They are mentioned in a MS. in the Harl. Lib. No. 6149, fol. 46.
- Umber, Umbrel. The shade for the eyes placed immediately over the sight of a helmet, sometimes attached to the visor. The word uniber, so frequently used in this work, appears to be a misprint for umber, when employed to signify the whole covering for the face. Thus in one edition of Stowe's account of the combat in Smithfield between Astley and the Aragonese knight in 1442, occurs this expression: "He took his axe and brake up his uniber three times, and would have smit him on the face with his dagger, etc."
- UMUS. A heaume or helmet. A deed dated 1344 has: Ramundus Aiquerii athilator Tolosæ dom. nostri Franciæ regis, recognosco habuisse pro iij umis et tachis, xiij

## UR-WA

paveciis, centum fundis, etc. It was not unusual for the Scotch warriors to wear a steel skull-cap within their bonnets. Thus Blind Harrie says in his actis and deedis of Scher Wilzam Wallace, book III, 1.83.

"Ay fra ye tyme yat he of tresoune ferr
Gud soummir weede dayly on him he werr,
Gud lycht harnes, fra yat tyme usyt he ever.

A habergeon undyr hys goune he war,
A steylle capleyne in hys bonnet but mar
Hys glowis of plaitin claith war couerit weille,

In hys doublet a closs color of steylle,
His face he kepyt, for it was over bar,
With hys twa hands, &c."

URNA, A machine of war which seems to have been the prototype of the bomb. Hero de machinis bellicis c. 9, thus describes it: Fiunt itaque fictiles urnæ laminis ferreis exteriori parte colligatæ, minutisque carbonibus implenter: ab extrinseca vero laminæ facie fundum versus forantur et aperiuntur usque unius digiti foramen, ferreumque tabulum inde suscipiunt, cui tubus alius follem habens adjungitur. Cum autem ignem carbones susciperint, dum sufflantur, similem flammæ perficiunt, combustionem. Quippe quæ lapidem penetrat atque confringit, aecto vel urina, vel alio quopiam acrium superinfuso.

Voglers. Olivier de la Marche uses this word to imply stone bullets.

Vueta, Guetta, Gaita. In French gaite, called by the English watch and ward. In an old inquest in the register of Philippe Auguste Herouvaillian, fol. 163, occurs: Et est castellanus feodatus, et ponit gaitam in castro, et debet exercitum et equitationem, ut alii.

VUETAGIUM, GUETAGIUM. Waitage, money paid for the watching of a fortress.

Vulpes, Vulpecula. A military machine. Thus Albert Aquensis in his Hist. Hierosol. says: Unus de majoribus Alemanniæ vulpem ex proprio sumptu quercinis trabibus composuerunt, cujus in gyro tutos intexuerunt parietes, ut gravissimos Turcorum sufferret ictus armorum, omniaque jaculorum genera: ac sic in ea manentes tuti et illæsi urbem fortiter impugnando perforarent. Hoc tandem vulpis instrumentum, dum ad unguem opere et ligaturis perduceretur, milites prædictorum principum loricati ad viginti in eadem vulpis protectione sunt constituti. Sed magna virorum inundatione et conamine juxta muros applicata, non æquo subsedit aggere.

WAPINSHAW. A shew of weapons. The Statute of Will. king of Scot. c. 23, s. 5 et 6. has: Et omnes alii, qui habere poterunt, habeant arcum et sagittas extra forestam, et infra forestam arcum et pyle: et fiat visus armorum, quod dicitur, Wapinschaw.

- WAPPENROCK. The german wapenrock, a military cloak with armorial charges. In the German Statutes of the knights of the Teutonic order, is: Clypeum et tunicam armorum quæ dicitur wappenrock ferre non debet, sicut magister, &c.
- WAPPENHAUBEN. From the german wappen, a weapon and haube, covering for the head, or rather protection. The Statute of the knights of the Teutonic order, says: Ipse tenetui dare fratribus ad arma deputatis spallaria, wappenrock, kilinge, phavones, wappenhersunn, wappenhauben et cingulos, vestimenta.
- Weapons. All offensive arms were called by this general term. The specific names given to them were often whimsical and not easily analyzed, and from the cant language of the day we must, in many instances, alone expect to derive their origin. Thus from the term "sprinkling the holy water" which like the modern pugilistic phrase "tapping the claret" expressed fetching blood, came the name of those weapons covered with spikes. So the voulge or glaive was called Langue de bœuf as early as the reign of Richard II. In the petition of the widow of Tresham speaker of the House of Commons, who was murdered in 1450, by the retainers of Lord Grey, occurs "armed with weapons, which are called jakkes, salettes, long swords, langs de bœfs, and bore speares". See Parl. Rolls, 5. p. 211. Fauchet absurdly says "antiently a name given to the halbert".
- WOUNDED. The killed and wounded were numbered and the lists made out by the heralds in the time of Edward IV, for in a paper pinned to a letter dated 4th. April, 1461, of W. Paston, is a list of the noblemen and knights who fell in the battle of Towton, which ends thus: "wt. xxviij ml. nomberd by haralds."
- Wyn. A vane or narrow flag. "A wyn brod" is mentioned as proper for a knight in a M.S. in the Harl. lib. No. 6149, fol. 46 of the time of Edward I. It may therefore imply the triangular one.
- XAINTURA. Xainture for ceinture, a girdle. In a letter rem. 1397, is: Le suppliant print une xainture de cuir, garnie de six clos d'argent.

ZABA, ZAVA. An arabic cuirass.

Zarabotana, Zarabotanas. A machine. Chalcocondyles says: Lib. 7, Vehebantur bombarda plurimæ quas zarabotanas nominant. Stat. crim. Riperiæ, c. 79. have: Si quis animo percutiendi, sagittaverit cum balista vel arcu, vel zarabotana ærea, vel ferri cum sagittis, etc.

ZADA. A spanish word for a castle.

Zacco. A kind of sword. The Chron. Imper. Leon. has: Item fratrem nostram Ugonem

# ZI-ZO

cum zaccone vulneravit. Item Gallum cum zaccone in capite et auricula percussit, ita quòd sanguis emanavit. We learn from Ezekiel, c. 32. v. 27, that it was a custom among the Asiatics to place the swords of dead warriors under their heads when buried, for he says: "And they shall not lie with the mighty that are fallen of the uncircumcised, which are gone down to hell with their weapons of war: and they have laid their swords under their heads, but their iniquities shall be upon their bones, though they were the terror of the mighty in the land of the living."

ZIPO. A shirt of mail. The Stat. Ferrar. 1279, has: Quod quilibet custos deputatus ad aliquam custodiam alicujus castri vel loci civitatis Ferrariæ vel districtus, teneatur, et debeat toto tempore custodiæ habere ziponem, collarium de ferro, etc. Perhaps it may be the juppon.

Zonoxale. A kind of armour. A deed of the year 1370 has: Et sit caporalis armatus à capite usque ad pedes; et habeat equitatorem unum armatum pancitono, capello, zonoxalibus, etc. Perhaps from the Italian ginocchielli coverings for the knees.

THE END.

G. SCHULZE, PRINTER,
NO. 13, POLAND-STREET, OXFORD-STREET,
LONDON.

ule tin entrang to obtain took buy troots that the track that the buy the state of the state the rates of agrandik. Dos seest is invisation sympatic and early saying trough the formandations.







